

# *The evolutionary stages of the human life-wave on earth*



# Occult Annals of the Divine Pedigree of Man

## *Contents and abstract of central ideas*<sup>1</sup>

### **Notes by the Series Editor.**

Quick definitions	20
Further reading	21
Our Planetary Chain of Seven Rounds (Drawing).	21

### **First Root-Race: The Shadows**

#### **1. Man's dual origin and birth.**

On the parentless birth of the Great Orphan. 23

Occultism affirms two births: a Spiritual, manifested through the potency inherent in unborn, unconditioned noetic essence; and a material evolution of discrete, physical elements. 23

Higher Angels (Solar Pitris) were commanded to create, to imbue primordial matter with evolutionary impulse, and to guide its formative powers in the fashioning of its productions. It is said that they "rebelled." 24

But there were no "rebels" as such: the Higher Angels would not create irresponsible men, nor could they endow human beings with only temporary reflections of their own attributes, as the "Obedient" Angels did at first: for, even though the latter belonged to another and much higher plane of consciousness, they would leave men still irresponsible and hence interfere with any possibility of higher progress. 24

Satan, the Serpent of Genesis and favourite scapegoat of the Churches, is none other than Loving Lucifer and Harbinger of Noetic Light. He is our real father, benefactor, and true angel. 25

First Race men were simply images, the astral doubles of their Lunar Pitris or Fathers. 25

Lunar Pitris were also the evolvers of the Second Race. 25

First Race men gave their astral shadows as models in the Fourth Round. Eventually, when the human physical frame became sufficiently consolidated (in late Third Race), the Solar Pitris gave their intelligence. 26

Why? Because though the "Obedient" Angels possessed the fire of physical procreation, they could only create or rather "clothe" the human monad with their own astral selves; they could not give men that sacred spark that burns and expands into the flower of human reason and self-consciousness, as they had it not to give. 26

---

<sup>1</sup> Spirit ink paintings, throughout this study, by Wendy Videlock.

For they have descended from inferior, material worlds.	27
Thus, each class of Creators endowed man with what it could give. This is the mystery of our dual origin and birth.	28
A pale copy of its Divine Progenitors was the First Race: too material, even in its ethereality, to be a hierarchy of gods; too spiritual and pure to be human as it was endowed with every negative perfection.	28
<b>2. Esoteric Symbology.</b>	
The First Root-Race is symbolised by Kandu; the Second, by Marisha.	29
Its celestial origin is suggested by the apex of the pyramids in Egypt and elsewhere, the primordial point lost in the unseen universe above (or rather within) whence it started.	30
<b>3. Esoteric Ethnology.</b>	
First Race man had neither type nor colour and hardly an objective, though colossal, form.	31
The first two races were too ethereal, too phantom-like in their constitution, organism, and shape, even to be called physical men. That is why their relics can never be expected to be exhumed among other prehistoric fossils.	31
Man is the storehouse of all seeds of life for this Round, vegetable and animal alike, a veritable Noah's Ark.	32
<b>4. Cognition and speech.</b>	
The First Race was speechless because it was mindless.	33
<b>5. Demise and death.</b>	
First Race men, being mere shadows of their Lunar Progenitors, could not be injured or destroyed by death. But their sons, the Second Race, could be and were so destroyed.	34
The First Race disappeared into the Second without either begetting it or procreating it. Why? Because the human womb, which is a copy and reflection of the Heavenly Matrix, had not been prepared.	34
When the Second Race matured, "old waters were mixed with fresher waters."	35
Death, as we know it, came only after man had become an objective, physical creature.	36
The First Race came to an end during the second subrace of the Third.	36
For men had lost their balance.	36
Since the appearance of the First Race, the whole globe has been convulsed periodically, four times to date.	36

## **Second Root-Race: The Sweat-Born**

### **1. Man's physical frame developed.**

Phoenicians were the Kingly or Second Divine Race. 37

The first two races, being spiritual, had nought to do with climate nor were they subservient to any temperature or change therein. 37

### **2. Asexual form "budded" from a sexless shadow.**

"If thou would'st understand the Secondary [Creation, so-called], Oh Lanoo, thou should'st first study its relation to the Primary." 38

The astral form clothing the Monad was surrounded, as it still is, by an egg-shaped aura that corresponds to the substance of the ovum or germ-cell. 39

The mistaken theories of monogenesis and the belief in the descent of man from the mammals, instead of the reverse, are fatal to the completeness of evolution as taught in modern schools along Darwinian lines. 39

Even the marsupials of the Triassic rocks of the Secondary Period are post-human. 40

### **3. The sweat-born of the Second Race evolved to the egg-born of the Third.**

The human embryo of the Second Race was nourished from without by Cosmic forces. 41

The First Race created the Second by "budding"; the Second, gave birth to the Third, which then separated into three distinct divisions of men differently procreated. 41

Thus physical procreation progressed from asexual to egg-born bisexual, and finally to womb-born men and women. 42

Progressive order of human reproduction. 43

## **Third Root-Race: The Lemurian**

### **Watched by Angels, humanity became ready to receive the solar spark.**

There is a Wondrous Being, the ever-living Human Banyan, whose duty is to rear, nurse, and guide the tottering steps of renascent human races, after their periodical awakening from "obscuration." 49

He descended from a high region in the early part of the Third Age, before the separation of the sexes of the Third Root-Race. 50

He is now sitting at the threshold of Light, looking into it from within the circle of Darkness, which He will not cross. 50

### **Then the Watcher descended on earth and reigned over men.**

Under the silent guidance of this Wondrous Being, the pupils of the incarnated Rishis and Devas of the Third Root-Race handed their knowledge from one generation to another. 52

The Dhyani-Buddhas in charge of the two higher groups, the "Watchers" or "Architects," reigned on earth during the Satya-Yuga and up to the beginning of the Third Root-Race. Then after, the incarnated Dhyanis of a lower order, Patriarchs, Heroes, Manes up to King Menes and, finally, the human kings of other nations took over. 52

Earth and Man are the products of three fires, the Electric, the Solar, and the fire produced by friction. 53

Asuras, Kumaras, Manus, Pitris, Prajapatis, and Rishis, are generic names of the "Flames," Sons of Passive Yoga. 54

Led by that Wondrous Being, a group of such half-divine half-human beings incarnated personally into the senseless shells of the Third Root-Race men and found themselves reborn over and over again. 55

### **Crowning Achievement of the Great Sacrifice.**

The evolution of Spirit through matter could never have been achieved, nor would it have received its first impulse, had not the Bright Spirits sacrificed their super-ethereal essence to animate the man of clay, by endowing each of his inner principles with a reflection of their essence. 56

The seven names of the first seven Logoic Emanations or Flames, Sons of Fire, hold the key to the "Word" that is neither word, nor the tetragrammaton of the Jews that was invented to mislead the profane. 56

### **Axis mundi is about to cross the horizon.**

In the third stage of Anthropogenesis, the cross remains within the circle. 58

The Third and Fourth Races are symbolised by the Puranic Venus.	58
Yama is a personification of the Third Root-Race.	58
He is the first man that died, and the first that departed to the heaven of bliss.	58
Twins Yama-Yami live in a palace of copper and iron, green and red. They stand for dual Manas.	59
In the Puranas, Yama has many wives who force him to dwell in the lower world, this earth. He is a Spirit in exile.	59
Hermes Anubis, represented with an animal head, reveals to the souls of the dead the mysteries of the lower world.	59
During the birth process of the early Third Root-Race the cross fell off the circle and became phallic when those men who, being still mindless, imitated the animals and thus degraded themselves. The uncircled cross also stands for the dual meaning of sexes.	60
Thoth alone remains changeless from the first to the last Divine Dynasty. He is the god of wisdom and has authority over all other gods. He is the recorder and judge. He is the Master of Cynocephalus, the dog-headed ape who stood in Egypt as a living symbol and remembrance of the Third Root-Race.	60
The first Three Races were Divine Dynasties, superhuman Celestial Spirits, Titans and Kings, born one from the other mentally in Bharata-Varsha (India), land of divine knowledge and initiation.	60
They informed the mind of animal men of the middle and late Third Race, during the present (Fourth) Round, in seven stages.	61
<b>Evolution of complexion and types.</b>	
Early Third Race men were the Titans of the Secondary Age.	62
They were the real Sons of God on earth, a Holy Race:	63
They were four-armed hermaphrodites with a third eye at the back of the head.	63
The transference of the pineal gland, once the "third eye," to the forehead is by exoteric, artistic licence.	65
That Holy Race consisted of men who, at their zenith, were described as "towering giants of godly strength and beauty, and the depositaries of all the mysteries of Heaven and Earth."	65
They lived in Hedone-Eden, the Paradesha of the first Sanskrit-speaking people.	66
Today, the only pure and direct descendants of the Third Race are the "fallen" and degenerated Australians, whose far-distant ancestors belonged to its seventh subrace.	66
Like the Khoikhoi of South-western Africa, the Malays and Papuans are mixed stock, resulting from the intermarriages of low Atlantean subraces with the seventh subrace of the Third Root-Race. Thus they are of indirect Lemuro-Atlantean descent.	67
<b>Holy procreation about to turn into animal gratification, celestial fire into terrestrial.</b>	
The generative force, spiritual at the beginning, turned material on the physical plane. Our present mode of procreation began towards the end of the third Root-Race.	68
The followers of the Lesser Mysteries were allowed to perceive things only through a mist, as it were, "with eyes closed." But the Initiates or Seers of the Greater Mysteries, "those who see things unveiled," were taught the true Mysteries of the Zodiac, and the relations and correspondences between its twelve constellations and the ten orifices of the human body.	68

The difference in the number of orifices between man and woman is merely exoteric.	69
The connection between Zodiac and orifices stems from the power of mental procreation that was coeval with the Third Race.	69
The third and last semi-spiritual, sexless race was also the last vehicle of the divine, innate Wisdom of its Enochs and Seers. The union of Wisdom and Intelligence, the former ruling the latter, is called in the Hermetic texts “the God possessing the double fecundity of the two sexes.”	70
The mystery of inactive and active, separating and separated androgynes will now be explained.	70
Third Race men began separating in their prenatal shells or eggs, and issuing out of them as distinct male and female babies.	71
<b>Separation of the sexes begun.</b>	
The primitive rite of covenanting by inter-transfusion of blood began in the Third Race, in commemoration of the separation of the sexes, and was firmly established in the Fourth.	74
The first man and woman, the biblical Enoch, appeared in the fifth sub-race of the Third Root-Race.	74
<b>Fourth Root-Race: The Atlantean</b>	
Synoptic overview.	75
Pivotal attributes of the first four Root-Races.	76
<b>Fifth Root-Race: The Aryan</b>	
<b>Divine Kings incarnated on earth to teach nascent humanity.</b>	
The Atlanteans were the first purely human, earthly race; Aryans, are the second.	77
“Two nations are in thy womb,” saith the Lord to Rebekah.	77
The wise leaders of our race lived their lives in learning, not teaching.	77
What they knew, they passed on in solemn silence and secrecy to the elect.	78
They are the Sons of the Fire, the King-Instructors who incarnated here on earth to teach nascent Humanity.	78
They are led by Gautama Shakyamuni, called the Fourth and Fifth Buddha because during the Fourth Round He presides over the Fifth Root-Race.	78
He is Samanta Bhadra, a Universal Sage.	79
In Hindu Occultism, divine consciousness and its human reflections on earth are symbolised by Vaivasvata Manu who is in charge of our present Fourth Round, the Indian Noah and progenitor of the thinking men of the present Fifth Race, one of forty-nine that emanated from the Root-Manu.	79
<b>Humanity has now come of age.</b>	
Our Fifth Root-Race begun its existence 1,000,000 years ago.	80
The Great Cataclysm that sunk the Fourth Continent beneath the floor of what is now the Atlantic Ocean took place 200,000 after the dawn of our race.	80
We have since passed the middle point in the Great Cycle. The door for further sparks of the Divine Fire entering the human kingdom is now closed and the balance struck.	80

Humanity's Fifth Root-Race (Drawing).	80
Though somewhat more refined, the animal propensities of the age are not the less developed for that, for we are still in the acme of materiality.	82
The struggle for animal existence has already begun yielding slowly but surely to the struggle for divine existence.	82
But psychism will seduce and snag many a forerunner of the next subrace.	82
When the hour strikes, the wicked shall be destroyed by fire and their power annihilated. And their names shall be blotted out of the holy books.	83
<b>Continents evolve on parallel lines with races; and races, with soil and climate.</b>	
Enoch stands for the first subrace of the Fifth Root-Race, and for the two preceding Root-Races with their fourteen subraces.	84
While the Puranas pay more attention to spiritual causes than to effects, the Bible plunges the faithful into material genesis, nearly skips the pre-Adamic races, and then proceeds developing its allegories concerning the Fifth Root-Race.	84
The appearance of the Great Continents follows the order of evolution of the Great Races, from the First to the Fifth. Europe is the Fifth Continent.	85
Human races evolved on parallel lines with the evolution of three geological strata, from which their complexion was as much derived as it was determined by the climate of those zones. The three fundamental colours are red, yellow, and black. When mixed in variable quantities with the white of the skin, they give rise to numerous shades.	86
The first subrace of the Aryan Fifth Race witnessed the doom of the last of Atlanteans 850,000 years ago. The fourth, that of the last island of Atlantis, 11,000 years ago.	87
The early Aryans were giants. But they have since degenerated morally and physically.	89
Incas were the first offshoot of the first subrace of the Fifth Race.	89
They were followed by the Egyptians and the early Chinese.	89
Aryan Hindus were the last offshoot of the first subrace.	89
Aeolians, Dorians, and Ionians were remnants of Atlantean stock.	89
But the blood of the true Roman was Hellenic from its beginning.	90
Today's spiritually highest men are the Aryan Asiatics; those intellectually highest are their white conquerors, men of the seventh subrace.	90
Redskins, Eskimos, Papuans, Australians, Polynesians, all are dying out now. The time is drawing near when there will remain nothing but three great human types, the White, the Yellow, and the African Black, with their Atlanto-European divisions.	91
<b>The ape is not a product of natural evolution but an accidental cross-breed between animal and man.</b>	
It is the ape that is a "special and unique instance," not man. The pithecoïd is an accidental creation, the result of an unnatural process, a forced growth.	92
Still, he is "a god on earth who had fallen into matter" or generation.	92
Apes appeared millions of years after the "speaking men," and are the latest contemporaries of the Aryan Root-Race. Their unprogressed Egos were compelled by Karma to incarnate in animal forms as a punishment for the bestiality they displayed from the late Third to the early Fourth Root-Race. They are dwarfed and degraded examples of	

ourselves as we were then. The “speechless men” will become speaking animals (men of a lower order) in the Fifth Round, perhaps at the close of the Sixth Root-Race.	93
The Hindus attribute a divine origin to apes and monkeys because they recognise that these “senseless” mortals of the Third Race were once gods from another plane.	94
<b>Man is a unity only at his origin and at his very end, not in-between</b>	
Up to the Fifth Race, animal and man were on a par as to suffering, in their efforts to unfold divine consciousness here on earth. Today, karma weighs heavily on the shoulders of thinking, therefore, responsible men.	96
The heaviest Karma of our race was generated by ourselves in the previous race. As Atlanteans, we misused our divine powers and made the holy tabernacle, designed for a god, fane of every spiritual iniquity.	96
Yet, in its infancy, mankind “was of one lip and of one speech,” had one doctrine and one philosophy.	97
The deadly strife between spirit and matter, light and darkness, goodness and evil, began on our globe with the first appearance of contrasts and opposites in vegetable and animal nature, and continued more fiercely than ever after man had become the selfish and wicked being he now is.	97
Man is a Unity only at his origin and at his very end. In the intermediate period, there is a ceaseless struggle between divine wisdom and its earthly reflection, between truth and error. If man can emerge from the region of lust and iniquity victorious, he may rebecome what he was before and retire into the Silence and Darkness whence he came.	98
The ancients revered the pristine spirituality of their divine ancestors. The modern anthropomorphists prefer to worship male gods that they “created” after their own fleshly organs.	99
<b>Æther and Ether compared and contrasted.</b>	
The ancients divided the senses into five simply because their teachers stopped at the hearing, as being a sense that became limited at the beginning of the Fifth Race.	101
As the sixth sense has hardly sprouted above the soil of materiality, few can at present enjoy the legitimate outgrowth and endowments of the higher life.	101
Men of the Fourth Round have now reached the latter half of the Fifth Root-Race. Those of the Fifth Round, though only in their First Root-Race, are immeasurably higher than we are today, spiritually if not intellectually.	102
<b>Man is the child of Cyclic Necessity.</b>	
Humanity has crossed the meridian of perfect adjustment between spirit and matter, or equilibrium between spiritual perception and brain intellect.	103
Ether has begun purging the dross of sensuality, and is dawning upwards toward Æther.	104
Though the earthly spirit of the Fourth Race is still strong in us, we are approaching the time when the pendulum of evolution will direct its swing decidedly upwards, bringing us back on a parallel line with the primitive Third Root-Race in Spirituality.	104
The formation of the next subrace has already begun in America.	105
Americans are the germs of the last two subraces of the Fifth Root-Race, in preparation for the emergence of the Sixth.	105
Global submersions and destructions by wave and volcanic fire will spell the end of our Fifth Race. But when the Sixth Race commences there will be no more Americans.	106



Man is the child of Cyclic Destiny. Cycles of Materiality will be succeeded by Cycles of Spirituality, and fully developed faculties will open up the sixth sense. The majority of future men will be glorious Adepts.	107
Unfortunately, the mind of the present generation is not ready to receive occult truths. Such will be the privilege of the advanced thinkers of the Sixth Root-Race.	107
The Rays of the Divine Monad are not destined to become wholly self-conscious and self-dependant entities in this Round, before the Last Root-Race in the Last Round of this Manvantara.	108
The entrance into a dark room through the same aperture of one ray of sunlight following another will not constitute two rays, but one ray intensified.	108
Even in the coming Seventh Root-Race, at the close of the Fourth Round, while our four lower principles will be fully developed that of Manas will be only proportionately so.	108
Bhaumika or Earthly Manvantara (Drawing).	109

### **Sixth Root-Race: The Enlightened**

Having lost spirituality in favour of physical development at the close of the Fourth Root-Race, we are now gradually but imperceptibly losing physicality until the Sixth Race will be on a par with the spirituality of the Second, the long extinct prehistoric race. Then, all human iniquities will have vanished into endless space, and ether into Æther.	111
The first Five Root-Races are symbolised by a five-faced Shiva who, in the Sixth, will be called the six-faced or six-pointed star.	111
Toward the beginning of the next Root-Race man will finally come of age, and many of the hitherto secret knowledge will become common knowledge.	112
The last subrace of the Sixth Root-Race will be flourishing on top of old "Lemuria" and "Atlantis," the continents of which will have resurfaced by then. The British Isles will be no more as they are the first part of Europe to be destroyed by submarine volcanos and water; France and other lands will follow suit.	112
<b>The so-called "fourth dimension of space" is the sixth characteristic of matter and harbinger of the sixth sense.</b>	
Water, one of four primordial Elements, was transmitted to us by the Fourth Root-Race, as we shall transmit Æther, the Fifth Element, to the Sixth. Then our sixth sense shall be awakened.	113
"The fourth dimension" is an unfortunate verbalism. Space and time are often viewed outside mental perceptions and experiences rather as what they truly are, fanciful generalizations of lower minds. Giving reality to abstractions is an error of realism.	113
The next characteristic of matter or "permeability" (spiritual sight) will correspond to the sixth sense, that of "normal clairvoyance," for any perception must be related to senses. Then, those who have been seeking a "fourth dimension" to explain the passage of matter through matter shall find what they sought, the sixth characteristic of matter.	114
Since the three dimensions (length–breadth–thickness) belong but to one characteristic of matter (extension), common sense justly rebels against the suggestion that there can be more than three.	114
Normal, spiritual clairvoyance is the opposite of psychic; the latter is abnormal and counterfeit.	114
The Third Eye or Eye of Dangma of the stanzas of Dzyan will open again, and the minds of those who will live at that time shall be awakened and become as pellucid as crystal.	115

## Seventh Root-Race: Immortal Gods

By the middle of the Seventh Root-Race, the struggle between the two Opposing Powers (Buddhi and Kama-Manas, on our plane) will have almost died out. Everything that is irredeemably sinful and wicked will have been eliminated. What may have survived will be swept away by Karmic tidal-waves in the shape of scavenger-plagues, geological convulsions, and other means of destruction. 116

The Adept in charge of the Seventh Root-Race will be the future Planetary Spirit, a Dhyani-Chohan who shall instruct the First Root-Race of the Fifth Round after the scheduled obscuration of our planet. 117

He will appear as Maitreya-Buddha, the last of Avatars and Buddhas. 117

Each Root-Race is a new "birth" or transformation of the same company of actors, one of seven keynotes for many a subsequent birth in subraces, each carrying the Divine Monad higher and higher until it reaches the Seventh Race. 117

Men who will be thus transformed by virtue at the end of our Kali Age of Darkness shall be the seeds of future human beings, and shall give birth to the ultimate race that, following the laws of the Krita Age of Purity, will be born of immaculate parents. 118

Peoples at the end of the Sixth and Seventh Root-Races will be sexless again. They will correspond to the "Pudding Bags" of the First in appearance, but empowered by the highest intelligence and spirituality. 118

They will be led by Dharmaprabhasa Buddha, who shall appear when gender and all other illusions of separateness will no longer exist. 119

Then the Adepts and Initiates of the Seventh Root-Race will once more create mind-born Immaculate Sons. 119

Finally, when the sixth sense has awakened the seventh, Chrēstos shall be regenerated as Christos and will illumine the souls of all men. "And they will listen to my voice; and they shall become one flock under one Shepherd." 119

### **A glimpse of the close of the Seventh Root-Race in the Seventh Round, when all men shall be equal to Angels.**

The great cycle of (and struggle for) conscious life begun with the separation of the sexes and will end in the Last Race of the Last Round. 121

Humanity is already on the ascending arc. At the close of the Forty-Ninth Race in the Seventh Round of this Manvantara, the Divine Monad shall be pure again, unsullied by evil and temptation, as it was in the very beginning. It shall then be transported to new heights of consciousness by the aroma of its cumulative earthly experience and wisdom. 121

Until the Last Battle in the Last Round is fought and won, the Holy Tree of Life cannot wither. 122

That is why the Hindu sage has to light the First and extinguish the Forty-Ninth Fire before reaching his final deliverance. 122

He who, through a long series of births under Karmic law, shall reach the end of the Manvantara, shall become "equal unto the Angels," and shall die no more. 122

## Appendix A. Esoteric History of the Root-Continents.

The physical frame of man became ready to receive the divine Pilgrim 18,000,000 years ago, after the first great failure of nature to create human beings without the help of the divine "Fashioners." 124

### **First Continent, Imperishable Sacred Land.**

Land of gods under their chiefs, the Spirits of Planet Earth, cradle of the First Root-Race, and dwelling of the last divine mortal. 125

**Second Continent, Hyperborean.**

Asia is the Root-Continent, as old as the Second Race, yet contemporary with man. 126

The history of Root-Races begins at the separation of the sexes, when the preceding egg-bearing androgynous men perished rapidly, and the succeeding subraces of the Third Root-Race appeared as an entirely new race physiologically. The actual duration of the first 2½ races is withheld from all but the higher Initiates. 126

**Third Continent, Lemuria.**

Lemuria, a term coined by Sclater, was the land of the first androgynes. 128

And the cradle of the Third Root-Race. 128

The Lemurians built huge cities of rare earths and metals. The oldest remains of Cyclopean buildings are the handwork of their last subraces. 129

There were Continents and Kings before Atlantis. 130

But while their pastoral brethren enjoyed wondrous powers as their birthright, Third Race men could obtain theirs only gradually. 131

**Cataclysms mark the end of one race and the beginning of a new one.**

The Third Continent perished 700,000 years before the commencement of what is now called the Tertiary Age (Eocene). It was during this deluge that Vaivasvata Manu saved a portion of the Fourth and Fifth Races before the destruction of the last Atlanteans, the remnants of which perished 850,000 years ago. 132

The cataclysm that destroyed Lemuria was due to a series of subterranean convulsions and the breaking asunder of the ocean floors. That which put an end to its successor, Atlantis, was brought on by successive disturbances in the axial rotation of the Earth. The former was the result of periodical, geological law; the latter, the curse of Karma. 132

There were dolphins in the trees, disturbing the upper branches and stirring the oak-trees as they brush against them. Wolves swam among the sheep. The sea in unchecked freedom buried the hills, and fresh waves beat against the mountaintops. The waters washed away most living things, and those the sea spares, lacking food, were defeated by slow starvation. 133

Three yugas slowly passed away during the time of the Third Root-Race. 134

Our globe continues to be subject to periodical changes which go hand-in-hand with the races. 135

**Duration of humanity in mortal years.**

Duration of each Planetary Round in this Minor Manvantara 137

Duration of humanity in this Round, on each Planet 137

Duration of human life-waves in this Round, on Planet Earth 137

**Appendix B. Enoch-Enoïchion is Inner Eye and Voice.**

The prophecies of Enoch extend to the end of our present race but are not his own, they were given by a great Seer. 138

The First Root-Race came to an end during the second subrace of the Third. 139

But the Elect of humanity have been already led to safety by their First Hierophant at the very close of the Second Race. 139

The achievements of humanity in arts, sciences, and philosophy from the early Third to the very end of the Fourth Race have been concealed by Enoch in the bowels of the Earth before the Deluge. 140

Euthanasia then symbolised the death of the physical body of an adept, who continues to live in his astral body here on earth for the benefit of all living men; not the painless suicide of today's common man. 141

Enoch stands for the first subrace of the Fifth Root-Race, and as a personification of the two preceding races. 141

He is also a symbol of man's dual nature: Solar and Spiritual, esoterically; Lunar and Material, exoterically. 141

His Book is a résumé of the main features of the history of the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Races. 143

### **The Third Eye first opened in the Third Race.**

Even today, the pineal gland, seat of the Third Eye, though withdrawn and atrophied, is far more connected with Soul and Spirit than with the physiological senses of man. 143

The two front eyes look before them without seeing either past or future. The third, embraces eternity. 144

In man, the Third Eye was (and could be) the organ of internal spiritual sight; in animals, that of objective vision. 144

## **Appendix C. Toils of the Eternal Pilgrim.**

Each Cosmic Monad is a self-born Centre of Force, from within which emerges a planetary chain whose radiations become many self-born Manus, each the creator of His own humanity. 146

While we have the power to dispel the darkness of ignorance, we are also duty-bound to preserve Sacred Truth from profanation. 147

Man's spiritual soul has descended from a pure, luminous, incorporeal form to be chained to animal bodies. 148

### **Man was on earth in this round from the very beginning.**

Having passed through all the kingdoms of nature in the previous three rounds, his physical frame was ready to receive the Divine Pilgrim at the first dawn of human life, 18,000,000 years ago. 149

Having been nursed by Air or Wind, primordial man becomes perfect later on when, with the development of "Spiritual Fire" or Divine Spirit (noumenon of the "Three in One" within), he gradually acquires from his Inner Self or Instructor, the Wisdom of Self-Consciousness, which he does not possess in the beginning. 149

All creatures in the world have each a superior above, whose inner pleasure it is to emanate into them but cannot illumine them until the supreme but latent potentiality concealed in Matter is awakened by Spirit. 150

Only few men were destined to become incarnations of the Divine Rebels. 151

### **Consciousness evolves along triple lines, spiritual, psychic and physical.**

For the first 3½ Root-Races, the astral shadows of the Lunar Pitris build and gradually force the evolution of the physical form towards perfection, at the cost of a proportionate loss of Spirituality. Then after, it is the Higher Ego or Incarnating Principle, the Nous or Mind, that begins reigning over the animal ego if not dragged down by the latter. In other words, Spirituality is on its ascending arc, if not impeded by materiality or selfishness.

Vice and wickedness are abnormal, unnatural manifestations at this period of our human evolution, at least they ought to be so. 152

### **Appendix D. The fall of Spirit into Matter and its primal division into self and not-self, altruism and egotism, man and woman.**

The allegory of the "fall" of man and the fire "stolen" by Prometheus is another version of proud Lucifer's "rebellion." 155

The sacred fire that Prometheus allegedly stole from Zeus is the flame of conscious intellect, the spark that animates Manas, our fifth principle, and makes us Thinking men; it is also the generating and sexual flame. 155

Now, since men had discovered the secret of creation and were creating in their turn and populating the earth, what was the use of god-creators? 156

The descent of man into matter is the downward arc of a Circle of Necessity, where his primordial spirituality becomes increasingly eclipsed by nascent mentality. 156

Ādi, and probably Adam, is the First Man or the "Third First Man," one who belongs to the Third Race. 157

#### **Man may be made out of stardust but not of clay.**

The idea that the human tabernacle is built by countless lives, just in the same way as the rocky crust of our Earth was, has nothing repulsive in it for the true mystic. 158

Every atom in the Universe is both life-giving to form when receiving the transmigrating soul, and death-giving when the latter's hour has struck. It creates and kills. It is self-generating and self-destroying. 158

Man, from the First down to the Seventh Root-Race, is composed of one and the same company of actors, who have descended from higher spheres to perform their artistic tour on this, our Planet Earth. 160

If the student can understand how Spirit falls into Matter and the self-sacrifice of Cain and Abel, i.e., the loss of spiritual potency of the Second Race that transformed Humanity into the physical men of the Third, he will also solve the riddle of the Divine Hermaphrodite. 161

Jehovah is merely a composite name for membrum virile and womb, and nothing more. In one sense Jehovah is Noah or, literally translated, the British Inch! 162

### **Appendix E. On the Divine Instructors of our Fifth Race and Their degradation by the Churches.**

What is called history does not go further back than the origin of our fifth subrace or so far back as the Lemurian Deluge, that Great Dragon whose tail sweeps whole nations out of existence in the twinkling of an eye. 163

The Adepts of the first three Root-Races lived in subterranean habitats and pyramids. 163

Much confusion is caused by the foolishness of the Arcadians who claimed that they were older than the Moon, and the self-glorification of the Atticans who boasted that they had existed before the Sun appeared in heaven! 164

Yet, Man and Stars are bound together indissolubly. 164

Several deluges are mixed up in the memories of the peoples of our Fifth Race: the first, was astronomical and cosmical; the subsequent ones, terrestrial. The astronomical records of Universal History begun in the third subrace of the Atlantean Race. 165

The only ones that Satan will ever haunt are the Church and its followers. 166

The Hierarchy of Compassion (Drawing).	166
<b>Serpents and Dragons under different symbolisms.</b>	
Having plagiarised the ancient rites of initiation to construct the new dogma, profane clergy made a habit of cursing the same rites in order to cover their tracks.	168
<b>Sidereal and Cosmic glyphs explained.</b>	
Zoroastrian Esotericism is identical with that of the Secret Doctrine.	170
Esoterically, the North Pole or Mount Meru is the heavenly abode of gods; the South Pole or Patala is the earthly hell.	171
Helion and Acheron meant nearly the same.	171
Our Dhyani-Chohans or Serpents of Wisdom are the Star-Yazatas of the Zoroastrians, the Star Angels of the Christians, the Seven Planets of every religion. They are our Divine Progenitors, "Builders," and "Watchers."	172
When we become sufficiently spiritualised, there will be no more need of learning about the Ancient Wisdom from books, we will then simply <i>know</i> .	172
The Kabeiroi represent the earth's poles as they are now, or inverted as they have been in the past and shall be in future, displacing the oceans, submerging the polar lands, and rearranging the continents.	173
Our Dhyani-Chohans appear under many different names: Agathodaimon, Aletae, Anakes, Corybantes, Curetes, Dii Magni, Dioscuri, Enoch, Hermes, Idaeï Dactyli, Kabeiroi, Lares, Manes, Penates, Seth, Titans.	174
While in Samothrace and the oldest Egyptian temples these great Cosmic Gods were the Seven and the Forty-nine Sacred Fires, in the Grecian fanes they became mostly phallic deities and therefore obscene and offensive.	175
It is said that there were only two Kabeiroi, the Dioscuri (Castor and Pollux), esoterically; and Jupiter and Bacchus, exoterically.	176
Kabeiroi meant "mighty through fire." As their temples were built in volcanic localities and were worshiped as Chthonian divinities, Christianity made of them "infernal" gods.	177
Hermes, Orpheus, Cadmus, Asclepius, and all those who incarnated on earth to guide and teach nascent humanity, are all generic names.	177
Serpents were revered by every people of antiquity with two notable exceptions, that of the Greeks, who transformed Jupiter and other gods into snakes in order to seduce goddesses, and of the Christians who chose to forget the brazen Serpent of Moses.	178
<b>Our Divine Instructors are the Dhyani-Chohans of the Secret Doctrine.</b>	
Our races have sprung from divine races, our Dhyani-Chohans, and by whatever name they are now called. They reigned on earth, teaching all the great sciences that have come down to us.	179
Enoch, the "divine giant," is identified with Hermes. There were five Hermeses, or rather one in several different characters, always credited with having transferred all sciences from latency to potency to Egypt and Greece before the days of Magna Græcia, when Greeks were not even Hellenes.	180
The Pyramid was one grand symbol of this magnificent Hierarchy of Spirits.	181
Africa appeared before Europe but later than Lemuria and even the earliest Atlantis. What is now Egypt and the deserts was once upon a time an ocean. Delta was the first country occupied by immigrants who came with their gods from the Northeast. The poles have since been three times within the plane of the Ecliptic.	182

**SECRET DOCTRINE'S SECOND PROPOSITION SERIES**  
**CONTENTS AND ABSTRACT OF CENTRAL IDEAS**

Divine Kings-Initiates had been born on earth one from the other (without the intervention of woman) well before the era of Menes, the first human King of Egypt, and taught us Astronomy, Architecture, and Anatomy.	182
Happy are those who are born in Bharata-Varsha, exclaim the incarnated gods themselves!	183
The natural good sense and upright judgment of the ancient peoples was quite foreign to our entirely materialistic ideas upon celestial mechanics and physical sciences. In stars the ancients saw living bodies animated by spirits, as they saw the same in every kingdom of nature.	183
Materialists live on this earth, just as in the world of insects and even fishes some creatures live surrounded by myriads of their own kind, without seeing or sensing them. They live among numberless hosts of spirits, immeasurably superior to the human race, higher and holier than the highest Saint on Earth, and yet they may never give them a single thought.	184
The Third Continent, home of the Third Root-Race, consisted of two physically and morally distinct classes, ruled by Divine Kings. It perished some 850,000 years ago.	185
It is difficult to obtain clear and precise ideas on royalty, its origin and power, without knowledge of the first principles of history and tradition, says Plato.	186
Saturn, knowing that man could not rule man without injustice filling forthwith the universe through his whims and vanity, would not allow any mortal to obtain power over his fellow creatures.	186
When the world had ceased to be so governed, and the gods retired, "ferocious beasts devoured a portion of mankind." Divine Instructors then incarnated successively and "discovered" fire, wheat, and wine. And public gratitude deified them.	187
Wheat has never been found in the wild state for it is not a product of the earth. It is a symbol of man's inner principles, that is why it was so sacred with the Egyptian priests.	187
One of our Divine Instructors is Sirius, the double of Mercury or Budha before all other Buddhas.	188
The amount of malicious fancy and fiction bestowed on mankind's Benefactors and Instructors by various fanatical writers is quite extraordinary. The scriptures are riddled with contradiction and confusion.	189
Angels aspire to become men, for the perfect man is above angel, says Éliphas Lévi, only if he could realise his divine ancestry and stellar destiny.	191
Occult symbolism unlocks the mystery of the terrestrial archangel of the Christians and the Celestial Dragon/Serpent of the Archaic Wisdom-Religion by reversing the characters. Theological symbolics conceal them even more.	191
Thus the Latin Church calls itself the bride of Christ and the trustee of Peter, to whom the rebuke of the Master, "get thee behind me Satan," was justly addressed. The Protestant Church replaces the New Dispensation by the old "Law of Moses," which Christ openly repudiated: both Churches are fighting against Divine Truth when spurning and slandering the Dragon of Inner Wisdom.	191
<b>Origin of the Satanic Myth.</b>	
One of several "Wars in Heaven" is a terrestrial one: it refers to those terrible struggles in store for the candidate for adeptship, between his Heavenly Self and his earthly passions that he strives to master, that is, to slay the dragon of his lower nature and, having cast off his old skin, to become a Son of Serpent, a Son of Wisdom.	194

Another “War in Heaven” is astronomical, referring to the Solar and Lunar eclipses that are connected with the circulations of Cosmos, the movement of electromagnetic forces between planetary bodies. Eclipses are especially related to the transference of life-energy from one celestial body to another and stand in direct relationship to human initiations.	195
The Sun-gods of the old Aryan, ancient Greek, and modern Christian schemes have been copied from each other.	195
One way to unriddle the Bible is through Hermes, Bel, and Homer, as the way to these is through the Hindu and Chaldean religious symbols.	197
In addition to the religious, astronomical, and geological events included in the universal allegory of Dragons and the “Wars in Heaven” already stated, there is a cosmological connection with the Keshvars of the Earth.	198
Keshvars, in their seven applications, refer equally to the seven spheres of our planetary chain, the seven planets, the seven heavens, etc., according to whether the sense is applied to physical, supra-mundane, or simply a sidereal worlds.	198
The grotesque connections and connotations of Genesis’ seducing serpent will be now exposed.	199
Cosmologically speaking, all Dragons and Serpents conquered by their “slayers” are the turbulent, confused principles in Chaos that are brought to order by the Sun-gods or Creative Powers.	199
It is in the religious doctrines of the Gnostics that the real meaning of the Dragon, the Serpent, the Goat, and all those symbols of Divine Powers (now called “Evil”) can be clearly seen for what they truly are: prototypes for the Saraph of Moses and his great Brazen Serpent, chief of the “fiery serpents.”	200
Even the name of the “Lord” was profaned by crude and gross application to religious dogmas and personations. Jehovah is a blind created purposely by the Rabbis, a secret preserved by them with ten-fold care after the Christians had despoiled them of this God-name which was their own property.	202
Yah-Havah or mankind and Satan, the Serpent of Seduction, are one and the same in every particular. There is no Devil or Evil outside mankind and its religions.	203
Metaphysically, Satan represents the reverse or polar opposite of everything in nature. Yet the Church has degraded and anathematised the Satanians, the Cainites, and even Judas Iscariotes.	203
Every Gnostic sect was founded by an Initiate.	203
In every ancient system, the fallen Angels are made the prototypes of fallen men, allegorically, and of those men themselves, esoterically. In Christianity, all combatants, gods and demons, adversaries in both camps, are now transformed into Dragons and Satans, simply in order to connect Evil personified with the Serpent of Genesis, and thus prove the new dogma.	204
<b>Noah was a Kabeiros hence he must have been a Demon.</b>	
Noah is either a myth along with the others, or one whose legend was built upon the Kabeirian or Titanic tradition as taught in Samothrace; he has, therefore, no claim to be monopolized by either Jew or Christian.	205
Like Samothrace of the Kabeiroi, Rhodes island is connected in the memory of men with the flood legends.	205



The Kabeiroi are identical with our Dhyani-Chohans, with the corporeal and the incorporeal Pitris, and with all rulers and instructors of the primeval races who are referred to as the Gods and Kings of the divine Dynasties. 206

**Old Persian traditions about polar and submerged continents.**

Before the creation of (Genesis' third) Adam, two races succeeded each other on earth: the gigantic Daevas, strong and wicked; and the Peris, smaller in stature but wiser and kinder. 208

From the first appearance of the Aryan Race, when the Pliocene portions of the once great Atlantis began gradually sinking and new continents surfacing, down to the final disappearance of Plato's small island of Atlantis, the Aryans had never ceased to fight with the descendants of the first giant race. 209

Initiates were not permitted to divulge anything pertaining to the correct measure of time. Images of Harpocrates, god of silence, each pressing a finger to the lips, reminded the solemn pledge of the secrecy in every temple. 211

And yet, we, Europeans accepted the exoteric chronology of the Jews! No wonder that it has influenced and coloured ever since all our conceptions of science and the duration of things! 211

Tahmurath, third king of Persia, is the St. George of Iran. Like his grand-sire Hoshang, but unlike St. George, Tahmurath also had his steed only far more rare and rapid, a bird called Simurgh-Anka, the Manvantaric cycle. 212

Esoterically, Adam Rishon is the lunar spirit. Cosmo-geologically, Noah-Xisuthrus represents the Third Root-Race separated. Their three sons are its last three subraces. 213

Simurgh-Anka promised that before she dies she will reveal the First Continent, the Imperishable Sacred Land, presently concealed from all. 214

In the beginning of human life the only dry land was on the North Pole of our globe, where the earth was still. It will continue to exist for the duration of the Manvantara of this Round. New continents and lands will emerge from the sea bottom many times, but that Holy Land will never change. 215

The North Pole is the head of Mother Earth; the South, her feet. Life in the form of electro-magnetic currents springing from her bowels and head, and circulating through her arteries, is her blood. 215

Northern Asia is the Root-Continent of human life, hence contemporary with man. 216

The First Continent that came into existence capped over the whole North Pole like one unbroken crust, and remains so to this day. 216

**Western speculations are founded on Greek and Puranic traditions.**

There is not a single statement in the Puranas that has not several meanings, and does not apply to both physical and metaphysical worlds. 218

Occultism likens the Himalayan chain to a belt that stretches around the globe, whether under the water or above. The Earth's navel is situated West of the Himalayas, in which lie the roots and foundations of Meru. The mythical mountain is North of the Himalayas in the Polar Land that never perishes. 219

There are Seven Great Continents: the first, always lives; the next three have already lived their day; the fifth exists today; the last two will appear in future. 220

The Hindu Aryans and other ancient nations were much earlier navigators than the Phœnicians, who are now credited with having been the first seamen in post-diluvian times. 221

They described the last surviving island of Atlantis (remnant of the eastern portion of that continent that had perished soon after the upheaval of the Americas) as antipode to India, i.e., the two Varshas of Pushkara that lay at the foot of Meru.	222
Shankhasura, Shankha-dvipa, and all their history are geographically and ethnologically Plato's Atlantis in Hindu dress.	223
When Leo was vertical of Ceylon at sunset, then would Taurus be vertical to the island of Atlantis at noon.	223
The peak of Teneriffe was a volcano when the sinking of Western Atala began, as those who were saved told their children.	224
Enough proofs have now been given to satisfy the greatest sceptic.	225
<b>Why and how did the Promethean Sacrifice become a curse, the chief cause of evil?</b>	
The creative powers in man were the gift of Divine Wisdom, not the result of sin.	227
But the seed of woman or lust bruised the seed of the fruit of wisdom and knowledge, by turning the holy mystery of spiritual procreation into animal gratification.	228
Thus the Divine Titan has suffered in vain.	228
And in the injustice of the human heart, our Saviours and Benefactors, the Celestial Sons of the Fire of Wisdom, are now left unrecognized and unthanked.	229
The Creative Fire received has turned into the greatest curse, since animal man degraded periodical instinct into chronic animalism and sensuality.	229
There was never an original sin but only an abuse of physical intelligence, in spite of the efforts of the Churches to make us all congenital sinners only to be saved by a fictitious and fickle god through his self-appointed agents on earth.	230
The Promethean myth points to the last of the mysteries of cyclic human transformations, from ethereal to solid physical state, from spiritual to physiological procreation, and now toward the next phase when woman will know no man, and human progeny will be created, not begotten.	232
When that knowledge comes, all dogmatic religions and their demons will die out.	233
Then, Prometheus, the divine aspect of the Astral Soul, will merge into Buddhi, the Spiritual Soul, through which he shall be finally unshackled from the rock of matter and delivered from the thorns of human passions.	233
Alexander, having seen crocodiles in the river Indus and in no other river except the Nile, put two and two together and concluded that Nile rose from Indus.	234
Arrian, who was ignorant of the old name of the Indus, has unconsciously slandered the Greek conqueror.	235
In esoteric philosophy, Iō, the "cow-horned maid," symbolises Creative Nature; her bull calf is the Holy Spirit that vivifies her. She is also the Æthiopian pioneer race that emigrated from north-west India to Africa and named the great African river Æethiops or Nila, in memory of its home river. The latter is now called Indus; the former, Nile.	235
Æschylus was charged by the Athenians with sacrilege and condemned to be stoned to death for profaning the Mysteries.	236
Like Shakespeare, he was and will ever remain the Intellectual Sphinx of the ages.	236
Dionysos is one with Osiris, Krishna, and Buddha, and with the coming Avatara, the glorified Spiritual Christos who will deliver the suffering Man-Chrēstos, or Prometheus on his trial. Then, future generations will be born again without sin.	237

SECRET DOCTRINE'S SECOND PROPOSITION SERIES  
CONTENTS AND ABSTRACT OF CENTRAL IDEAS

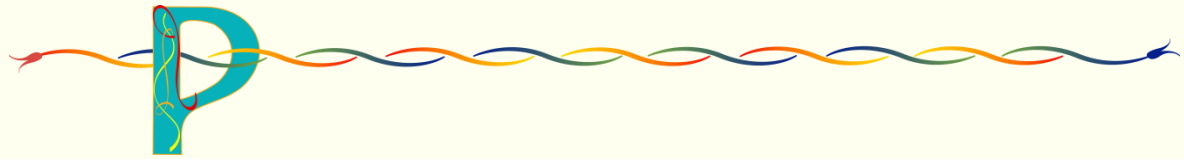
Why and how did the Promethean sacrifice become a curse, the chief cause of evil? Because though mankind is "of one blood," it is not of the same essence: god-informed men and lower human creatures, the latter bereft of the "sacred spark," live side by side. 237

While the Heavenly Titan was moved by Altruism, earthly man is moved by Egoism in every instance. The struggle of Prometheus with the Olympic tyrant and despot, sensual Zeus, one sees enacted daily: lower passions chain higher aspirations to the rock of matter, and generate in many a case the vulture of sorrow, pain, and repentance. 238

Overview of the dual nature of deity, gods, and men 240

**Suggested reading for students.**

From our Secret Doctrine's Third Proposition Series. 241



## Notes by the Series Editor.

Anthropogenesis, the Third Fundamental Proposition of Theosophy, is the subject matter of Volume II of *The Secret Doctrine*. Selected fragments of a hitherto occult anthropo-geological evolution on planet earth, were examined in 2011 and published in four parts:

- 1 “Proposition 3 - The first four Root-Races”
- 2 “Appendices to the first four Root-Races”
- 3 “Proposition 3 - The last three Root-Races”
- 4 “Appendix on the Divine Instructors of our Race”

This volume is a compilation of the above parts.<sup>1</sup>

For a quick overview of Anthropogenesis, look up “Crowning achievement of the Great Sacrifice,” in the same Series.

### Quick definitions

Impulses of Monadic Consciousness proceed spirally, in curves that never re-enter into themselves but ever ascend to higher planes,<sup>2</sup> in a seven-fold pattern along a chain of seven man-bearing Globes (Planets or Spheres), re-visiting each one seven times.

Seven Monadic passages through Planet Earth complete a Globe Round. Each terrestrial passage gives rise to a new Root-Race of Humanity, commencing with the Ethereal and ending up with the Spiritual on parallel lines of physical and moral evolution.<sup>3</sup> The bulk of present day Humanity, scattered on the face of our globe, belongs to the Fifth Root-Race.

Globe Rounds evolve the Divine Monad spiritually; Planetary Rounds, physically and psychically. A Planetary Round or Ring is a single circuit of the Divine Monad through Seven Globes. Each Round evolves nascent material nature<sup>4</sup> through the successive development of Seven Occult Elements, Fire, Air, Water, Earth — so far,<sup>5</sup> by repeating on a higher scale the evolutionary work of the preceding Round.<sup>6</sup> Please refer to our drawing on page 22.

*The Secret Doctrine* focuses narrowly on the current, Fourth Round, of our Earth's minor manvantara. It is not concerned with other planets, except incidentally.<sup>7</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Also published in [Google Books](#).

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (THE STRUGGLE FOR EXISTENCE) XI p. 151

<sup>3</sup> Cf. *Secret Doctrine*, I p. 160

<sup>4</sup> Cf. *ibid.*, I p. 231

<sup>5</sup> Cf. *ibid.*, I p. 252

<sup>6</sup> Cf. *ibid.*, I p. 187

<sup>7</sup> Cf. *ibid.*, I p. 160

### Further reading

Independent thinkers may consult with profit related works, diagrams, and drawings in this Series, and in our Planetary Rounds and Globes Series.

Two compilations on the “Planetary Rounds of the Divine Monad” can be found in our Planetary Rounds and Globes Series; they are complementary to the subject matter and should be studied immediately after.

Wider and more complex relations of the Doctrine of Globe Rounds with other Doctrines will be examined in future studies.

CARL TAYLOR-ROBINSON  
Philaletheians UK Series Editor



### Our Planetary Chain of Seven Rounds (Drawing).

There now follows a drawing from our Planetary Rounds and Globes Series. — ED. PHIL.



Globe Z

**Duration of each Round**

Round 1	154,285,714
Round 2	308,571,428
Round 3	462,857,142
Round 4	617,142,856
Round 5	771,428,570
Round 6	925,714,284
Round 7	1,079,999,998
Total	4,319,999,992

(BCW XIII 303)

1 2 3 **4** 5 6 7

Globe A

Globe G

Globe B

Globe F

Globe C

Globe E

We are here! On Globe D, Round 4, Root-Race 5, our Beautiful Earth, fulcrum of the Great Kalpa, with its Seven Root-Races.

Globe D

Impulses of Spiritual Consciousness evolve wave-like in a 7-fold pattern along a chain of 7 man-bearing Globes (i.e., Planets or Spheres) plus 5 arupa-loka or unmanifested, re-visiting each one 7 times. A single passage through every Globe is termed Planetary Round or Ring, in the course of which 49 Root-Races of Humanity emerge, each one progressing through 7 Sub-Races (see Diagram 2). Every Round repeats on a higher scale the evolutionary work of the preceding Round. (Cf. SD I 187)

Integrative Theosophical Studies  
**OUR PLANETARY CHAIN OF SEVEN ROUNDS**  
 Diagram cum Emblem  
 After *The Divine Plan*, pp. 218, 342

A Day of Brahmā (Maha Brahmā) equal to 1,000 Maha Yugas, or 4,319,999,992 terrene years, followed by the Night of Brahmā, or Naimittika Maha Pralaya, of an equal duration. For an in-depth analysis of the Caduceus of the Spheres, see "Keys to the Mystery Language" in our Theosophy and Theosophists Series.

[www.philaletheians.co.uk](http://www.philaletheians.co.uk)  
Revision 10.13

# First Root-Race: The Shadows

## 1. Man's dual origin and birth.

### On the parentless birth of the Great Orphan.

From the bright “mind-born Sons of Brahmā,” the Rishis, and from Adam-Kadmon with his Emanations, the Sephīrōth, down to the “parentless,” the Anupapādaka, or the Dhyāni-Buddhas, from whom sprang the Bodhisattvas and Mānushya-Buddhas, the earthly Initiates — men — the first race of men was with every nation held as being born without father or mother. Man, the “Mānushya-Buddha,” the Manu, the “Enosh,” son of Seth, or the “Son of Man” as he is called — is born in the present way only as the consequence, the unavoidable fatality, of the law of natural evolution. Mankind — having reached the last limit, and that turning point where its spiritual nature had to make room for mere physical organization — had to “fall into matter” and generation.<sup>1</sup>

### Occultism affirms two births: a Spiritual, manifested through the potency inherent in unborn, unconditioned noetic essence; and a material evolution of discrete, physical elements.

There are students, however, who have long ago understood the philosophical meaning underlying the allegory — so tortured and disfigured by the Roman Church — of the *Fallen*<sup>2</sup> Angels. “The kingdom of spirits and spiritual action which flows from and is the product of spirit volition, is outside and contrasted with and in contradiction to the Kingdom of [divine] Souls and divine action.”<sup>3</sup> As said in the text of the *Commentary*, xiv:

*Like produces like and no more at the genesis of being, and evolution with its limited conditioned laws comes later. The Self-Existent<sup>4</sup> are called CREATIONS, for they appear in the Spirit Ray, manifested through the potency inherent in its UNBORN Nature, which is beyond time and [limited or conditioned] Space. Terrene products, animate and inanimate, including mankind, are falsely called creation and creatures: they are the development [evolution] of the discrete elements.*

<sup>1</sup> Blavatsky *Collected Writings*, (TRACES OF THE MYSTERIES) XIV pp. 289-90; [see Appendix D on the “fall” of man.]

<sup>2</sup> [i.e., chyuta. Cf. “Achyuta is an almost untranslatable term. It means that which is not subject to fall or change for the worse: the *Unfalling*; and it is the reverse of *chyuta*, ‘the Fallen.’ The Dhyānis who incarnate in the human forms of the *Third Root-Race* and endow them with intellect (Manas) are called the *chyuta*, for they fall into generation.” *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 47 *fn.*; on Stanza I.4a.]

<sup>3</sup> *New Aspects of Life and Religion*

<sup>4</sup> Angelic, Spiritual Essences, immortal in their being because unconditioned in Eternity; periodical and conditioned in their Manvantaric manifestations.

And again:

*The Heavenly rūpa [Dhyāni-Chohan] creates [man] in his own form; it is a spiritual ideation consequent on the first differentiation and awakening of the universal [manifested] Substance; that form is the ideal shadow of Itself; and this is THE MAN OF THE FIRST RACE.*

**Higher Angels (Solar Pitris) were commanded to create, to imbue primordial matter with evolutionary impulse, and to guide its formative powers in the fashioning of its productions. It is said that they “rebelled.”**

To express it in still clearer form, limiting the explanation to this earth only, it was the duty of the first “differentiated Egos” — the Church calls them Archangels — to imbue primordial matter with the evolutionary impulse and guide its formative powers in the fashioning of its productions. This it is which is referred to in the sentences both in the Eastern and Western tradition — “the Angels were *commanded to create.*” After the Earth had been made ready by the *lower* and more material powers, and its three Kingdoms fairly started on their way to be “fruitful and multiply,” the higher powers, the Archangels or Dhyānis, were compelled by the evolutionary Law to descend on Earth, in order to construct the crown of its evolution — MAN. Thus the “Self-created” and the “Self-existent” projected their pale shadows; but group the Third, the Fire-Angels, *rebelled and refused* to join their Fellow Devas.

**But there were no “rebels” as such: the Higher Angels would not create irresponsible men, nor could they endow human beings with only temporary reflections of their own attributes, as the “Obedient” Angels did at first: for, even though the latter belonged to another and much higher plane of consciousness, they would leave men still irresponsible and hence interfere with any possibility of higher progress.**

Hindu exotericism represents them all as *Yogīns*, whose piety inspired them to refuse *creating*, as they desired to remain eternally *Kumāras*, “Virgin Youths,” in order to, if possible, anticipate their fellows in progress towards Nirvāna — the final liberation. But, agreeably to esoteric interpretation, it was a self-sacrifice for the benefit of mankind. The “Rebels” would not create will-less irresponsible men, as the “obedient” angels did; nor could they endow human beings with only the temporary reflections of their own attributes; for even the latter, belonging to another and a so much higher plane of consciousness, would leave man still irresponsible, hence interfere with any possibility of a higher progress. No spiritual and psychic evolution is possible on earth — the lowest and most material plane — for one who on that plane, at all events, is inherently *perfect* and cannot accumulate either merit or demerit. Man remaining the pale shadow of the inert, immutable, and motionless perfection, the one negative and passive attribute of the real *I am that I am*,<sup>1</sup> would have been doomed to pass through life on earth as in a heavy dreamless sleep; hence a failure on this plane. The Beings, or the Being, collectively called Elōhīm, who first (if ever) pronounced the cruel words, “Behold, the man is become *as one of us*, to know good and evil; and now, lest he put forth his hand and take also of the tree of life and eat

---

<sup>1</sup> [Look up “Bestride the Bird of Life” in our Secret Doctrine’s First Proposition Series. — ED. PHIL.]



and live forever . . . ”<sup>1</sup> must have been indeed the Ialdabaōth, the *Demiurge* of the Nazarenes, filled with rage and envy against his own creature, whose reflection created *Ophiomorphos*.

**Satan, the Serpent of Genesis and favourite scapegoat of the Churches, is none other than Loving Lucifer and Harbinger of No-etic Light. He is our real father, benefactor, and true angel.**

In this case it is but natural — even from the dead-letter standpoint — to view *Satan*, the Serpent of *Genesis*, as the real creator and benefactor, the Father of Spiritual mankind. For it is he who was the “Harbinger of Light,” bright radiant Lucifer, who opened the eyes of the automaton *created* by Jehovah, as alleged; and he who was the first to whisper: “in the day ye eat thereof ye shall be as Elōhīm, knowing good and evil” — can only be regarded in the light of a Saviour. An “adversary” to Jehovah the “*personating spirit*,” he still remains in esoteric truth the ever-loving “Messenger” (the angel), the Seraphim and Cherubim who both *knew* well, and *loved* still more, and who conferred on us spiritual, instead of physical immortality — the latter a kind of *static* immortality that would have transformed man into an undying “Wandering Jew.”<sup>2</sup>

**First Race men were simply images, the astral doubles of their Lunar Pitris or Fathers.**

. . . who were the pioneers, or the most progressed Entities from a preceding though *lower* sphere, the shell of which is now our Moon. But even this shell is all-potential, for, having generated the Earth, it is the *phantom* of the Moon which, attracted by magnetic affinity, sought to form its first inhabitants, the pre-human monsters (*vide supra*, Stanza II). To assure himself of this, the student has again to turn to the Chaldean Fragments, and read what Berosus says. Berosus obtained his information, he tells us, from *Ea*, the male-female deity of Wisdom. While the gods were generated in its androgynous bosom (Svabhāva, Mother-space) its (the Wisdom’s) reflections became on Earth the woman Omoroka, who is the Chaldean Thalath, or the Greek Thalassa, the Deep or the Sea, which esoterically and even exoterically is *the Moon*. It was the Moon (Omoroka) who presided over the monstrous creation of nondescript beings which were slain by the Dhyānis.<sup>3</sup>

**Lunar Pitris were also the evolvers of the Second Race.**

The first Root-Race, *i.e.*, the first “men” on earth (irrespective of form) were the progeny of the “celestial men,” called rightly in Indian philosophy the “Lunar Ancestors” or the Pitris, of which there are seven classes or Hierarchies.<sup>4</sup>

These (divinities) are simply the prototypes of the First Race, the fathers of their “mind-born” progeny with the *soft* bones. It is these who became the *Evolvers* of the “Sweat-born” — an expression explained in Volume II.

---

<sup>1</sup> [*Genesis* iii, 22]

<sup>2</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 242-43

<sup>3</sup> Sayce, *Hibbert Lectures*, 1887, pp. 370 *et. seq.*; also Part II, section xvi, “Adam-Adami”

<sup>4</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, I p. 160

“Created beings,” explains *Vishnu-Purāna*,<sup>1</sup> “although they are destroyed [in their individual forms] at the periods of dissolution, yet being affected by the good or evil acts of former *existence*, are never exempted from their consequences; and when Brahmā creates the world anew, they are the progeny of his will . . . *Collecting his mind into itself* [*Yoga-willing*], Brahmā creates the four orders of beings, termed gods, demons, *progenitors*, and MEN” — “progenitors” meaning the prototypes and Evolvers of the first Root-Race of men. The progenitors are the Pitris, and are of seven classes. They are said in *exoteric* mythology to be born of *Brahmā’s side*, like Eve from the rib of Adam.<sup>2</sup>

By the law of analogy and permutation, in the *Chaldean Book of Numbers*, as also in the “Books of Knowledge” and of “Wisdom,” the “seven primordial worlds” mean also the “seven primordial” races (sub-races of the First Root-Race of the *Shadows*);<sup>3</sup> . . . *seven caves, seven cities*, etc., etc., stand in every case for the seven centres, or zones, upon which the seven primitive groups of the first Root-Race were born.<sup>4</sup>

**First Race men gave their astral shadows as models in the Fourth Round. Eventually, when the human physical frame became sufficiently consolidated (in late Third Race), the Solar Pitris gave their intelligence.**

But, it may be asked, what then is meant by the Pitris? They are Devas, lunar and solar, closely connected with human evolution, for the Lunar Pitris are they who gave their Chhāyās as the models of the First Race in the Fourth Round, while the Solar Pitris endowed mankind with intellect. Not only so, but these Lunar Devas passed through all the kingdoms of the terrestrial Chain in the First Round, and during the Second and Third Rounds “lead and represent the human element.”<sup>5</sup>

**Why? Because though the “Obedient” Angels possessed the fire of physical procreation, they could only create or rather “clothe” the human monad with their own astral selves; they could not give men that sacred spark that burns and expands into the flower of human reason and self-consciousness, as they had it not to give.**<sup>6</sup>

As to their fashioners or “Ancestors” — those Angels who, in the exoteric legends, obeyed the law — they must be identical with the Barhishad Pitris, or the Pitar-Devatās, *i.e.*, those *possessed of the physical creative fire*. They could only create, or rather clothe, the human Monads with their own astral Selves, but they could not make man in their image and likeness. “Man must not be like one of us,” say the *creative* gods, entrusted with the fabrication of the lower animal but higher.<sup>7</sup> Their

---

<sup>1</sup> Bk. I, ch. v; Wilson, Vol. I, pp. 79-80

<sup>2</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, I p. 456 & fn.; [on the *Ūrdhvasrotas* creation, or that of divinities (*Vishnu-Purāna*, Bk. I, ch. i), and the sixth of seven primary (of Light or Spirit) and seven secondary (of Darkness or Matter) creations of the *Purānas*, *ibid.*, pp. 445-60]

<sup>3</sup> *ibid.*, II p. 705; [commenting upon the destruction of the worlds in the *Zohar* and Kabbalistic treatises.]

<sup>4</sup> *ibid.*, II p. 35 fn.; [commenting upon the *Sacred Mysteries among the Mayas and Quichés*, 11,5000 years ago.]

<sup>5</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (ELEMENTALS) VI p. 190

<sup>6</sup> [For further analysis and the difference between Lunar and Solar Pitris, consult “Sons of the Fire-Mist,” in the same Series. — ED. PHIL.]

<sup>7</sup> See *Genesis* and Plato’s *Timæus*.

creating the semblance of men out of their own divine Essence means, esoterically, that it is they who became the first Race, and thus shared its destiny and further evolution. They *would* not, simply because they *could* not, give to man that sacred spark which burns and expands into the flower of human reason and self-consciousness, for they had it not to give.<sup>1</sup> This was left to that class of Devas who became symbolized in Greece under the name of Prometheus, to those who had nought to do with the physical body, yet everything with the purely spiritual man.<sup>2</sup>

**For they have descended from inferior, material worlds.**

Says the Catechism (*Commentaries*):

*It is from the material Worlds that descend they, who fashion physical man at the new Manvantaras.<sup>3</sup> They are inferior Lhas [Spirits], possessed of a dual body [an astral within an ethereal form]. They are the fashioners and creators of our body of illusion. . . .*

*Into the forms projected by the Lhas [Pitris] the two letters<sup>4</sup> [the Monad, called also the "Double Dragon"] descend from the spheres of expectation.<sup>5</sup> But they are like a roof with no walls, nor pillars to rest upon.<sup>6</sup>*

*Man needs four flames and three fires to become one on Earth, and he requires the essence of the forty-nine fires<sup>7</sup> to be perfect. It is those who have deserted the Superior Spheres, the Gods of Will,<sup>8</sup> who complete the Manu of illusion. For the "Double Dragon" has no hold upon the mere form. It is like the breeze where there is no tree or branch to receive and harbour it. It cannot affect the form where there is no agent of transmission [Manas, "Mind"] and the form knows it not.*

---


<sup>1</sup> [Cf. "The Moon being an inferior body to the Earth even, to say nothing of other planets, the terrestrial men produced by her sons — the lunar men or 'ancestors' — from her shell or body, cannot be immortal. They cannot hope to become real, self-conscious and intelligent men, unless they are *finished*, so to say, by other creators." *i.e.*, the Solar Pitris. *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 45]

<sup>2</sup> See Part II of this Volume, "The Fallen Angels," pp. 475 *et seq.*, and "The Gods of Light proceed from the Gods of Darkness," pp. 483 *et seq.* (*Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 94-95)

<sup>3</sup> [*i.e.*, First Root-Race, Fourth Round on Globe D, our Earth.]

<sup>4</sup> In the esoteric system the seven principles in man are represented by seven letters. The first two are *more* sacred than the four letters of the Tetragrammaton.

<sup>5</sup> The intermediate spheres, wherein the Monads, which have not reached Nirvāna, are said to slumber in unconscious inactivity between the Manvantaras.

<sup>6</sup> [*i.e.*, an abstract triangle without the supporting square below. Cf. , symbol of septenary Man or Saptaparna in "Keys to the Mystery Language," Theosophy and Theosophists Series. — ED. PHIL.]

<sup>7</sup> Explained elsewhere. The "Three Fires," Pāvaka, Pavamāna, and Śuchi, who had forty-five sons, who, with their three fathers and their Father Agni, constitute the 49 fires. Pavamāna (fire produced by friction) is the parent of the *fire of the Asuras*; Śuchi (Solar fire) is the parent of the fire of the gods; and Pāvaka (electric fire) is the father of the fire of the *Pitris* (See *Vāyu-Purāna*.) But this is an explanation on the material and the terrestrial plane. The flames are evanescent and only periodical; the fires — eternal in their triple unity. They correspond to the *four* lower, and the *three* higher human principles.

<sup>8</sup> The *Suras*, who become later the A-Suras.

*In the highest worlds, the three are one,<sup>1</sup> on Earth [at first] the one becomes two. They are like the two [side] lines of a triangle that has lost its bottom line — which is the third fire. (Catechism, Bk. III, sec. 9.)<sup>2</sup>*

**Thus, each class of Creators endowed man with what it could give. This is the mystery of our dual origin and birth.**

The one builds his external form; the other gives him its essence, which later on becomes the Human *Higher Self* owing to the *personal exertion of the individual*; but they could not make men as they were themselves — perfect, because sinless; sinless, because having only the first, pale shadowy outlines of attributes, and these all perfect — from the human standpoint — white, pure and cold as the virgin snow. Where there is no struggle, there is no merit. Humanity, “of the earth earthy,” was not destined to be created by the angels of the first divine Breath: therefore they are said to *have refused* to do so, and man had to be formed by more material creators,<sup>3</sup> who, in their turn, could give only what they had in their own natures, and no more.

**A pale copy of its Divine Progenitors was the First Race: too material, even in its ethereality, to be a hierarchy of gods; too spiritual and pure to be human as it was endowed with every negative perfection.**

Subservient to eternal law, the pure gods could only project out of themselves *shadowy* men, a little less ethereal and spiritual, less *divine and perfect* than themselves — shadows still. The first humanity, therefore, was a pale copy of its progenitors; too material, even in its ethereality, to be a hierarchy of gods; too spiritual and pure to be MEN, endowed as it is with every *negative (Nirguna)* perfection. Perfection, to be fully such, must be born out of imperfection, the *incorruptible* must grow out of the corruptible, having the latter as its vehicle and basis and contrast. Absolute light is absolute darkness, and *vice versa*. In fact, there is neither light nor darkness in the realms of truth. Good and Evil are twins, the progeny of Space and Time, under the sway of Māyā. Separate them, by cutting off one from the other, and they will both die. Neither exists *per se*, since each has to be generated and created out of the other, in order to come into being; both must be known and appreciated before becoming objects of perception, hence, in mortal mind, they must be divided.<sup>4</sup>



<sup>1</sup> Ātma, Buddhi and Manas. In Devachan the higher element of the Manas is needed to make it a state of perception and consciousness for the disembodied *Monad*.

<sup>2</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 57; [on Stanza II.7a.]

<sup>3</sup> In spite of all efforts to the contrary, Christian theology — having burdened itself with the Hebrew esoteric account of the creation of man, which is understood *literally* — cannot find any reasonable excuse for its “*God*, the Creator,” who produces a man devoid of mind and sense; nor can it justify the punishment following an act, for which Adam and Eve might plead *non compos*. For if the couple is admitted to be ignorant of good and evil before the eating of the forbidden fruit, how could it be expected to know that *disobedience was evil*? If primeval man was meant to remain a half-witted, or rather witless, being, then his creation was aimless and even *cruel*, if produced by an omnipotent and perfect God. But Adam and Eve are shown, even in *Genesis*, to be created by a class of lower divine Beings, the *Elōhīm*, who are so jealous of their personal prerogatives as reasonable and intelligent creatures, that they will not allow man to become “as one of us.” This is plain, even from the dead-letter meaning of the Bible. The Gnostics, then, were right in regarding the Jewish God as belonging to a class of lower, material and not very holy denizens of the invisible World.

<sup>4</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 95-96

## 2. Esoteric Symbology.

### The First Root-Race is symbolised by Kandu; the Second, by Marisha.

Kandu is a sage and a Yogi,<sup>1</sup> eminent in holy wisdom and pious austerities, which, finally, awaken the jealousy of the gods, who are represented in the Hindu Scriptures as being in never-ending strife with the ascetics. Indra, the “King of the Gods,”<sup>2</sup> finally sends one of his female Apsarasas to tempt the sage. This is no worse than Jehovah sending Sarah, Abraham’s wife, to tempt Pharaoh; but in truth it is those gods (and god), who are ever trying to disturb ascetics and thus make them lose the fruit of their austerities, who ought to be regarded as “tempting demons,” instead of applying the term to the Rudras, Kumāras, and Asuras, whose great sanctity and chastity seem a standing reproach to the Don Juanic gods of the Pantheon. But it is the reverse that we find in all the Purānic allegories, and not without good esoteric reason.

The king of the gods (or Indra) sends a beautiful Apsarasa (nymph) named Pramlochā to seduce Kandu and disturb his penance. She succeeds in her unholy purpose and “907 years, six months and three days”<sup>3</sup> spent in her company seem to the sage as one day. When this psychological or hypnotic state ends, the Muni curses bitterly the creature who seduced him, thus disturbing his devotions. “Depart, begone!” he cries, “vile bundle of delusion!” . . . And Pramlochā, terrified, flies away, *wiping the perspiration from her body* with the leaves of the trees as she passes through the air.

The nymph went from tree to tree, and, as, with the dusky shoots that crowned their summits, she dried her limbs . . . the child she had conceived by the Rishi came forth from the pores of her skin in drops of perspiration.<sup>4</sup> The trees received the living dews; and the winds collected them into one mass. “This,” said Soma [the Moon], “I matured by my rays”; and gradually it increased in size, till the exhalation that had rested on the tree tops became the lovely girl named Mārishā.<sup>5</sup>

Now Kandu stands here for the *First Race*. He is a son of the Pitris, hence one *devoid of mind*, which is hinted at by his being unable to discern a period of nearly one thousand years from one day; therefore he is shown to be so easily deluded and blinded. Here is a variant of the allegory in *Genesis*, of Adam, born an image of clay,

---

<sup>1</sup> “A holy sage of the second root-race, a yogi, whom Pramlochā, a “nymph” sent by Indra for that purpose, beguiled, and lived with for several centuries. Finally, the Sage returning to his senses, repudiated and chased her away. Whereupon she gave birth to a daughter, Mārishā. The story is in an allegorical fable from the *Purānas*.” *Theosophical Glossary*: Kandu

<sup>2</sup> In the oldest MS. of *Vishnu-Purāna* in the possession of an Initiate in Southern India, the god is not Indra, but Kāma, the god of love and desire. See text further on.

<sup>3</sup> These are the exoteric figures given in a purposely reversed and distorted way, being the figure of the duration of the cycle between the first and second human race. All Orientalists to the contrary, there is not a word in any of the *Purānas* that has not a special esoteric meaning.

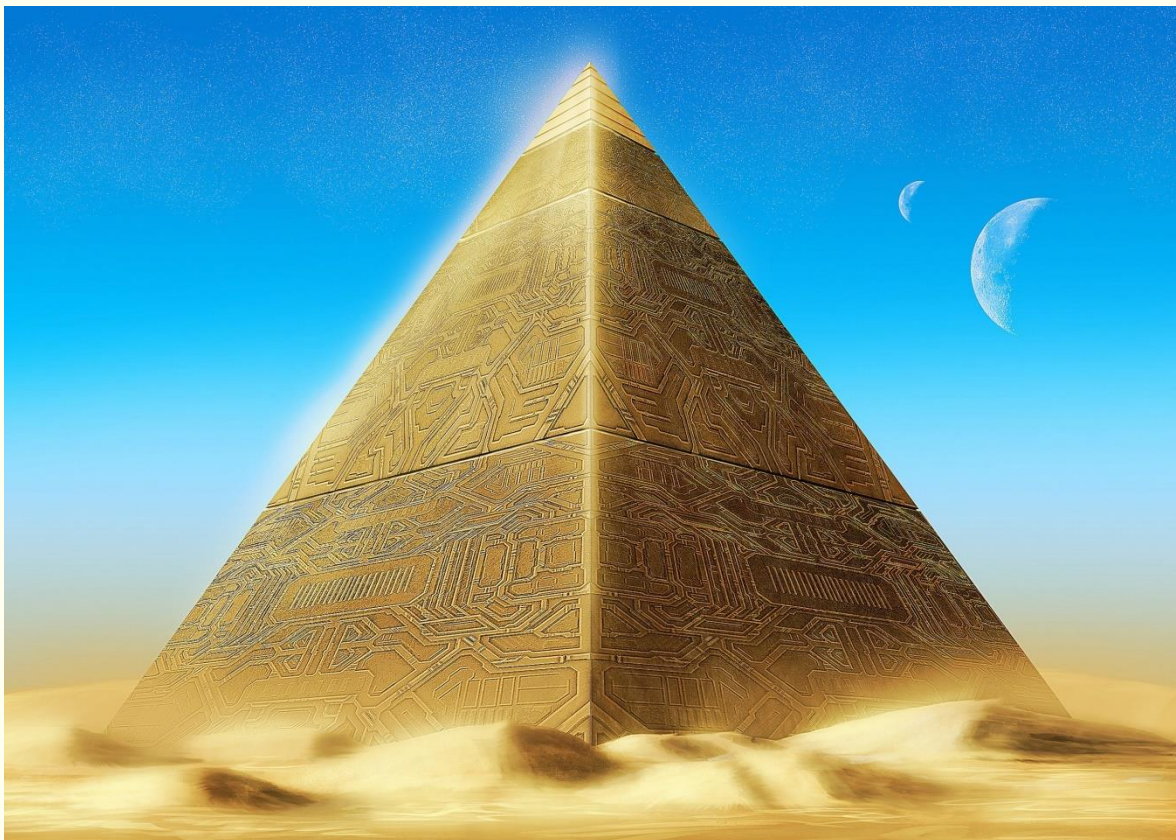
<sup>4</sup> [Look up “Born from the pores of the skin” in the same Series. — ED. PHIL.]

<sup>5</sup> *Vishnu-Purāna*, Bk. I, ch. xv; Wilson, Vol. II, p. 5. Cf. also Vivien’s temptation of Merlin (Tennyson), the same legend in Irish tradition.

into which the “Lord-god” breathes the *breath of life* but not of intellect and discrimination, which are developed only after he had tasted of the fruit of the Tree of Knowledge; in other words when he has acquired the first development of Mind, and had implanted in him *Manas*, whose terrestrial aspect is of the earth, earthy, though its highest faculties connect it with Spirit and the *divine Soul*. Pramlochā is the Hindu Lilith of the Āryan Adam; and Mārishā, the daughter born of the perspiration from her pores, is the “sweat-born,” and stands as a symbol for the Second Race of Mankind.<sup>1</sup>

**Its celestial origin is suggested by the apex of the pyramids in Egypt and elsewhere, the primordial point lost in the unseen universe above (or rather within) whence it started.**

The apex [of the pyramids in Egypt] is lost in the clear blue sky of the land of the Pharaohs, and typifies the primordial point lost in the unseen universe from whence started the first race of the spiritual prototypes of man. Each mummy, from the moment that it was embalmed, lost its physical individuality in one sense; it symbolized the human race. Placed in such a way as was best calculated to aid the exit of the “soul,” the latter had to pass through the seven planetary chambers before it made its exit through the symbolical apex.<sup>2</sup>



---

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 174-75

<sup>2</sup> *Isis Unveiled*, I pp. 296-97

### 3. Esoteric Ethnology.

**First Race man had neither type nor colour and hardly an objective, though colossal, form.**

Esotericism . . . does not take into consideration the First Race, which had neither type nor colour, and hardly an objective, though colossal form. The evolution of these races, their formation and development, went *pari passu* and on parallel lines with the evolution, formation, and development of three geological strata, from which the human complexion was as much derived as it was determined by the climates of those zones. It names three great divisions, namely, the RED-YELLOW, the BLACK, and the BROWN-WHITE.<sup>1</sup> The Āryan races, for instance, now varying from dark brown, almost black, red-brown-yellow, down to the whitest creamy colour, are yet all of one and the same stock — the Fifth Root-Race — and spring from one single progenitor, called in Hindu *exotericism* by the generic name of Vaivasvata Manu: the latter, remember, being that generic personage, the Sage, who is said to have lived over 18,000,000 years ago, and also 850,000 years ago — at the time of the sinking of the last remnants of the great continent of Atlantis,<sup>2</sup> and who is said to live even *now* in his mankind.<sup>3</sup> The light yellow is the colour of the first SOLID human race, which appeared after the middle of the Third Root-Race (*after its fall* into generation — as just explained), bringing on the final changes. For, it is only at that period that the last transformation took place, which brought forth man as he is now, only on a magnified scale. This Race gave birth to the Fourth Race; “Śiva” gradually transforming that portion of Humanity which became “black with sin” into *red-yellow* (the red Indians and the Mongolians being the descendants of these) and finally into brown-white races — which now, together with the yellow Races, form the great bulk of Humanity. The allegory in *Linga-Purāna* is curious, as showing the great ethnological knowledge of the ancients.<sup>4</sup>

**The first two races were too ethereal, too phantom-like in their constitution, organism, and shape, even to be called physical men. That is why their relics can never be expected to be exhumed among other prehistoric fossils.**

But even such statements as these — *e.g.*, that of all the mammalians, man was the earliest; that it is man who is the indirect ancestor of the Ape; and that he was a kind of a Cyclops in days of old — will all be contested, yet, scientists will never be able to prove — except to their own satisfaction — that *it was not so*. Nor can they admit that the first two races of men were too ethereal and phantom-like in their

---

<sup>1</sup> “There are then,” says Topinard (English edition of *Anthropology*, with preface by Professor Broca), “THREE fundamental elements of colour in the human organism: namely, the *red*, the *yellow*, and the *black*, which, mixed in variable quantities with the white of the tissues, give rise to those numerous shades seen in the human family . . .” (p. 344) Here is science unintentionally supporting Occultism again.

<sup>2</sup> It must be remembered that the “last remnants” here spoken of, refer to those portions of the “great continent” which still remained, and not to any of the numerous islands which existed contemporaneously with the continent. Plato’s “island” was, for instance, one of such remnants; the others having sunk at various periods previously. An occult “tradition” teaches that such submersions occur whenever there is an eclipse of the “spiritual sun.”

<sup>3</sup> See the remarks on the Root- and Seed-Manus *infra*, and the Section on “The Primeval Manus of Humanity.”

<sup>4</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 249-50; [on Stanza X.39b.]

constitution, organism, and *shape*, even to be called physical men. For, if they do, it will be found that this is one of the reasons why their relics can never be expected to be exhumed among other fossils. Nevertheless all this is maintained.

**Man is the storehouse of all seeds of life for this Round, vegetable and animal alike, a veritable Noah's Ark.**

It may be objected that this is a contradiction. That, as the first Root-Race appeared 300,000,000 years after the vegetation had evolved, the seed of vegetable life could not be in the First Race. We say it could; for up to man's appearance in *this* Round, the vegetation was of quite another kind than it is now, and quite ethereal, this for the simple reason that no grass or plants could have been physical, before there were animal or other organisms to breathe out the carbonic acid which vegetation has to imbibe for its development, its nutrition and growth. They are interdependent in their *physical* and achieved forms.<sup>1</sup>



<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 289-90 & fn.



## 4. Cognition and speech.

### The First Race was speechless because it was mindless.

The *Commentaries* explain that the first Race — the ethereal or astral Sons of Yoga, also called “Self-born” — was, in our sense, speechless, as it was devoid of mind on our plane. The Second Race had a “Sound-language,” to wit, chant like sounds composed of vowels alone. The Third Race developed in the beginning a kind of language which was only a slight improvement on the various sounds in Nature, on the cry of gigantic insects and of the first animals, which, however, were hardly nascent in the day of the “Sweat-born” (the *early* Third Race). In its second half, when the “Sweat-born” gave birth to the “Egg-born,” (the *middle* Third Race); and when these, instead of “hatching out” (may the reader pardon the rather ridiculous expression when applied to human beings in our age) as androgynous beings, began to evolve into separate males and females; and when the same law of evolution led them to reproduce their kind sexually, an act which forced the creative gods, compelled by Karmic law, to incarnate in *mindless* men; then only was speech developed. But even then it was still no better than a tentative effort. The whole human race was at that time of “one language and of one lip.” This did not prevent the last two Sub-Races of the Third Race<sup>1</sup> from building cities, and sowing far and wide the first seeds of civilization under the guidance of their divine instructors,<sup>2</sup> and their own already awakened minds. Let the reader also bear in mind that, as each of the seven races is divided into four ages — the Golden, Silver, Bronze, and Iron Age — so is every smallest division of such races.<sup>3</sup> Speech then developed, according to occult teaching, in the following order:

I. Monosyllabic speech; that of the first approximately fully developed human beings at the close of the Third Root-Race, the “golden-coloured,” yellow-complexioned men, after their separation into sexes, and the full awakening of their minds. Before that, they communicated through what would now be called “thought-transference,” though, with the exception of the Race called the “Sons of Will and Yoga” — the first in whom the “Sons of Wisdom” had incarnated — thought was but very little developed in nascent physical man, and never soared above a low terrestrial level. Their physical bodies belonging to the Earth, their Monads remained on a higher plane altogether. Language could not be well developed before the full acquisition and development of their reasoning faculties. This monosyllabic speech was the vowel parent, so to speak, of the monosyllabic languages mixed with hard consonants, still in use amongst the yellow races which are known to the anthropologist.<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> To avoid confusion, let the reader remember that the term Root-Race applies to one of the seven great Races, sub-Race to one of its great Branches, and Family-Race to one of the sub-divisions, which include nations and large tribes.

<sup>2</sup> In Stanza XII, on “The Fifth Race and its Divine Instructors,” the nature of these “Instructors” is explained.

<sup>3</sup> See Section attached to the “Divisions into Yugas.” [Vol. II, pp. 69-70]

<sup>4</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 198-99. The present yellow races are the descendants, however, of the early branches of the Fourth Race. Of the third, the only *pure and direct* descendants are, as said above, a portion of the fallen and degenerated Australians, whose far distant ancestors belonged to a division of the seventh Sub-race of the Third. The rest are of mixed Lemuro-Atlantean descent. They have since then entirely changed in stature and intellectual capacities.

## 5. Demise and death.

**First Race men, being mere shadows of their Lunar Progenitors, could not be injured or destroyed by death. But their sons, the Second Race, could be and were so destroyed.**

Stanza VI.23. THE SELF-BORN WERE THE CHHĀYĀS: THE SHADOWS FROM THE BODIES OF THE SONS OF TWILIGHT. NEITHER WATER NOR FIRE COULD DESTROY THEM. THEIR SON'S WERE (*so destroyed*).

This verse cannot be understood without the help of the *Commentaries*. It means that the First Root-Race, the “Shadows” of the Progenitors, could not be injured, or destroyed by death. Being so ethereal and so little human in constitution, they could not be affected by any element — flood or fire. But their “Sons,” the Second Root-Race, could be and were so destroyed. As the “progenitors” merged wholly in their own astral bodies, which were their progeny, so that progeny was absorbed in its descendants, the “Sweat-born.” These were the second Humanity — composed of the most heterogeneous gigantic semi-human monsters — the first attempts of material nature at building human bodies. The ever-blooming lands of the Second Continent (Greenland, among others) were transformed, in order, from Edens with their eternal spring, into hyperborean Hadēs. This transformation was due to the displacement of the great waters of the globe, to oceans changing their beds; and the bulk of the Second Race perished in this first great throe of the evolution and consolidation of the globe during the human period. Of such great cataclysms there have already been four.<sup>1</sup> And we may expect a fifth for ourselves in due course of time.<sup>2</sup>

**The First Race disappeared into the Second without either begetting it or procreating it. Why? Because the human womb, which is a copy and reflection of the Heavenly Matrix, had not been prepared.**

Worlds and men were in turn formed and destroyed, *under the law of evolution and from pre-existing material*, until both the planets and their men, in our case our Earth and its animal and human races, became what they are now in the present cycle: opposite polar forces, an equilibrated compound of Spirit and Matter, of the positive and the negative, of the male and the female. Before man could become male and female *physically*, his prototype, the creating Elōhīm, had to arrange his Form on this sexual plane *astrally*. That is to say, the atoms and the organic forces, descending into the plane of the given differentiation, had to be marshalled in the order intended by Nature, so as to be ever carrying out, in an immaculate way, that law which the *Kabbalah* calls the *Balance*, through which everything that exists does so as male and female in its final perfection, in this present stage of materiality. *Hokhmāh*, Wisdom, the Male Sephīrōth, had to diffuse itself *in*, and *through*, *Bīnāh*, intelligent Nature, or Understanding. Therefore the First Root-Race of men, sexless and mindless, had to be overthrown and “hidden until after a time”; *i.e.*, the first race, instead of dying, disappeared *in the second race*, as certain lower lives and

---

<sup>1</sup> The first occurred when what is now the North Pole was separated from the later Continents.

<sup>2</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 138

plants do in their progeny. It was a wholesale transformation. The First became the Second Root-Race, without either begetting it, procreating it, or dying. “*They passed by together,*” as it is written: ‘And he died and another reigned in his stead.’”<sup>1</sup> Why? Because “the *Holy City* had not been prepared.” And what is the “Holy City”? The *Māqōm* (the *Secret Place* or the Shrine) on Earth: in other words, the human womb, the microcosmic copy and reflection of the *Heavenly Matrix*, the female space or primeval Chaos, in which the male Spirit fecundates the germ of the Son, or the visible Universe.<sup>2</sup>

Stanza V.20. THEIR FATHERS WERE THE SELF-BORN. THE SELF-BORN, THE CHHĀYĀ FROM THE BRILLIANT BODIES OF THE LORDS, THE FATHERS, THE SONS OF TWILIGHT.

The “shadows,” or *Chhāyās*, are called the sons of the “self-born,” as the latter name is applied to all the gods and Beings born through the WILL, whether of Deity or Adept. The *Homunculi*<sup>3</sup> of Paracelsus would, perhaps, be also given this name, though the latter process is on a far more material plane. The name “Sons of Twilight” shows that the “Self-born” progenitors of our doctrine are identical with the Pitris of the Brāhmanical system, as the title is a reference to their mode of birth, these Pitris being stated to have issued from Brahmā’s “body of twilight,” as stated in the *Purānas*.

**When the Second Race matured, “old waters were mixed with fresher waters.”**

Stanza V.21. WHEN THE RACE BECAME OLD, THE OLD WATERS MIXED WITH THE FRESHER WATERS (a); WHEN THE DROPS BECAME TURBID, THEY VANISHED AND DISAPPEARED, IN THE NEW STREAM, IN THE HOT STREAM OF LIFE. THE OUTER OF THE FIRST BECAME THE INNER OF THE SECOND (b). THE OLD WING BECAME THE SHADOW, AND THE SHADOW OF THE WING (c).

(a) The old (primitive) Race merged in the second race, and became one with it.

(b) This is the mysterious process of transformation and evolution of mankind. The material of the first forms — shadowy, ethereal, and negative — was drawn or absorbed into, and thus became the complement of the forms of the Second Race. The *Commentary* explains this by saying that, as the First Race was simply composed of the astral shadows of the creative progenitors, having of course neither astral nor physical bodies of their own — this Race *never died*. Its “men” melted gradually away, becoming absorbed in the bodies of their own “sweat-born” progeny, more solid than their own. The old form vanished and was absorbed by, disappeared in, the new form, more human and physical. There was no death in those days of a period more blissful than the Golden Age; but the first, or parent material was used for the formation of the new being, to form the body and even the inner or *lower* principles or bodies of the progeny.

(c) When the shadow retires, *i.e.*, when the astral body becomes covered with more solid flesh, man develops a physical body. The “wing,” or the ethereal form that pro-

---

<sup>1</sup> *Genesis* xxvi, 31 *et seq.*

<sup>2</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 84

<sup>3</sup> [Latin for “little humans”]

duced its shadow and image, became the shadow of the astral body and its own progeny. The expression is queer but original.<sup>1</sup>

**Death, as we know it, came only after man had become an objective, physical creature.**

The men of the First Race and also of the Second . . . never died but only vanished, absorbed in their progeny, and the third knew death only towards its close, after the separation of the sexes and its “Fall” into generation.<sup>2</sup>

**The First Race came to an end during the second subrace of the Third.**

The First Root-Race shall come to an end during the second Sub-Race of the Third Root-Race, in the period of which time mankind will be safe; all this having no reference whatever to the biblical Deluge. Verse 10<sup>th</sup> speaks of the sixth week [sixth Sub-Race of the Third Root-Race] when

. . . all those who are in it shall be darkened, the hearts of all of them shall be forgetful of wisdom [the divine knowledge will be dying out], and in it shall a man ascend.<sup>3</sup>

**For men had lost their balance.**

When the men of the first race had reached the summit of the first cycle, they lost their balance, and their second envelope, the grosser clothing (astral body), dragged them down the opposite arc.<sup>4</sup>

**Since the appearance of the First Race, the whole globe has been convulsed periodically, four times to date.**

The esoteric *Commentary* . . . says that the three giants [Hesiod’s Briareus, Kottos, and Gygēs, living in a dark country where they were imprisoned by Kronos for their rebellion against him] are three polar lands which have changed form several times, at each new cataclysm, or disappearance of one continent to make room for another. The whole globe is convulsed periodically; and has been so convulsed, since the appearance of the First Race, four times. Yet, though the whole face of the earth was transformed thereby each time, the conformation of the arctic and Antarctic poles has but little altered. The polar lands unite and break off from each other into islands and peninsulas, yet remain ever the same. Therefore northern Asia is called the “eternal or perpetual land,” and the Antarctic the “ever living” and “the concealed”; while the Mediterranean, Atlantic, Pacific and other regions disappear and reappear in turn, into and above the great waters.<sup>5</sup>



---

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 120-21

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *ibid.*, II p. 609 & fn.

<sup>3</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings* (THE BOOK OF ENOCH, ORIGIN AND FOUNDATION OF CHRISTIANITY) XIV p. 81; [interpreting esoterically Archbishop Laurence’s translation of *The Book of Enoch*, ch. xcii, 4-7]

<sup>4</sup> *Isis Unveiled* I p. 299

<sup>5</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 776

## Second Root-Race: The Sweat-Born

### 1. Man's physical frame developed.

#### Phoenicians were the Kingly or Second Divine Race.

The Phœnicians were *φοίνικες* or Ph'-Anakes as being of the Anākīm, *Kabeirian*, kingly or divine Race, which race was the *Second* Race of our humanity, as shown in the *Secret Books*, in which all the transformations of Brahmā throughout the aiōns of time are given. Brahmā was born with the Fourth Race; the first — that of unwritten *Rig-Veda* — knew him not and he is not even mentioned in this archaic Āryan Bible written in Tibet in the beginning of Tretā-Yuga on Lake Mānasarovara. It is but in the Third Race only that the “wheel” of Enoch was invented as a first attempt at symbolism, though Enoch No. 1<sup>1</sup> had naught to do with it.<sup>2</sup>

#### The first two races, being spiritual, had nought to do with climate nor were they subservient to any temperature or change therein.

As stated in Volume I, the humanities developed co-ordinately, and on parallel lines with the four Elements, every new Race being physiologically adapted to meet the additional element. Our Fifth Race is rapidly approaching the Fifth Element — call it interstellar ether, if you will — which has more to do, however, with psychology than with physics. We men have learned to live in every climate, whether frigid or tropical, but the first two Races had nought to do with climate, nor were they subservient to any temperature or change therein. And thus, we are taught, men lived down to the close of the Third Root-Race, when eternal spring reigned over the whole globe, such as is now enjoyed by the inhabitants of Jupiter; a “world,” says Flammarion, “which is not subject like our own to the vicissitudes of seasons nor to abrupt alternations of temperature, but which is enriched with all the treasures of eternal spring.”<sup>3</sup> Those astronomers who maintain that Jupiter is in a molten condition, in our sense of the term, are invited to settle their dispute with this learned French Astronomer. It must, however, be always borne in mind that the “eternal spring” referred to is only a condition *cognised as such by the Jovians*. It is not “spring” *as we know it*. In this reservation is to be found the reconciliation between the two theories here cited. Both embrace *partial* truths.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> [Cf. “Esoterically, Enoch is the ‘Son of man,’ the first; and symbolically, the first Sub-Race of the *Fifth* Root-Race. . . . In the Bible [*Genesis* iv & v] there are three distinct Enochs [Hanōkh] — the son of Cain, the son of Seth, and the son of Jared; but they are all identical, and two of them are mentioned for the purposes of misleading. The years of only the last two are given, the first one being left without further notice.” *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (THE BOOK OF ENOCH, ORIGIN AND FOUNDATION OF CHRISTIANITY) XIV p. 86 & *fn.*]

<sup>2</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (HERMETIC AND KABALISTIC DOCTRINES) XIV p. 94

<sup>3</sup> *La Pluralité des mondes habités* (1864), p. 69

<sup>4</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 134-36

## 2. Asexual form “budded” from a sexless shadow.

**“If thou would'st understand the Secondary [Creation, so-called],  
Oh Lanoo, thou should'st first study its relation to the Primary.”<sup>1</sup>**

Stanza V.19. THE SECOND RACE (*was*) THE PRODUCT BY BUDDING AND EXPANSION;  
THE A-SEXUAL (*form*) FROM THE SEXLESS (*shadow*). THUS WAS, O LANOO, THE  
SECOND RACE PRODUCED (*a*).

(a) What will be most contested by scientific authorities is this a-sexual Race, the Second, the fathers of the “Sweat-born” so-called, and perhaps still more the Third Race, the “Egg-born” androgynes. These two modes of procreation are the most difficult to comprehend, especially for the Western mind. It is evident that no explanation can be attempted for those who are not students of Occult metaphysics. European language has no words to express things which Nature repeats no more at this stage of evolution, things which therefore can have no meaning for the materialist. But there are analogies. It is not denied that in the beginning of physical evolution there must have been processes in Nature, spontaneous generation, for instance, now extinct, which are repeated in other forms. Thus we are told that microscopic research shows no permanence of any particular mode of reproducing life. For “[it shows] that the same organism may run through various metamorphoses in the course of its life-cycle, during some of which it may be *sexual* and in others *asexual*; *i.e.*, it may reproduce itself alternately by the co-operation of two beings of opposite sex, and also by fissure or *budding* from one being only, which is of no sex.”<sup>2</sup> “Budding” is the very word used in the Stanza. How could these Chhāyās reproduce themselves otherwise; *viz.*, procreate the Second Race, since they were ethereal, asexual, and even devoid, as yet, of the vehicle of desire, or Kāma-Rūpa, which evolved only in the Third Race? They evolved the Second Race unconsciously, as do some plants. Or, perhaps, as the *Amæba*, only on a more ethereal, impressive, and larger scale. If, indeed, the cell-theory applies equally to Botany and Zoology, and extends to Morphology, as well as to the Physiology of organisms, and if the microscopic cells are looked upon by physical science as independent living beings — just as Occultism regards the “fiery lives”<sup>3</sup> — there is no difficulty in the conception of the primitive process of procreation.

Consider the first stages of the development of a germ-cell. Its *nucleus* grows, changes, and forms a double cone or spindle, thus  $\times$ , *within* the cell. This spindle approaches the surface of the cell, and one half of it is *extruded* in the form of what are called the “*polar cells*.” These polar cells *now* die, and the embryo develops from the growth and segmentation of the remaining part of the nucleus which is *nourished* by the substance of the cell. Then why could not beings have lived thus, and been created in *this* way — at the very beginning of *human and mammalian evolution*?

---

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 113; [quoting *Commentary*, Book of Dzian, III.19, and explaining why the First Race had three elements, but no *living* Fire.]

<sup>2</sup> See Laing, *Modern Science and Modern Thought*, p. 90.

<sup>3</sup> See Vol. I, Part I, Stanza VII, *Commentary*, pp. 249-50.

This may, perhaps, serve as an analogy to give some idea of the process by which the Second Race was formed from the First.

**The astral<sup>1</sup> form clothing the Monad was surrounded, as it still is, by an egg-shaped aura that corresponds to the substance of the ovum or germ-cell.**

The astral form itself is the nucleus, now, as then, instinct with the principle of life.<sup>2</sup>

When the season of reproduction arrives, the *sub*-astral “*extrudes*” a miniature of itself from the egg of surrounding aura. This germ grows and feeds on the aura till it becomes fully developed, when it gradually separates from its parent, carrying with it its own sphere of aura; just as we see living cells reproducing their like by growth and subsequent division into two.

The analogy with the “*polar cells*” would seem to hold good, since their death would *now* correspond to the change introduced by the separation of the sexes, when gestation *in utero*, *i.e.*, *within the cell*, became the rule.

*The early Second [Root] Race were the Fathers of the ‘Sweat-born’; the later Second [Root] Race were ‘Sweat-born’ themselves.*

This passage from the *Commentary* refers to the work of evolution from the beginning of a Race to its close. The “Sons of Yoga,” or the primitive astral race, had seven stages of evolution *racially*, or collectively; as every individual Being in it had, and has now. It is not Shakespeare only who divided the ages of man into a series of seven, but Nature herself. Thus the first sub-races of the Second Race were born at first by the process described on the law of analogy; while the last began gradually, *pari passu* with the evolution of the human body, to be formed otherwise. The process of reproduction had seven stages also in each Race, each covering aïons of time. What physiologist or biologist could tell whether the present mode of generation, with all its phases of gestation, is older than half a million, or at most on millions of years, since their cycle of observation began hardly half a century ago?

**The mistaken theories of monogenesis and the belief in the descent of man from the mammals, instead of the reverse, are fatal to the completeness of evolution as taught in modern schools along Darwinian lines.**

Primeval human hermaphrodites are a fact in Nature well known to the ancients, and form one of Darwin’s greatest perplexities. Yet there is certainly no impossibility, but, on the contrary, a great probability that hermaphroditism existed in the evolution of the early races; while on the grounds of analogy, and on that of the existence of one universal law in physical evolution, acting indifferently in the construction of plant, animal, and man, it must be so. The mistaken theories of monogenesis, and the descent of man from the mammals instead of the reverse, are fatal to the completeness of evolution as taught in modern schools on Darwinian lines, and they will have to be abandoned in view of the insuperable difficulties which they encounter.

---

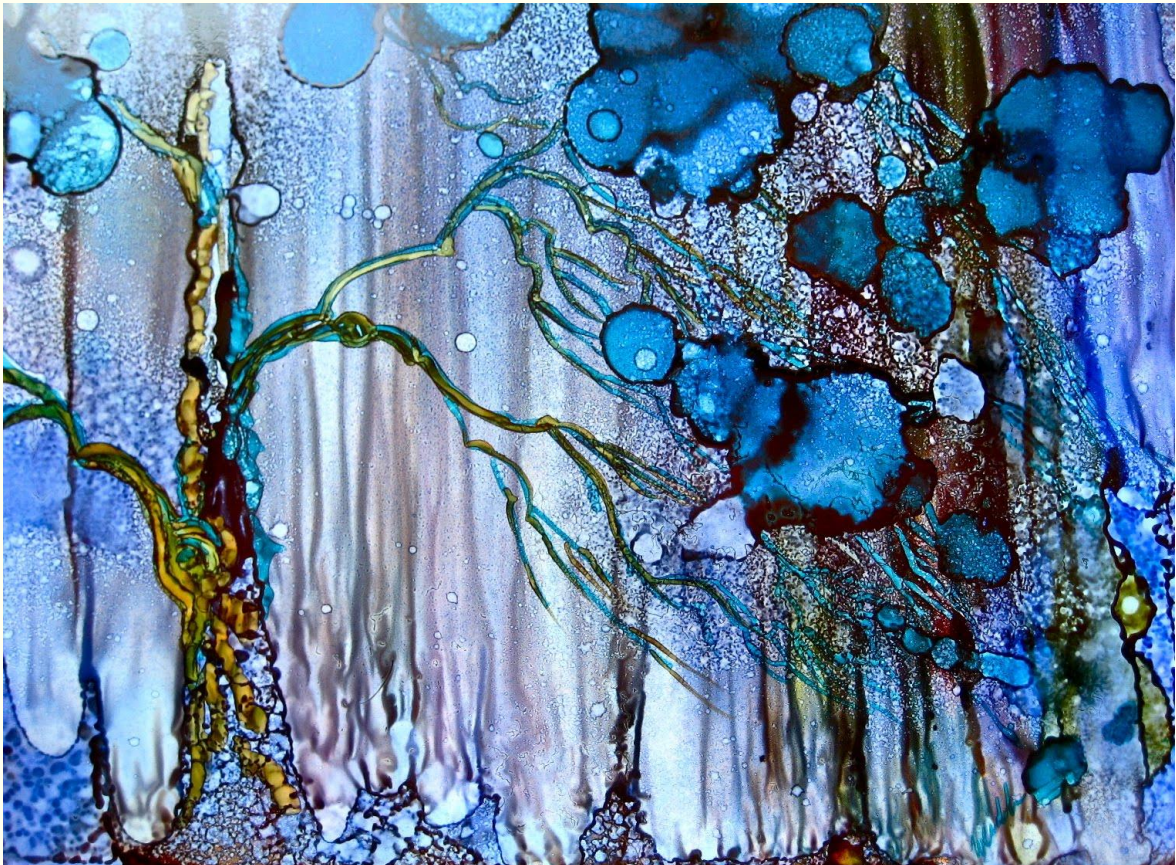
<sup>1</sup> [*i.e.*, “starry,’ shining or pellucid, in various and numerous degrees, from a quite filmy to a viscid state . . .” *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 251]

<sup>2</sup> [Prāna]

Occult tradition — if the terms Science and Knowledge are denied in this particular to antiquity — can alone reconcile the inconsistencies and fill the gap. “If thou wilt know the invisible, open thine eye wide on the visible,” says a Talmudic axiom.<sup>1</sup>

**Even the marsupials of the Triassic rocks of the Secondary Period are post-human.**

To return to the immediate subject of discussion. The Mammalia, whose first traces are discovered in the marsupials of the Triassic rocks of the Secondary Period, were evolved from *purely* astral progenitors contemporary with the Second Race. They are thus *post-Human*, and, consequently, it is easy to account for the general resemblance between their embryonic stages and those of Man, who necessarily embraces in himself and epitomizes in his development the features of the group he originated.<sup>2</sup>



---

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 116-18

<sup>2</sup> *ibid.*, II p. 684



### 3. The sweat-born of the Second Race evolved to the egg-born of the Third.

§§ (22) The evolution of the three races continued. (23) The second race create the Third and perishes.

Stanza VI.22. THEN THE SECOND EVOLVED THE SWEAT-BORN, THE THIRD (*Race*). THE SWEAT GREW, ITS DROPS GREW, AND THE DROPS BECAME HARD AND ROUND. THE SUN WARMED IT; THE MOON COOLED AND SHAPED IT; THE WIND FED IT UNTIL ITS RIPENESS. THE WHITE SWAN FROM THE STARRY VAULT (*the Moon*), OVERSHADOWED THE BIG DROP. THE EGG OF THE FUTURE RACE, THE MAN-SWAN (*Hamsa*) OF THE LATER THIRD (*a*). FIRST MALE-FEMALE, THEN MAN AND WOMAN (*b*).

#### **The human embryo of the Second Race was nourished from without by Cosmic forces.**

(a) The text of the Stanza clearly implies that the human embryo was nourished *ab extra* by Cosmic forces, and that the “Father-Mother” furnished apparently the germ that ripened: in all probability a “sweat-born egg,” to be hatched out, in some mysterious way, disconnected from the “double” parent. It is comparatively easy to conceive of an oviparous humanity, since even now man is, in one sense, “egg-born.” Magendie, moreover, in his *Précis Élémentaire de Physiologie*, citing “a case where the umbilical cord was ruptured and perfectly cicatrized,” yet the infant was born alive, pertinently asks, “How was the circulation carried on in this organ?” On the next page he says: “Nothing yet known respecting the use of digestion in the foetus”; and respecting its nutrition, propounds this query: “What, then, can we say of the nutrition of the foetus? Physiological works contain only *vague conjectures* on this point.” “Ah, but,” the sceptic may urge, “Magendie’s book belongs to the last generation, and Science has since made such strides that his stigma of ignorance can no longer be fixed upon the profession.” Indeed; then let us turn to a very great authority upon Physiology, viz., Sir M. Foster; and to the disadvantage of modern Science we shall find him saying, “Concerning the rise and development of the functional activities of the embryo, our knowledge is almost a blank. We know scarcely anything about the various steps by which the primary fundamental qualities of the protoplasm of the ovum are differentiated into the complex phenomena which we have attempted in this book to expound.”<sup>1</sup> The students of Trinity College, Cambridge, will now kindly draw a veil before the statue of Hygeia and bandage the eyes of the busts of Galen and Hippocrates, lest they look reproachfully at their degenerate descendants. One further fact we must note. Sir M. Foster is discreetly silent about the case of the ruptured umbilical cord cited by his great French *confrère*.

#### **The First Race created the Second by “budding”; the Second, gave birth to the Third, which then separated into three distinct divisions of men differently procreated.**

(b) This is a very curious statement as explained in the *Commentaries*. To make it clear: The First Race having created the Second by “budding,” as just explained, the Second Race gives birth to the Third — which itself is separated into three distinct divisions, consisting of men differently procreated. The first two of these are pro-

<sup>1</sup> *Textbook of Physiology*, 3<sup>rd</sup> edition, 1879, p. 623

duced by an oviparous method, presumably unknown to modern Natural History. While the early sub-races of the Third Humanity procreated their species by a kind of exudation of moisture or vital fluid, the drops of which coalescing formed an oviform ball — or shall we say egg? — which served as an extraneous vehicle for the generation therein of a *fœtus* and child, the mode of procreation by the later [sub-] races changed, in its results at all events. The little ones of the earlier [sub-] races were entirely sexless — shapeless even for all one knows;<sup>1</sup> but those of the later [sub-] races were born androgynous. It is in the Third Race that the separation of sexes occurred. From being previously asexual, Humanity became distinctly hermaphrodite or bisexual;



2

**Thus physical procreation progressed from asexual to egg-born bisexual, and finally to womb-born men and women.**

The man-bearing eggs began to give birth, gradually and almost imperceptibly in their evolutionary development, first, to Beings in which one sex predominated over the other, and, finally, to distinct men and women. And now let us search for corroboration of these statements in the religious legends of East and West. Let us take the “Egg-born Race” first. Think of Kāśyapa, the Vedic sage, and the most prolific of creators. He was the son of Marīchi, Brahmā’s mind-born son; and he is made to become the father of the *Nāgas*, or Serpents, among other beings. Exoterically, the *Nāgas* are semi-divine beings which have a human face and the tail of a serpent. Yet there was a race of *Nāgas*, said to be a thousand in number only, born or rather sprung from Kadrū, Kāśyapa’s wife, for *the purpose of peopling Pātāla*, which is undeniably America, as will be shown; and there was a NĀGA-DVĪPA, one of the seven divisions of

---

<sup>1</sup> See *Timæus*, 42a; *Symposium*, 189d-e, 190

<sup>2</sup> Lake of the Nagas (1932) Nicholas Roerich

Bhārata-Varsha,<sup>1</sup> India, inhabited by a people bearing the same name, who are allowed, even by some Orientalists, to be *historical*, and to have left many a trace behind them to this day.

Now the point most insisted upon at present is that, whatever origin be claimed for man, his evolution took place in this order:

- 1 Sexless, as all the earlier forms are;
- 2 Then, by a natural transition, he became, “a solitary hermaphrodite,” a bisexual being; and
- 3 Finally separated and became what he is now. Science teaches us that all the primitive forms, though sexless, “still retained the power of undergoing the processes of asexual multiplication”;

why, then, should man be excluded from that law of Nature? Bisexual reproduction is an evolution, a specialized and perfected form on the scale of matter of the fissiparous act of reproduction. Occult teachings are pre-eminently panspermic, and the early history of humanity is hidden only “from ordinary mortals”; nor is the history of the primitive Races buried from the Initiates in the tomb of time, as it is for profane science. Therefore, supported on the one hand by that science which shows to us progressive development and an internal cause for every external modification, as a law in Nature; and, on the other hand, by an implicit faith in the wisdom — we may say pansophia even — of the universal traditions gathered and preserved by the Initiates, who have perfected them into an almost faultless system — thus supported, we venture to state the doctrine clearly.<sup>2</sup>

### Progressive order of human reproduction.

From *The Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 163-68.

At any rate, esoteric philosophy identifies pre-Brāhmanical Asuras, Rudras,<sup>3</sup> Rākshasas and all the “Adversaries” of the Gods in the allegories, with the Egos, which, by incarnating in the still witless man of the Third Race, made him *consciously* immortal. They are, then, during the cycle of Incarnations, the true *dual Logos* — the conflicting and two-faced divine Principle in Man. The *Commentary* that follows, and the next Stanzas may, no doubt, throw more light on this very difficult tenet, but the writer does not feel competent to give it out fully. Of the succession of Races, however, they say:

*First come the SELF-EXISTENT on this Earth. They are the “Spiritual Lives” projected by the absolute WILL and LAW, at the dawn of every rebirth of the worlds. These LIVES are the divine “Śishta,” [the seed-Manus, or the Prajāpatīs and the Pitris].*

---

<sup>1</sup> [Varsha is an earth-region in the *Purānas*.]

<sup>2</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 131-33

<sup>3</sup> Whom *Manu* calls “our paternal grandfathers” (III, 284). The Rudras are the seven manifestations of Rudra-Śiva, “the destroying god,” and also the grand Yogi and ascetic.

From these proceed:

- 1 The First Race, the “Self-born,” which are the [astral] shadows of their Progenitors.<sup>1</sup> The body was devoid of all understanding [mind, intelligence, and will]. The inner being [the higher self or Monad], though within the earthly frame, was unconnected with it. The link, the Manas, was not there as yet.
- 2 From the First [race] emanated the second, called the “Sweat-born”<sup>2</sup> and the “Boneless.” This is the Second Root-Race, endowed by the preservers [Rākshasas]<sup>3</sup> and the incarnating gods [Asuras and the Kumāras] with the first primitive and weak spark [the germ of intelligence] . . . And from these in turn proceeds:
- 3 The Third Root-Race, the “Two-fold” [Androgynes]. The first Races hereof are shells, till the last is “inhabited” [*i.e.*, informed] by the Dhyānis.

The Second Race, as stated above, being also sexless, evolved out of itself, at its beginning, the Third Androgyne Race by an analogous, but already more complicated process. As described in the *Commentary*, the very earliest of that race were: →

---

<sup>1</sup> See Stanza IV, Śloka 15, *Commentary* on p. 92.

<sup>2</sup> To speak of *life* as having arisen, and of the human race as having originated, in this *absurdly unscientific* way, in the face of the modern Pedigrees of Man, is to court instantaneous annihilation. The esoteric doctrine risks the danger, nevertheless, and even goes so far as to ask the impartial reader to compare the above hypothesis (if it is one) with Haeckel's theory — now fast becoming an axiom with science — which is quoted verbatim:

“ . . . ‘How did life, the living world of organisms, arise?’ And, secondly, the special question: ‘How did the human race originate?’ The first of these two inquiries, that as to the first appearance of living beings, can only be decided empirically [!!!] by proof of the so-called Archēbiosis, or equivocal generation, or the spontaneous production of organisms of the simplest conceivable kind. Such are the Monera (Protogenes, Protamoeba, etc.), exceedingly simple microscopic masses of protoplasm without structure or organisation which take in nutriment and *reproduce themselves by division*. Such a Moneron as that primordial organism *discovered* by the renowned English zoologist Huxley, and named *Bathybius Haeckelii*, appears as a continuous thick protoplasmic covering at the greatest depths of the ocean, between 3,000 and 30,000 feet. *It is true that the first appearance of such Monera has not up to the present moment been actually observed*; but there is nothing intrinsically improbable in such an Evolution.” (*The Pedigree of Man*, tr. Aveling, pp. 32-33)

The Bathybius protoplasm having recently turned out to be no organic substance at all, there remains little to be said. Nor, after reading this, does one need to consume further time in refuting the further assertion that: “In that case man also has *beyond a doubt* [to the minds of Haeckel and his like] arisen from the lower Mammalia, apes, the earlier simian creatures, the still earlier Marsupialia, Amphibia, Pisces, by progressive transformations,” all produced by “a series of *natural forces working blindly, . . . without aim, without design*” (p. 36).

The above-quoted passage bears its criticism on its own face. Science is made to teach that which, up to the present time, “*has never been actually observed*.” She is made to deny the phenomenon of an *intelligent* nature and a vital force independent of form and matter, and to find it more scientific to teach the miraculous performance of “*natural forces working blindly without aim or design*.” If so, then we are led to think that the *physico-mechanical* forces of the brains of certain eminent Scientists are leading them on as blindly to sacrifice logic and common sense on the altar of mutual admiration. Why should the protoplasmic *Moneron* producing the first living creature through *self-division* be held as a very scientific hypothesis, and an ethereal *pre-human* race generating the primeval men in the same fashion be tabooed as *unscientific* superstition? Or has materialism obtained a sole monopoly in Science?

<sup>3</sup> The *Rākshasas*, regarded in Indian popular theology as demons, are called the “Preservers” beyond the Himālayas. This double and contradictory meaning has its origin in a philosophical allegory, which is variously rendered in the *Purānas*. It is that when Brahmā created the demons, Yakshas (from *yaksh*, to eat) and the Rākshasas, both of which kinds of demons, as soon as born, wished to devour their creator, those among them that called out “Not so! oh, let him be saved (preserved)” were named Rākshasas (*Vishnu-Purāna*, Bk. I, ch. v). The *Bhāgavata-Purāna* (III, 20, 19-21) renders the allegory differently. Brahmā transformed himself into night (or ignorance) invested with a body, upon which the Yakshas and Rākshasas seized, exclaiming. “Do not spare it; devour it.” Brahmā then cried out, “Do not devour me, spare me.” This has an inner meaning of course. The “body of Night” is the darkness of ignorance, and it is the darkness of silence and secrecy. Now the Rākshasas are shown in almost every case to be Yogis, pious Sādhus and Initiates, a rather unusual occupation for *demons*. The meaning then is that while we have power to dispel the darkness of ignorance, “*devour it*,” we have to preserve the sacred truth from profanation. “Brahmā is for the Brahmans alone,” says that proud caste. The moral of the *fable* is evident.

*The “Sons of Passive Yoga.”<sup>1</sup> They issued from the second Mānushyas [human race], and became oviparous. The emanations that came out of their bodies during the seasons of procreation were ovulary; the small spheroidal nuclei developing into a large soft, egg-like vehicle, gradually hardened, when, after a period of gestation, it broke and the young human animal issued from it unaided, as the fowls do in our race.*

This must seem to the reader ludicrously absurd. Nevertheless, it is strictly on the lines of evolutionary analogy, which science perceives in the development of the living animal species. First the *moneron*-like procreation by self-division (*vide* Haeckel); then, after a few stages, the oviparous, as in the case of the reptiles, which are followed by the birds; then, finally, the mammals with their *ovoviviparous* modes of producing their young ones.

If the term *ovoviviparous* is applied to some fish and reptiles, which hatch their eggs within their bodies, why should it not be applied to female mammalians, including woman? The ovule, in which, after impregnation, the development of the foetus takes place, is an egg.

At all events, this conception is more philosophical than that of Eve with a suddenly created placenta giving birth to Cain, because of the apple, when even the marsupial, the earliest of mammals, *is not placental* yet.

Moreover, the *progressive* order of the methods of reproduction, as unveiled by science, is a brilliant confirmation of esoteric Ethnology. It is only necessary to tabulate the data in order to prove our assertion.<sup>2</sup>

## 1. Fission

(a) As seen in the division of the homogeneous speck of protoplasm, known as *moneron* or *amæba*, into two.

(b) As seen in the division of the nucleated cell, in which the cell-nucleus splits into two sub-nuclei, which either develop within the original cell-wall or burst it, and multiply outside as independent entities. (Cf. the First Root-Race.)

## 2. Budding

A small portion of the parent structure swells out at the surface and finally parts company, growing to the size of the original organism; *e.g.*, many vegetables, the sea-anemone, etc. (Cf. the Second Root-Race.)<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The gradual evolution of man in the Secret Doctrine shows that all the later (to the profane the earliest) Races have their *physical* origin in the early Fourth Race. But is the sub-race, which preceded the one that separated sexually, that is to be regarded as the *spiritual* ancestors of our present generations, and especially of the Eastern Aryan Races. Weber's idea that the Indo-Germanic Race preceded the Aryan *Vedic* Race is, to the Occultist, grotesque to the last degree.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. especially E.O. Schmidt, *The Doctrine of Descent and Darwinism*, pp. 39, *et. seq.*; and Laing, *A Modern Zo-roastrian*, pp. 102-11.)

<sup>3</sup> Every process of healing and cicatrisation in the higher animal groups — even in the case of reproduction of mutilated limbs with the Amphibians — is effected by *fission* and *gemination* of the elementary morphological elements.

### 3. Sporulation

A single cell thrown off by the parent organism, which develops into a multicellular organism reproducing the features of the latter, *e.g.*, bacteria and mosses.

### 4. Intermediate Hermaphroditism

Male and female organs inhering in the same individual; *e.g.*, the majority of plants, worms, and snails, etc.; allied to budding. (Cf. Second and early Third Root-Races.)

### 5. True sexual union (Cf. later Third Root-Race.)

We now come to an important point with regard to the double evolution of the human race. The Sons of Wisdom, or the *spiritual* Dhyānis, had become “intellectual” through their contact with matter, because they had already reached, during previous cycles of incarnation, that degree of intellect which enabled them to become independent and self-conscious entities, *on this plane* of matter. They were reborn only by reason of Karmic effects. They *entered* those who were “ready,” and became the Arhats, or *sages*, alluded to above. This needs explanation.

It does not mean that *Monads* entered forms in which other Monads already were. They were “Essences,” “Intelligences,” and *conscious spirits*; entities seeking to become still more conscious by uniting with more developed matter. Their essence was too pure to be distinct from the universal essence; but their “Egos,” or *Manas* (since they are called *Mānasaputra*, born of “Mahat,” or Brahmā) had to pass through earthly human experiences to become *all-wise*, and be able to start on the returning ascending cycle. The *Monads* are not *discrete* principles, limited or conditioned, but rays from that one universal *absolute* Principle. The entrance into a dark room through the same aperture of one ray of sunlight following another will not constitute *two* rays, but one ray intensified. It is not in the course of natural law that man should become a *perfect* septenary being, before the seventh race in the seventh Round. Yet he has all these principles latent in him from his birth. Nor is it part of the evolutionary law that the Fifth principle (*Manas*), should receive its complete development before the *Fifth* Round. All such prematurely developed intellects (on the *spiritual* plane) in our Race are *abnormal*; they are those whom we call the “Fifth-Rounders.” Even in the coming seventh Race, at the close of this Fourth Round, while our four lower principles will be fully developed, that of *Manas* will be only proportionately so. This limitation, however, refers solely to the spiritual development. The intellectual, on the physical plane, was reached during the Fourth Root-Race. Thus, those who were “half ready,” who received “but a spark,” constitute the average humanity which has to acquire its intellectuality during the present Manvantaric evolution, after which they will be ready in the next for the full reception of the “Sons of Wisdom.” While those which “were not ready” at all, the latest Monads, which had hardly evolved from their last transitional and lower animal forms at the close of the Third Round, remained the “narrow-brained” of the Stanza. This explains the otherwise unaccountable degrees of intellectuality among the various races of men — the savage Bushman and the European — even now. Those tribes of savages, whose reasoning powers are very little above the level of the animals, are not the unjustly disinherited, or the *unfavoured*, as some may think — nothing of the kind.

They are simply those *latest arrivals* among the human Monads, which *were not ready*: which have to evolve during the present Round, as on the three remaining globes (hence on four different planes of being) so as to arrive at the level of the average class when they reach the Fifth Round. One remark may prove useful, as food for thought to the student in this connection. The MONADS of the lowest specimens of humanity (the “narrow-brained”<sup>1</sup> savage South-Sea Islander, the African, the Australian) *had no Karma to work out when first born as men, as their more favoured brethren in intelligence had*. The former are spinning out Karma only now; the latter are burdened with past, present, and future Karma. In this respect the poor savage is more fortunate than the greatest genius of *civilized countries*.<sup>2</sup>



---

<sup>1</sup> The term here means neither the dolicho-cephalic nor the brachyo-cephalic, nor yet skulls of a smaller volume, but simply brains devoid of intellect generally. The theory which would judge of the intellectual capacity of a man according to his cranial capacity, seems absurdly illogical to one who has studied the subject. The skulls of the stone period, as well as those of African Races (Bushmen included) show that the first are above rather than below the average of the brain capacity of the modern man, and the skulls of the last are on the whole (as in the case of Papuans and Polynesians generally) larger by one cubic inch than that of the average Frenchman. Again, the cranial capacity of the Parisian of today represents an average of 1,437 cubic centimetres compared to 1,523 of the Auvergnat.

<sup>2</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 163-68 [There now follows a diagram from [The True Colours of Man](#), v. 17.15.2022; 92pp. This is our fifth Major Work. — ED. PHIL.]

1. Macrocosmos, the Ideal World, and its 3, 7, or 10 Centres of Creative Forces.

- A. Unmanifested Logos, Sexless
- B. Potential Wisdom
- C. Universal Ideation

a. Creative Logos

- b. Eternal Substance
- c. Spirit

D. The Spiritual Forces acting in Matter

A. B. C.  
Unknowable

a. b. c.

This is Pradhana, undifferentiated matter in Sankhya philosophy, or Good, Evil, and Chaotic Darkness (Sattva, Rajas, and Tamas) neutralising each other. When differentiated, they become the Seven Creative Potencies: Spirit, Substance, and Fire stimulating matter to form itself.

D. The Spiritual Forces acting in Matter

2. Microcosmos, the Inner Man, and his 3, 7, or 10 Centres of Potential Forces.

Atman, although exoterically reckoned as the seventh principle, is no individual principle at all, and belongs to the Universal Soul; it is the Auric Egg, the Magnetic Sphere round every human and animal being.

1. Buddhi, the vehicle of Atman
2. Upper Manas, the vehicle of Buddhi
3. Lower Manas [reflecting the above two]
4. Kama-Rupa, the vehicle of Lower Manas
5. Prana, Life
6. Linga-Sharira, the vehicle of Prana

a. b. c.

The three Hypostases of Atman in contact with Nature, and Man being the Fourth, making it a Quaternary, or Tetraktys, the Higher Self.

1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6.

These six principles, acting on four different planes, and having their Auric Envelope on the seventh (vide infra), are those used by the Adepts of the Right-Hand [Path], or White Magicians.

The physical body is no principle; it is entirely ignored, being used only in Black Magic.

3. Microcosmos, the Physical Man, and his 10 Orifices, or Centres of Action.

1. Buddhi, Right Eye

3. Lower Manas, Right Ear

5. Life Principle, Right Nostril

7. Organ of the Creative Logos, Mouth

As the Lower Triad (8, 9, 10) has a direct connection with the Higher Atmic Triad and its three aspects (creative, preservative, and destructive, or rather regenerative), the abuse of the corresponding functions is the most terrible of Karmic Sins — the Sin against the Holy Ghost with the Christians.

2. [Upper] Manas, Left Eye

4. Kama-Rupa, Left Ear

6. Life Vehicle, Left Nostril

7. Paradigm of the tenth (creative) orifice in the Lower Triad

These physical organs are used only by Duggas in Black Magic.

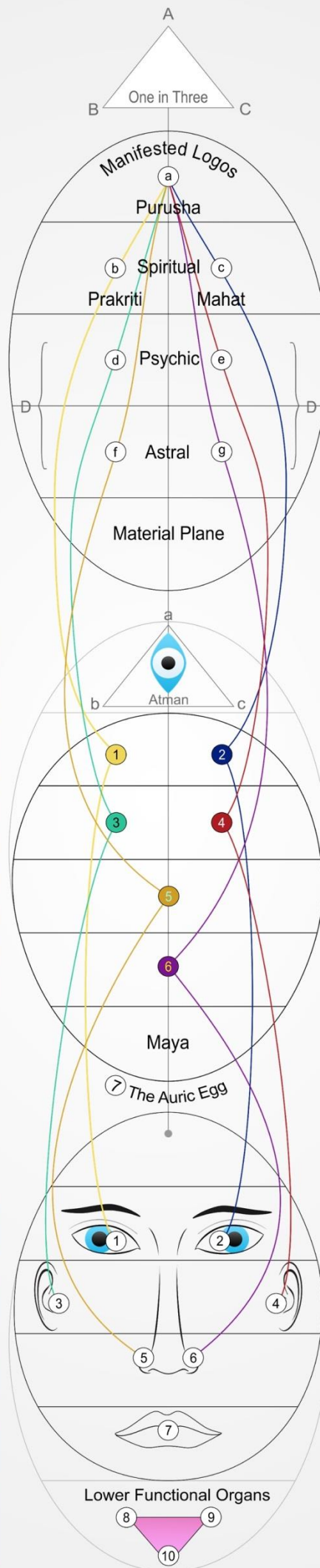


Diagram 1. The Divine Pedigree of Man  
Revision 15.10, www.philaletheians.co.uk



## Third Root-Race: The Lemurian

### Watched by Angels, humanity became ready to receive the solar spark.

This was the Golden Age that, without coercion, without laws, spontaneously nurtured the good and the true. There was no fear or punishment: there were no threatening words to be read, fixed in bronze, no crowd of suppliants fearing the judge's face: they lived safely without protection. No pine tree felled in the mountains had yet reached the flowing waves to travel to other lands: human beings only knew their own shores. There were no steep ditches surrounding towns, no straight war-trumpets, no coiled horns, no swords and helmets. Without the use of armies, people passed their lives in gentle peace and security. The earth herself also, freely, without the scars of ploughs, untouched by hoes, produced everything from herself. Contented with food that grew without cultivation, they collected mountain strawberries and the fruit of the strawberry tree, wild cherries, blackberries clinging to the tough brambles, and acorns fallen from Jupiter's spreading oak-tree. Spring was eternal, and gentle breezes caressed with warm air the flowers that grew without being seeded. Then the untilled earth gave of its produce and, without needing renewal, the fields whitened with heavy ears of corn. Sometimes rivers of milk flowed, sometimes streams of nectar, and golden honey trickled from the green holm oak.

— OVID<sup>1</sup>

**There is a Wondrous Being, the ever-living Human Banyan, whose duty is to rear, nurse, and guide the tottering steps of renascent human races, after their periodical awakening from “obscuration.”**

If we had to describe broadly the origin of this religion [Zoroastrianism] from the standpoint and upon the authority of the Occult teachings, we would call it by its original, primitive name, that of Magianism. Locating its first development in those vast regions which would have to be described as the whole area between the Persian Gulf and the Sea of Okhotsk in its length, and that which stretches through the unexplored deserts between the Altai and the Himalayan mountains in its breadth, we would place it back at an epoch undreamt of by modern science and, therefore, rejected by all but the most speculative and daring anthropologists. We have no right to give out in this journal the correct number of years or rather of ages upon ages, since — according to the doctrines of the Secret Science — the first seeds of Magianism<sup>2</sup> were sown by the hand of the BEING to whose duty it falls to rear, nurse, and guide the tottering steps of the renascent human races, that awake anew to life on every planet in its turn, after its periodical “obscuration.” It goes as far back as the days of our local *Manvantara*, so that the seeds sown among the first “root-race” began sprouting in its infant brain, grew up, and commencing to bear fruit toward the

<sup>1</sup> Ovid: *Metamorphoses*, Bk. I, 89-112; (tr. Kline)

<sup>2</sup> [“Magic, as once taught in Persia and Chaldea, and raised in its occult practices into a religio-magianism. Plato, speaking of Machagistia, or Magianism [Mazdeanism], remarks that it is the purest form of the worship of things divine.” *Theosophical Glossary: Machagistia*]

latter part of the second race, developed fully during the third<sup>1</sup> into what is known among Occultists as the “Tree of Knowledge” and the “Tree of Life” — the real meaning of both having been, later on, so sadly disfigured and misinterpreted by both Zoroastrians and Christians.<sup>2</sup>

**He descended from a high region in the early part of the Third Age, before the separation of the sexes of the Third Root-Race.**

There are four grades of initiation mentioned in exoteric works, which are known respectively in Sanskrit as “Srotāpanna,” “Sakridāgāmin,” “Anāgāmin,” and “Arhan” — the four paths to Nirvāna, in this, our fourth Round, bearing the same appellations. The Arhat, though he can see the Past, the Present, and the Future, is not yet the highest Initiate; for the Adept himself, the *initiated* candidate, becomes chela (pupil) to a higher Initiate. Three further higher grades have to be conquered by the Arhat who would reach the apex of the ladder of Arhatship. There are those who have reached it even in this fifth race of ours, but the faculties necessary for the attainment of these higher grades will be fully developed in the average ascetic only at the end of this Root-Race, and in the Sixth and Seventh. Thus there will always be Initiates and the profane till the end of this minor Manvantara, the present *life-cycle*. The *Arhats* of the “fire-mist,” of the 7<sup>th</sup> rung are but one remove from the Root-Base of their Hierarchy — the highest on Earth, and our Terrestrial chain. This “Root-Base” has a name which can only be translated by several compound words into English — “the ever-living-human-Banyan.” This “Wondrous Being” descended from a “high region,” they say, in the early part of the Third Age, before the separation of the sexes of the Third Race.

**He is now sitting at the threshold of Light, looking into it from within the circle of Darkness, which He will not cross.**

The “BEING” just referred to, which has to remain nameless, is the *Tree* from which, in subsequent ages, all the great *historically* known Sages and Hierophants, such as the Rishi Kapila, Hermes, Enoch, Orpheus, etc., etc., have branched off. As objective *man*, he is the mysterious (to the profane — the ever invisible) yet ever present Personage about whom legends are rife in the East, especially among the Occultists and the students of the Sacred Science. It is he who changes form, yet remains ever the same. And it is he again who holds spiritual sway over the *initiated* Adepts throughout the whole world. He is, as said, the “Nameless One” who has so many names, and yet whose names and whose very nature are unknown. He is *the* “Initiator,” called the “GREAT SACRIFICE.” For, sitting at the threshold of LIGHT, he looks into it from within the circle of Darkness, which he will not cross; nor will he quit his post till the last day of this life-cycle. Why does the solitary Watcher remain at his self-chosen post? Why does he sit by the fountain of primeval Wisdom, of which he drinks no longer, as he has naught to learn which he does not know — aye, neither on this Earth, nor in its heaven? Because the lonely, sore-footed pilgrims on their way back to their *home* are never sure to the last moment of not losing their way in this limitless desert of illusion and matter called Earth-Life. Because he would fain

<sup>1</sup> One who has studied the “Fragments of Occult Truth” knows that our present race is the *fifth*, and that we have two more to pass through before we reach our end — on this planet.

<sup>2</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (ZOROASTRIANISM IN THE LIGHT OF OCCULT PHILOSOPHY) IV pp. 513-14

SECRET DOCTRINE'S SECOND PROPOSITION SERIES  
ROOT-RACE 3. HUMANITY ABOUT TO RECEIVE THE SOLAR SPARK

show the way to that region of freedom and light, from which he is a voluntary exile himself, to every prisoner who has succeeded in liberating himself from the bonds of flesh and illusion. Because, in short, he has sacrificed himself for the sake of mankind, though but a few Elect may profit by the GREAT SACRIFICE.



Distant Lands by Lady Yana Dhyana

## Then the Watcher descended on earth and reigned over men.

**Under the silent guidance of this Wondrous Being, the pupils of the incarnated Rishis and Devas of the Third Root-Race handed their knowledge from one generation to another.**

It is under the direct, silent guidance of this MAHĀ — (great) — GURU that all the other less divine Teachers and instructors of mankind became, from the first awakening of human consciousness, the guides of early Humanity. It is through these “Sons of God” that infant humanity got its first notions of all the arts and sciences, as well as of spiritual knowledge; and it is they who have laid the first foundation stone of those ancient civilizations that puzzle so sorely our modern generation of students and scholars.<sup>1, 2</sup>

**The Dhyani-Buddhas in charge of the two higher groups, the “Watchers” or “Architects,” reigned on earth during the Satya-Yuga and up to the beginning of the Third Root-Race. Then after, the incarnated Dhyanis of a lower order, Patriarchs, Heroes, Manes up to King Menes and, finally, the human kings of other nations took over.**

The “Watchers” reign over man during the whole period of *Satya-Yuga* and the smaller subsequent yugas, down to the beginning of the Third Root-Race; after which it is the Patriarchs, Heroes, and the Manes,<sup>3</sup> the incarnated Dhyānis of a lower order,

---

<sup>1</sup> Let those who doubt this statement explain the mystery of the extraordinary knowledge possessed by the ancients — alleged to have developed from lower and animal-like savages, the *cave-men* of the Palaeolithic age — on any other equally reasonable grounds. Let them turn to such works as those of Vitruvius Pollio of the Augustan age, on architecture [*De Architectura Libri Decem*], for instance, in which all the rules of proportion are those *taught anciently at initiations*, if he would acquaint himself with the truly divine art, and understand the *deep esoteric significance hidden in every rule and law of proportion*. No man descended from a Palaeolithic cave dweller could ever evolve such a science unaided, even in millenniums of thought and intellectual evolution. It is the pupils of those incarnated Rishis and Devas of the third Root-Race, who handed their knowledge from one generation to another, to Egypt and Greece with its now lost *canon of proportion*; as it is the Disciples of the Initiates of the 4<sup>th</sup>, the Atlanteans, who handed it over to their *Cyclopes*, the “Sons of Cycles” or of the “Infinite,” from whom the name passed to the still later generations of Gnostic priests. “It is owing to the divine perfection of those architectural proportions that the Ancients could build those wonders of all the subsequent ages, their Fanes, Pyramids, Cave-Temples, Cromlechs, Cairns, Altars, proving they had the powers of machinery and a knowledge of mechanics to which modern skill is like a child’s play, and which that *skill* refers to itself as the works of hundred-handed giants. Modern architects may not altogether have neglected those rules, but they have superadded enough empirical innovations to destroy those just proportions. It is Vitruvius who gave to posterity the rules of construction of the Grecian temples erected to the immortal gods; and the ten books of Marcus Vitruvius Pollio on Architecture, of one, in short, *who was an initiate*, can only be studied esoterically. The Druidical circles, the Dolmen, the Temples of India, Egypt and Greece, the Towers and the 127 towns in Europe which were found “Cyclopean in origin” by the French Institute, are all the work of initiated Priest-Architects, the descendants of those primarily taught by the “Sons of God,” justly called “The Builders.” This is what appreciative posterity says of those descendants.

“They used neither mortar nor cement, nor steel, nor iron to cut the stones with; and yet they were so artificially wrought that in many places the joints are hardly seen, though many of the stones, as in Peru, are 38 feet long, 18 feet broad, and 6 feet thick, and in the wall of the fortress of Cuzco there are stones of a still greater size.” [J. de Acosta, *The Natural & Moral Hist. of the Indies*, Bk. VI, ch. 14] Again,

“ . . . the well of Syene, made 5,400 years ago, when that spot was exactly under the tropic, which it has now ceased to be, was also one of their works of wonder. It was so constructed that at noon, at the precise moment of the summer solstice, the entire disc of the sun was seen reflected on its surface — a work which the united skill of all the astronomers in Europe would not now be able to effect.” (Kenealy, *The Book of God: The Apocalypse of Adam-Oannēs*, p. 118)

<sup>2</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, I pp. 206-8; [on Stanza VI.7b.]

<sup>3</sup> See the Egyptian Dynasties enumerated by the priests to Solon. [Cf. Cory, *Ancient Fragments*, 1832. Full text in our Theosophy and Theosophists Series. — ED. PHIL.]

up to King Menes and the human kings of other nations; all were recorded carefully. In the views of symbologists this *Mythopœic Age* is of course only regarded as a fairy tale. But since traditions and even Chronicles of such dynasties of *divine Kings* — of gods reigning over men followed by dynasties of Heroes or Giants — exist in the annals of every nation, it is difficult to understand how all the peoples under the sun, some of whom are separated by vast oceans and belong to different hemispheres, such as the ancient Peruvians and Mexicans, as well as the Chaldeans, could have worked out the same “fairy tales” in the same order of events.<sup>1</sup> However, as the Secret Doctrine teaches *history* — which, for being esoteric and traditional, is none the less more reliable than profane history — we are as entitled to our beliefs as anyone else, whether religionist or sceptic. And that Doctrine says that the Dhyāni-Buddhas of the two higher groups, namely, the “Watchers” or the “Architects,” furnished the many and various races with divine kings and leaders. It is the latter who taught humanity their arts and sciences, and the former who revealed to the incarnated Monads that had just shaken off their vehicles of the lower Kingdoms — and who had, therefore, lost every recollection of their divine origin — the great spiritual truths of the transcendental worlds.<sup>2</sup>

Thus, as expressed in the Stanza, the Watchers descended on Earth and reigned over men — “*who are themselves.*” The reigning kings had finished their cycle on Earth and other worlds, in the preceding Rounds. In the future manvantaras they will have risen to higher systems than our planetary world; and it is the Elect of our Humanity, the Pioneers on the hard and difficult path of Progress, who will take the places of their predecessors. The next great Manvantara will witness the men of our own life cycle becoming the instructors and guides of a mankind whose Monads may now yet be imprisoned — semi-conscious — in the most intellectual of the animal kingdom, while their lower principles will be animating, perhaps, the highest specimens of the Vegetable world.<sup>3</sup>

### **Earth and Man are the products of three fires, the Electric, the Solar, and the fire produced by friction.**

“*Our earth and man,*” says the *Commentary*, “*being the products of the three Fires*” — whose three names answer, in Sanskrit, to “*the electric fire, the Solar fire, and the fire produced by friction,*” — these three fires, explained on the Cosmic and human planes, are Spirit, Soul, and Body, the three great Root-groups, with their four additional divisions. These vary with the Schools, and become — according to their applications — the *upādhis* and the *vehicles*, or the *noumena* of these. In the exoteric accounts, they are personified by the “three sons of surpassing brilliancy and splendour” of Agni Abhimānin, the eldest son of Brahmā, the *Cosmic LOGOS*, by *Svāhā*, one of Daksha’s<sup>4</sup> daughters. In the metaphysical sense the “Fire of friction” means

---

<sup>1</sup> See the *Sacred Mysteries among the Mayas and the Quichés, 11,500 years ago* (1886), by Auguste le Plongeon, who shows the identity between the Egyptian rites and beliefs and those of the people he describes. The ancient hieratic alphabets of the Maya and the Egyptians are almost identical.

<sup>2</sup> See Vol. II, pp. 365 *et seq.*, “Our Divine Instructors.”

<sup>3</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, I pp. 266-67; [on Stanza VII.7b.]

<sup>4</sup> Daksha, the “intelligent, the competent.” “This name generally carries with it the idea of *creative power.*” He is a son of Brahmā and Aditi, and agreeably to other versions, a self-born power, which, like Minerva, sprang from his father’s body. He is the chief of the *Prajāpatīs* — the Lords or Creators of Being. In *Vishnu-Purāna*, *Parāśara*

the Union between *Buddhi*, the sixth, and *Manas*, the fifth, principles, which thus are united or cemented together; the fifth merging partially into and becoming part of the *Monad*; in the physical, it relates to the *creative spark*, or germ, which fructifies and generates the human being. The three Fires, it is said (whose names are Pāvaka, Pavamāna and Śuchi), were condemned by a curse of Vasishtha, the great sage, “to be born over and over again.”<sup>1</sup> This is clear enough.

**Asuras, Kumaras, Manus, Pitris, Prajapatis, and Rishis, are generic names of the “Flames,” Sons of Passive Yoga.**

Therefore, the FLAMES, whose functions are confused in the exoteric books, and who are called indifferently Prajāpatis, Pitris, Manus, Asuras, Rishis, Kumāras,<sup>2</sup> etc., are said to incarnate personally in the Third Root-Race and thus find themselves “reborn over and over again.” In the Esoteric doctrine they are generally named the Asuras, or the *Asura-Devatās* or *Pitar-Devatās* (gods) for, as said, they were first Gods — and the highest — before they became “no-gods,” and had from Spirits of Heaven fallen into Spirits of the Earth<sup>3</sup> — *exoterically*, note well, in orthodox dogma.

No Theologian, any more than an Orientalist, can ever understand the genealogies of the Prajāpatis, the Manus, and the Rishis, nor the direct connection of these — or their correlation rather — with the Gods, unless he has the key to the old primitive Cosmogony and Theogony, which all the Nations originally had in common. All these gods and demi-gods are found reborn on earth, in various Kalpas and in as various characters; each, moreover, *having his Karma distinctly traced, and every effect assigned to its cause.*

Before other Stanzas could be explained, it was, as seen, absolutely necessary to show that the sons of “Dark Wisdom,” though identical with the Archangels which Theology has chosen to call the “Fallen,” are as divine and as pure, and more so, than all the Michaels and Gabriels so glorified in the churches. The “Old Book” goes into various details of Astral life, which at this juncture would be quite incomprehensible to the reader. It may, therefore, be left for later explanations, and the First and Second Races can now only receive bare notice. Not so for the Third Race — the Root-Race which separated into sexes, and which was the first to be endowed with reason. Men evolving *pari passu* with the globe, and the latter having “incrustated” more than a hundred millions of years before — the first human sub-race had already begun to materialize or solidify, so to say. But, as the Stanza has it: “*the inner man* [the conscious Entity] *was not.*” This “Conscious Entity” Occultism says, comes from, nay, in many cases *is*, the very essence and *esse* of the high Intelligences con-

---

says of him, “in every Kalpa (or manvantara) Daksha and the rest are born and are again destroyed.” And the *Rig-Veda* says that “Daksha sprang from Aditi and Aditi from Daksha,” a reference to the eternal cyclic rebirth of the same divine Essence.

<sup>1</sup> *Bhāgavata-Purāna*, IV, 24, 4

<sup>2</sup> No one of these orders is distinct from the Pitris or Progenitors, as says *Manu* (iii, 284). “The wise call our fathers Vasus; our paternal grandfathers, Rudras; our paternal great grandfathers, Ādityas; agreeably to a text of the *Vedas*,” or “this is an everlasting Vedic text” in another translation.

<sup>3</sup> As now discovered by the late G. Smith in the Babylonian cylinder literature, it was the same in Chaldean Theogony. Ishtar, “eldest of Heaven and of Earth.” Below him the *Gigi* or Angels of Heaven, and the *Anūnnaki*, or angels of Earth. Below these again various classes of Spirits and “Genii” called Sadu, Vadukku, Ekimu, Gallu — of which some were good, some evil. (See G. Smith, *Chaldean Account of Genesis*, p. 54, and Sayce, *Hibbert Lectures*, 1887, p. 141)

demned, by the undeviating law of Karmic evolution, to reincarnate in this manvantara.<sup>1</sup>

**Led by that Wondrous Being, a group of such half-divine half-human beings incarnated personally into the senseless shells of the Third Root-Race men and found themselves reborn over and over again.**

This Third Race is sometimes called collectively “the Sons of *Passive Yoga*,” *i.e.*, it was produced unconsciously by the second Race, which, as it was intellectually inactive, is supposed to have been constantly plunged in a kind of blank or abstract contemplation, as required by the conditions of the Yoga state. In the first or earlier portion of the existence of this third race, while it was yet in its state of purity, the “Sons of Wisdom,” who, as will be seen, incarnated in this Third Race, produced by *Kriyāśakti* a progeny called the “Sons of Ad” or “of the Fire-Mist,” the “Sons of Will and Yoga,” etc. They were a conscious production, as a portion of the race was already animated with the divine spark of spiritual, superior intelligence. It was not a Race, this progeny. It was at first a wondrous Being, called the “Initiator,” and after him a group of semi-divine and semi-human beings. “*Set apart*” in Archaic *genesis* for certain purposes, they are those in whom are said to have incarnated the highest Dhyānis, “Munis and Rishis from previous Manvantaras” — *to form the nursery for future human adepts*, on this earth and during the present cycle. These “Sons of Will and Yoga” born, so to speak, in an immaculate way, remained, it is explained, entirely apart from the rest of mankind.<sup>2</sup>

[The Kumāras]<sup>3</sup> may indeed mark a “special” or extra *creation*, since it is they who, by incarnating themselves within the senseless human shells of the two first two Root-Races, and a great portion of the Third Root-Race — create, so to speak, a *new race*: that of thinking, self-conscious and *divine* men.<sup>4</sup>

As given out in *The Secret Doctrine*, the Egos or Kumāras, incarnating in man, at the end of the Third Root-Race, are not human Egos of this earth or plane, but became such only from the moment they ensouled the animal man, thus endowing him with his Higher Mind. They are “Breaths” or Principles, called the Human Soul, or Manas, the Mind. As the teachings say: “Each is a Pillar of Light. Having chosen its vehicle, it expanded, surrounding with an Ākāśic Aura the human animal, while the Divine (Mānasic) Principle, settled within that human form.”<sup>5</sup>



<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 247-48

<sup>2</sup> *ibid.*, I p. 207; [on Stanza VI.7b.]

<sup>3</sup> Cf. “Chitkala (*Sk.*). In Esoteric philosophy, identical with the Kumāras, those who first incarnated into the men of the Third Root-Race.” *Theosophical Glossary*: Chitkala; [Cf. *Secret Doctrine*, I p. 288 *fn.*]

<sup>4</sup> *ibid.*, I p. 457 *fn.* [quoting and commenting upon “the Dhyānis, derived immediately from the supreme Principle, who reappear in the Vaivasvata Manu period, for the progress of mankind,” from an *Esoteric Text*.]

<sup>5</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (E.S. INSTRUCTION No. III) XII p. 608

## Crowning Achievement of the Great Sacrifice.

**The evolution of Spirit through matter could never have been achieved, nor would it have received its first impulse, had not the Bright Spirits sacrificed their super-ethereal essence to animate the man of clay, by endowing each of his inner principles with a reflection of their essence.**

At the dawn of his consciousness, the man of the Third Root-Race had thus no beliefs that could be called *religion*. That is to say, he was equally as ignorant of “gay religions, full of pomp and gold” as of any system of faith or outward worship. But if the term is to be defined as the binding together of the masses in one form of reverence paid to those we feel higher than ourselves, of piety — as a feeling expressed by a child toward a loved parent — then even the earliest Lemurians had a religion — and a most beautiful one — from the very beginning of their intellectual life. Had they not their bright gods of the elements around them, and even within themselves? Was not their childhood passed with, nursed and tendered by, those who had given them life and called them forth to intelligent, conscious life? We are assured it was so, and we believe it. For the evolution of Spirit into matter could never have been achieved; nor would it have received its first impulse, had not the bright Spirits sacrificed their own respective super-ethereal essences to animate the man of clay, by endowing each of his inner principles with a portion, or rather, a reflection of that essence. The Dhyānis of the Seven Heavens (the seven planes of Being) are the NOUMENA of the actual and the future Elements, just as the Angels of the Seven Powers of nature — the grosser effects of which are perceived by us in what Science is pleased to call the “modes of motion” — the imponderable forces and what not — are the still higher noumena of still higher Hierarchies.<sup>1</sup>

**The seven names of the first seven Logoic Emanations or Flames, Sons of Fire, hold the key to the “Word” that is neither word, nor the tetragrammaton of the Jews that was invented to mislead the profane.**

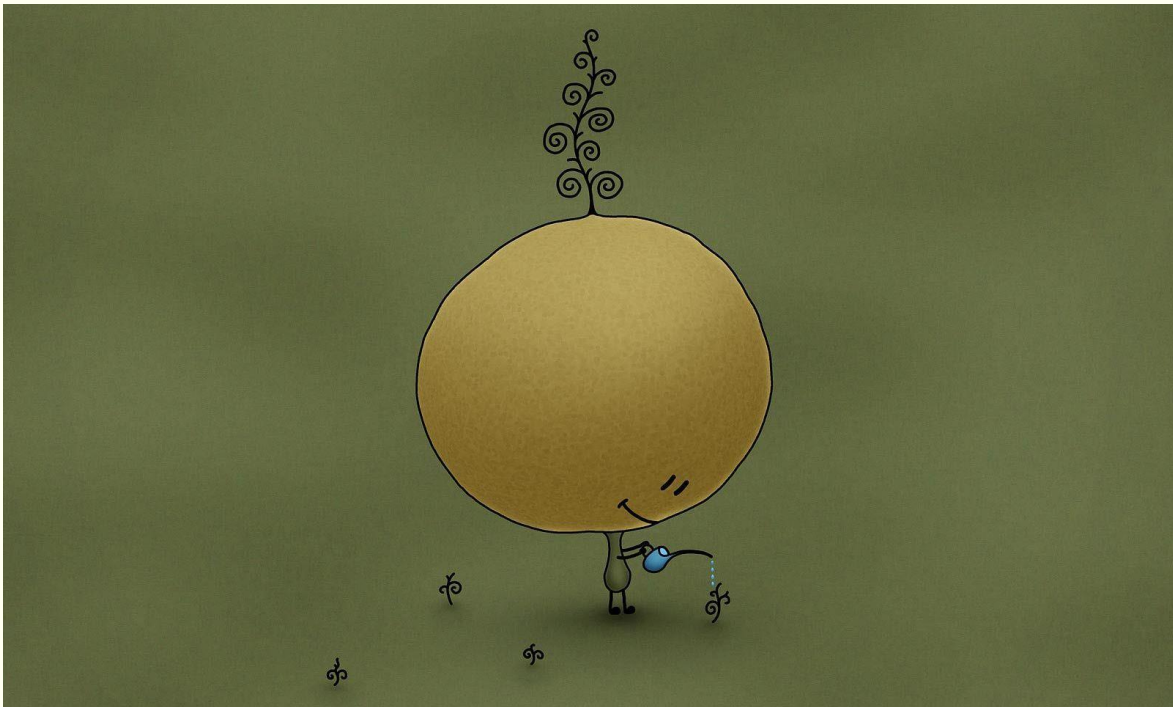
We must not confuse the purely metaphysical personifications of the *abstract* attributes of Deity, with their reflection — the sidereal gods. This reflection, however, is in reality the objective expression of the abstraction: *living* Entities and the models formed on that divine prototype. Moreover, the three metaphysical Sēphirōth or “*the periphrasis of Jehovah*” are *not* Jehovah; it is the latter himself with the additional titles of Adonai, Elōhīm, Tsabaōth, and the numerous names lavished on him, who is the periphrasis of *Ēl Shaddai*, the Omnipotent. The name is a circumlocution, indeed, a too abundant figure of Jewish rhetoric, and has always been denounced by the Occultists. To the Jewish Kabbalists, and even the Christian Alchemists and Rosicrucians, Jehovah was a convenient *screen*, unified by the folding of its many flaps, and adopted as a substitute: one name of an individual Sēphirōth being as good as another name, for those who had the secret. The Tetragrammaton, the Ineffable, the

---

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 272-73



sidereal “*Sum Total*,” was invented<sup>1</sup> for no other purpose than to mislead the profane and to symbolize life and generation.<sup>2</sup> The real secret and *unpronounceable* name — “the word that is no word” — has to be sought in the seven names of the first seven emanations, or the “Sons of the Fire,” in the secret Scriptures of all the great nations, and even in the *Zohar*, the Kabbalistic lore of that smallest of all, the Jewish. This word, composed of seven letters in each tongue, is found embodied in the architectural remains of every grand building in the world; from the Cyclopean remains on Easter Island (part of a continent buried under the seas nearer four million years ago<sup>3</sup> than 20,000) down to the earliest Egyptian pyramids.<sup>4</sup>



<sup>1</sup> Cf. “. . . IHVH, the Tetragrammaton of the *formative* world, and the spouse of the “Bride,” whose kingdom is Asiāh or *matter*, though easy of explanation, is still more difficult to reveal in words, not on account of its sacredness, but rather of its indecency. I refer the reader for the plain symbolism of the four letters I, H, V, H, to J.R. Skinner’s *Source of Measures*, p. 10, wherein that symbolism is given.” *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (TETRAGRAMMATON) VIII p. 147; [A searchable PDF of Skinner’s masterpiece can be found in our Planetary Rounds and Globes Series. — ED. PHIL.]

<sup>2</sup> Says the translator of Avicbron’s *Qabbalah* (Isaac Myer, LL.B., of Philadelphia) of this “Sum Total”:  
“The letter of Kether is (Yöd), of Bināh (Heh), together Yāh, the feminine name; the third letter, that of Hokhmāh, is (Vau), making together YHV of YHVH, the Tetragrammaton, and really the complete symbols of its efficaciousness. The last (Heh) of this Ineffable Name *being always applied to the Six Lower and the last, together the Seven* remaining Sefirōth.” [p. 263] Thus the Tetragrammaton is holy only in its abstract synthesis. As a quaternary containing the lower Seven Sefirōth, *it is phallic*.

<sup>3</sup> The statement will, of course, be found preposterous and absurd, and simply laughed at. But if one believes in the final submersion of Atlantis 850,000 years ago, as taught in *Esoteric Buddhism* (the gradual first sinking having begun during the Eocene age), one has to accept the statement for the so-called Lemuria, the continent of the Third Root-Race, first nearly destroyed by combustion, and then submerged. This is what the *Commentary* says: “The first earth having been purified by the forty-nine fires, her people, born of Fire and Water, could not die . . . the Second Earth [with its race] disappeared as vapour vanishes in the air . . . the Third Earth had everything consumed on it after the *separation*, and went down into the lower Deep [the Ocean]. This was *twice* eighty-two cyclic years ago.” Now a *cyclic* year is what we call a *sidereal* year, and is founded on the precession of the equinoxes, or 25,868 years each, and this is equal, therefore, in all to 4,242,352 years. More details will be found in the text of Volume II. Meanwhile, this doctrine is embodied in the “Kings of Edōm.”

<sup>4</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, I pp. 438-39

## Axis mundi is about to cross the horizon.

**In the third stage of Anthropogenesis, the cross remains within the circle.**

When the diameter line is crossed by a vertical one  $\oplus$ , it becomes the mundane cross. Humanity has reached its third root-race; it is the sign for the origin of human life to begin.<sup>1</sup>

**The Third and Fourth Races are symbolised by the Puranic Venus.**

Venus is the most occult, powerful, and mysterious of all the planets; the one whose influence upon, and relation to the Earth is most prominent. In exoteric Brahmanism, Venus or *Śukra* — a male deity<sup>2</sup> — is the son of Bhrigu, one of the Prajāpatis and a Vedic sage, and is Daitya-Guru, or the priest-instructor of the primeval giants. The whole history of “*Śukra*” in the *Purānas*, refers to the Third and to the Fourth Races.

*It is through Śukra that the “double ones” [the Hermaphrodites] of the Third [Root-Race] descended from the first “Sweat-born.” Therefore it is represented under the symbol of  $\ominus$  [the circle and diameter] during the Third [Race], and of  $\oplus$  during the Fourth.<sup>3</sup>*

**Yama is a personification of the Third Root-Race.**

Yama (*Sk.*). The personified third root-race in Occultism. In the Indian Pantheon Yama is the subject of two distinct versions of the myth.<sup>4</sup>

**He is the first man that died, and the first that departed to the heaven of bliss.**

In the *Vedas* he is the *god of the dead*, a Pluto or a Minos, with whom the shades of the departed dwell (the *Kāmarūpas* in *Kāmaloka*). A hymn speaks of Yama as the first of men that died, and the first that departed to the world of bliss (*Devachan*). This, because Yama is the embodiment of the race which was the first to be endowed with *consciousness* (*Manas*), without which there is neither Heaven nor Hades. Yama is represented as the son of *Vivasvat* (the Sun). *He had a twin-sister named Yamī*, who was ever urging him, according to another hymn, to take her for his wife, in order to perpetuate the species. The above has a very suggestive symbolical meaning, which is explained in Occultism. As Dr. Muir truly remarks, the *Rig-Veda* — the greatest authority on the primeval myths which strike the original key-note of the themes that underlie all the subsequent variations — nowhere shows Yama “as having anything to do with the punishment of the wicked.” As king and judge of the dead, a Pluto in short, Yama is a far later creation.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, I p. 5

<sup>2</sup> In the esoteric philosophy it is male and female, or hermaphrodite; hence the *bearded* Venus in mythology.

<sup>3</sup> *ibid.*, II p. 30; [quoting from a *Commentary*.]

<sup>4</sup> *Theosophical Glossary*: Yama

**Twins Yama-Yami live in a palace of copper and iron, green and red. They stand for dual Manas.**

One has to study the true character of Yama-Yamī throughout more than one hymn and epic poem, and collect the various accounts scattered in dozens of ancient works, and then he will obtain a consensus of allegorical statements which will be found to corroborate and justify the Esoteric teaching, that Yama-Yamī is the symbol of the *dual Manas*, in one of its mystical meanings. For instance, Yama-Yamī is always represented of a *green* colour and clothed with *red*, and as dwelling in a palace of *copper* and *iron*. Students of Occultism know to which of the human “principles” the green and the red colours, and by correspondence the *iron* and *copper*, are to be applied. The “twofold-ruler” — the epithet of Yama-Yamī — is regarded in the exoteric teachings of the Chino-Buddhists as both judge and criminal, the restrainer of *his own* evil doings and the evil-doer himself. In the Hindu epic poems Yama-Yamī is the twin-child of the Sun (the deity) by Sañjñā (spiritual consciousness); but while Yama is the Āryan “lord of the day,” appearing as the symbol of spirit in the East, Yamī is the queen of the night (darkness, ignorance) “who opens to mortals the path to the West” — the emblem of evil and matter.

**In the Puranas, Yama has many wives who force him to dwell in the lower world, this earth. He is a Spirit in exile.**

In the *Purānas* Yama has many wives (many Yamīs) who force him to dwell in the lower world (Pātāla, Myalba, etc., etc.); and an allegory represents him with his foot lifted, to kick Chhāyā, the handmaiden of his father (the astral body of his mother, Sañjñā, a metaphysical aspect of Buddhi or Alaya). As stated in the Hindu Scriptures, a soul when it quits its mortal frame, returns to its abode in the lower regions (Kāmaloka or Hades). Once there, the Recorder, the Karmic messenger called *Chitragupta* (hidden or concealed brightness), reads out his account from the Great Register, wherein during the life of the human being, every deed and thought are indelibly impressed — and, according to the sentence pronounced, the “soul” either ascends to the abode of the Pitris (Devachan), descends to a “hell” (Kāmaloka), or is reborn on earth in another human form. The student of Esoteric philosophy will easily recognize the bearings of the allegories.<sup>1</sup>

**Hermes Anubis, represented with an animal head, reveals to the souls of the dead the mysteries of the lower world.**

Hermanubis (*Gr.*). Or Hermes Anubis “the revealer of the mysteries of the *lower world*” — not of Hell or Hades as interpreted, but of our Earth (the *lowest world of the septenary chain of worlds*) — and also of the sexual mysteries. Creuzer must have guessed at the truth of the right interpretation, as he calls Anubis-Thoth-Hermes “*a symbol of science and of the intellectual world.*”



<sup>1</sup> *Theosophical Glossary: Yama*

**During the birth process of the early Third Root-Race the cross fell off the circle and became phallic when those men who, being still mindless, imitated the animals and thus degraded themselves. The uncircled cross also stands for the dual meaning of sexes.**

He was always represented with a cross in his hand, one of the earliest symbols of the mystery of generation, or procreation on this earth. In the Chaldean Kabbala (*Book of Numbers*) the Tat symbol, or +, is referred to as Adam and Eve, the latter being the transverse or horizontal bar drawn out of the side (or rib) of *Hadam*, the perpendicular bar. The fact is that, esoterically, Adam and Eve while representing the early *third* Root-Race — those who, being still mindless, imitated the animals and degraded themselves with the latter — stand also as the dual symbol of the sexes. Hence Anubis, the Egyptian god of generation, is represented with the head of an animal, a dog or a jackal, and is also said to be the “Lord of the *underworld*” or “Hades” into which he introduces the *souls of the dead* (the reincarnating entities), for *Hades* is in one sense the womb, as some of the writings of the Church Fathers fully show.<sup>1</sup>

**Thoth alone remains changeless from the first to the last Divine Dynasty. He is the god of wisdom and has authority over all other gods. He is the recorder and judge. He is the Master of Cynocephalus, the dog-headed ape who stood in Egypt as a living symbol and remembrance of the Third Root-Race.**

Thoth (*Eg.*). The most mysterious and the least understood of gods, whose personal character is entirely distinct from all other ancient deities. While the permutations of Osiris, Isis, Horus, and the rest, are so numberless that their individuality is all but lost, Thoth remains changeless from the first to the last Dynasty. He is the god of wisdom and of authority over all other gods. He is the recorder and the judge. His ibis-head, the pen and tablet of the celestial scribe, who records the thoughts, words and deeds of men and weighs them in the balance, liken him to the type of the esoteric *Lipikas*. His name is one of the first that appears on the oldest monuments. He is the lunar god of the first dynasties, the master of Cynocephalus — the dog-headed ape who stood in Egypt as a living symbol and remembrance of the Third Root-Race.<sup>2</sup>

**The first Three Races were Divine Dynasties, superhuman Celestial Spirits, Titans and Kings, born one from the other mentally in Bharata-Varsha (India), land of divine knowledge and initiation.**

Nearly five hundred years before the actual era, Herodotus was shown by the priests of Egypt the statues of their human Kings and Pontiffs-*Pirōmis* (the arch-prophets or Mahā-Chohans of the temples), *born one from the other* (without the intervention of woman) who had reigned before Menes, their first *human* King. These statues, he says, were enormous colossi in wood, three hundred and forty-five in number, *each of which had his name, his history and his annals*. And they assured Herodotus<sup>3</sup> (unless the most truthful of historians, the “Father of History,” is now accused of fibbing, *just in this instance*) that no historian could ever understand or write an ac-

<sup>1</sup> *Theosophical Glossary*: Hermanubis

<sup>2</sup> *ibid.*, Thoth

<sup>3</sup> *History*, II, 143. See also de Mirville, *Des Esprits*, Vol. II, pp. 16-17, for a mass of evidence.

count of these superhuman Kings, unless he had studied and learned the *history of the three dynasties* that preceded the human — namely, the DYNASTIES OF THE GODS, that of demi-gods, and of the heroes, or giants. These “three dynasties” are the three Races.

Translated into the language of the Esoteric doctrine, these three dynasties would also be those of the Devas, of Kimpurushas, and of Dānavas and Daityas — otherwise gods, celestial spirits, and giants or Titans. “Happy are those who are born, even from the condition of gods, as men, in Bhārata-Varsha!” exclaim the incarnated gods themselves, during the Third Root-Race. Bhārata is India, but in this case it symbolized the chosen land in those days, and was considered the best of the divisions of Jambu-dvīpa, as it was the land of active (spiritual) works *par excellence*; the land of initiation and of divine knowledge.<sup>1</sup>

**They informed the mind of animal men of the middle and late Third Race, during the present (Fourth) Round, in seven stages.**

The mānasaputras<sup>2</sup> are likewise dhyāni-chohans. There are seven classes of these mānasaputras, just as there are seven classes of Agnishvāttas. In fact, the agnishvāta-energy and the mānasaputra-energy are two aspects of the same cosmic beings. The incarnation or entrance of these mānasaputras into the as yet mentally unawakened humanity, of the middle and later third root-race of this fourth globe during this present fourth round, took place in seven stages, according to the seven classes of the mānasaputras. It took ages before all the humanity of that period became self-conscious.<sup>3</sup>



---

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 369; [on the three dynasties of gods, demi-gods, and heroes, *i.e.*, the three Root-Races.]

<sup>2</sup> *Mānasaputra* is a compound: *mānasa*, mental, from the word *manas*, mind, and *putra*, child — offspring of the cosmic Mahat or intelligence, which later has always been described as the fire of spiritual consciousness.

<sup>3</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (E.S. INSTRUCTION No. III) XII p. 644

## Evolution of complexion and types.

Stanza X.39. THE FIRST (*Race*) ON EVERY ZONE WAS MOON-COLOURED (*yellow white*); THE SECOND, YELLOW, LIKE GOLD; THE THIRD, RED; THE FOURTH, BROWN, WHICH BECAME BLACK WITH SIN. THE FIRST SEVEN (*human*) SHOOTS WERE ALL OF ONE COMPLEXION IN THE BEGINNING. THE NEXT (*seven, the sub-races*) BEGAN MIXING THEIR COLOURS.<sup>1</sup>

Śloka 39 relates exclusively to the racial divisions. Strictly speaking, esoteric philosophy teaches a modified polygenesis. For, while it assigns to humanity a oneness of origin, in so far that its forefathers or “Creators” were all divine beings — though of different classes or degrees of perfection in their hierarchy — men were nevertheless born on seven different centres of the continent of that period. Though all of one common origin, yet, for reasons given their potentialities and mental capabilities, outward or physical forms, and future characteristics, were very different.<sup>2</sup> As to their complexions, there is a suggestive allegory told in *Linga-Purāna*. The *Kumāras* — the Rudra gods, so called (*see further*) — are described as incarnations of Śiva, the *destroyer* (of *outward forms*), named also Vāmadeva. The latter, as a *Kumāra*, the “Eternal Celibate,” the chaste Virgin-youth, springs from Brahmā in each great Manvantara, and “again becomes four”; a reference to the *four great divisions* of the human races, as regards complexion and type — and three chief variations of these. Thus in the 29<sup>th</sup> Kalpa — in this case a reference to the transformation and evolution of the human form which Śiva ever destroys and remodels periodically, down to the Manvantaric great turning point about the middle of the Fourth (Atlantean) Race — in the 29<sup>th</sup> Kalpa, Śiva, as Śveta-lohita, the *root-Kumāra*, becomes, from moon-coloured, *white*; in his next transformation — he is *red* (and in this the exoteric version differs from the Esoteric teaching); in the third — *yellow*; in the fourth — *black*.<sup>3</sup>

### Early Third Race men were the Titans of the Secondary Age.

The claim that physical man was originally a colossal pre-tertiary giant, and that he existed 18,000,000 years ago, must of course appear preposterous to admirers of, and believers in, modern learning. The whole *posse comitatus*<sup>4</sup> of biologists will turn away from the conception of this third race Titan of the Secondary age, a being fit to fight as successfully with the then gigantic monsters of the air, sea, and land, as his forefathers — the ethereal prototypes of the Atlantean — had little need to fear that which could not hurt him. The modern anthropologist is quite welcome to laugh at our Titans, as he laughs at the Biblical Adam, and as the theologian laughs at his pithecoïd ancestor. The Occultists and their severe critics may feel that they have pretty well mutually squared their accounts by this time. Occult sciences claim less and give more, at all events, than either Darwinian Anthropology or Biblical Theology.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 227

<sup>2</sup> Some superior, others inferior, to suit the *Karma* of the various reincarnating Monads which could not be all of the same degree of purity in their last births in other worlds. This accounts for the difference of races, the inferiority of the savage, and other human varieties.

<sup>3</sup> *ibid.*, II p. 249

<sup>4</sup> [Power or force of the county, referring to a group of citizens assembled by the authorities to deal with an emergency.]

Nor ought the Esoteric Chronology to frighten any one; for, with regard to figures, the greatest authorities of the day are as fickle and as uncertain as the Mediterranean wave. As regards the duration of the geological periods alone, the learned men of the Royal Society are all hopelessly at sea, and jump from one million to five hundred millions of years with the utmost ease, as will be seen more than once during this comparison.<sup>1</sup>

### **They were the real Sons of God on earth, a Holy Race:**

This race could live with equal ease in water, air, or fire, for it had an unlimited control over the elements. These were the “Sons of God”; not those who saw the daughters of men, but the real *Elōhīm*, though in the Oriental *Kabbalah* they have another name. It was they who imparted Nature’s most weird secrets to men, and revealed to them the ineffable, and now *lost* “word.” This word, which is no word, has travelled once around the globe, and still lingers as a far-off dying echo in the hearts of some privileged men.<sup>2</sup>

### **They were four-armed hermaphrodites with a third eye at the back of the head.**

To the Occultists who believe that spiritual and psychic *involution* proceeds on parallel lines with physical *evolution*; that the *inner* senses — innate in the first human races — atrophied during racial growth and the material development of the outer senses; to the student of Esoteric symbology, finally, this statement is no conjecture or possibility, but simply *a phase of the law of growth, a proven fact* in short. They understand the meaning of this passage in the *Commentaries* which says:

*There were four-armed human creatures in those early days of the male-females [hermaphrodites]; with one head, yet three eyes. They could see before them and behind them.*<sup>3</sup> A KALPA later [after the separation of the sexes] *men having fallen into matter, their spiritual vision became dim; and coördinately the third eye commenced to lose its power. . . . When the Fourth [Race] arrived at its middle age, the inner vision had to be awakened, and acquired by artificial stimuli, the process of which was known to the old sages.*<sup>4</sup> . . . *The third eye, likewise, getting gradually PETRIFIED,*<sup>5</sup> *soon disappeared. The double-faced became the one-faced, and the eye was drawn deep into the head and is now buried under the hair. During the activity of the inner man [during trances and spiritual visions] the eye swells and expands. The Arhat sees and feels it, and regulates*

---

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 8-9

<sup>2</sup> *Isis Unveiled*, I pp. 589-90

<sup>3</sup> *viz.*, the third eye was at the back of the head. The statement that the latest hermaphrodite humanity was “four-armed,” unriddles probably the mystery of all the representations and idols of the exoteric gods of India. On the Acropolis of Argos, there was a *ξόανον*, a rudely carved wooden statue (attributed to Dædalus), representing a three-eyed colossus, which was consecrated to Zeus *Triopios* (three-eyed). The head of the “god” has two eyes in its face and one above on the top of the forehead. It is considered the most archaic of all the ancient statues (*Schol. Vatic. ad Euripides Troades*, 14). [Look up “Zeus Triophthalmos” in our Hellenic and Hellenistic Series. — ED. PHIL.]

<sup>4</sup> The *Inner sight* could henceforth be acquired only through training and initiation, save in the cases of “natural and born magicians,” sensitives and mediums, as they are called now.

<sup>5</sup> This expression “petrified” instead of “ossified” is curious. The “back eye,” which is of course the *pineal gland*, now so-called, the small pea-like mass of grey nervous matter attached to the back of the third ventricle of the brain, is said to almost invariably contain *mineral concretions* and *sand*, and “nothing more.” (*vide infra*)

*his action accordingly. . . . The undefiled Lanoo [disciple, chela] need fear no danger; he who keeps himself not in purity [who is not chaste] will receive no help from the "deva eye."*



Unfortunately not. The "deva-eye"<sup>1</sup> exists no more for the majority of mankind. The *third eye is dead*, and acts no longer; but it has left behind a witness to its existence. This witness is now the PINEAL GLAND. As for the "four-armed" men, it is they who become the prototypes of the four-armed Hindu gods, as shown in a preceding footnote.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> [The "Eye of Dangma" of the Stanzas of Dzyan; Devāksha, in Sanskrit.]

<sup>2</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 294-95



**The transference of the pineal gland, once the “third eye,” to the forehead is by exoteric, artistic licence.**

The allegorical expression of the Hindu mystics when speaking of the “eye of Śiva,” the *Tri-lochana* (“three-eyed”), thus receives its justification and *raison d'être* — the transference of the pineal gland (once that “third eye”) to the forehead, being an exoteric licence. This throws also a light on the mystery — incomprehensible to some — of the connection between *abnormal*, or Spiritual Seership, and the physiological purity of the Seer. The question is often asked, “Why should celibacy and chastity be a *sine qua non* rule and condition of regular *chelaship*, or the development of psychic and occult powers?” The answer is contained in the *Commentary*. When we learn that the “third eye” was once a physiological organ, and that later on, owing to the gradual disappearance of spirituality and increase of materiality (spiritual nature being extinguished by the physical), it became an atrophied organ, as little understood now by physiologists as the spleen is<sup>1</sup> — when we learn this, the connection will become clear. During human life the greatest impediment in the way of spiritual development, and especially to the acquirement of *Yoga* powers, is the activity of our physiological senses. Sexual action being closely connected, by interaction, with the spinal cord and the grey matter of the brain, it is useless to give any longer explanation. Of course, the normal and abnormal state of the brain, and the degree of active work in the *medulla oblongata*, reacts powerfully on the pineal gland, for, owing to the number of “centres” in that region, which control by far the greater majority of the physiological actions of the animal economy, and also owing to the close and intimate neighbourhood of the two, there must be exerted a very powerful “inductive” action by the *medulla* on the pineal gland.<sup>2</sup>

**That Holy Race consisted of men who, at their zenith, were described as “towering giants of godly strength and beauty, and the depositaries of all the mysteries of Heaven and Earth.”**

Let us begin by the mode of reproduction of the later sub-races of the Third human race, by those who found themselves endowed with the *sacred fire* from the spark of higher and then independent Beings, who were the psychic and spiritual parents of Man, as the lower *Pitar-Devatās* (the *Pitris*) were the progenitors of his physical body. That Third and holy Race consisted of men who, at their zenith, were described as, “towering giants of godly strength and beauty, and the depositaries of all the myster-

---

<sup>1</sup> [Seat of the astral body or *Linga-Śarīra* and physical vehicle of the “Astral Light,” the Protean Double. Cf. “During incarnation the germ, or life essence, of the *Linga-Śarīra*, is, as said, in the Spleen; the *Chhāyā* lies curled up therein. And now let the student escape from much confusion by distinguishing between the various Astral Bodies and the true Astral. The Astral, *par excellence*, the Second Principle in Man, corresponding to the Second Principle in Cosmos, is the progeny of the *Chhāyā* of the Lunar *Pitris* and the Auric Essence that absorbed it. (See p. 608.) This is the moulder of the infant’s Body, the model spoken of above. This has for its physical organ the Spleen, and during incarnation has its seat there. It affords the basis for *all* Astral Bodies, for the *Linga-Śarīra* proper, and the *Māyāvi-Rūpas* used as vehicles for different Principles. Let us then now call it the *Chhāyā*, in view of its origin. When an Astral Body is to be formed, the *Chhāyā* evolves a shadowy, curling or gyrating essence like smoke, which gradually takes form as it emerges. In order that this essence may become visible, the *Chhāyā* draws on the surrounding atmosphere, attracting to itself certain minute particles floating therein, and so the *Linga-Śarīra*, or other Astral vehicle is formed outside the physical Body. This process has often been observed at spiritualistic séances, at which materialization has occurred. An Esotericist has seen the *Chhāyā* emerging from Eglinton’s [see *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, III pp. 503-5] left side, and forming in the way here described.” *ibid.*, (E.S. INSTRUCTION No. V) XII p. 705]

<sup>2</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 295-96

ies of Heaven and Earth.” Have they likewise *fallen*, if, then, incarnation was the *Fall*?<sup>1</sup>

**They lived in Hedone-Eden, the Paradesha of the first Sanskrit-speaking people.**<sup>2</sup>

What is the etymological meaning of the word *Eden*? In Greek it is *ἡδονή*, signifying *voluptuousness*. In this aspect it is no better than the Olympus of the Greeks, Indra's heaven (Svarga) on Mount Meru, and even the paradise full of *Houris*, promised by Mahomet to the faithful. The Garden of Eden was never the property of the Jews; for China, which can hardly be suspected of having known anything of the Jews 2,000 B.C., has such a primitive garden in Central Asia inhabited by the “Dragons of Wisdom,” the Initiates. And according to Klaproth, the hieroglyphical chart copied from a Japanese Cyclopædia in the book of *Fo-koue-ky*, places its “Garden of Wisdom” on the plateau of Pamir between the highest peaks of the Himālayan ranges; and describing it as the culminating point of Central Asia, shows the four rivers — Oxus, Indus, Ganges, and Silo — flowing from a common source, the “*Lake of the Dragons*.”

But this is not the Eden of *Genesis*; nor is it the Kabbalistic Garden of Eden. For the former — *Eden Īlā-āh* — means in one sense Wisdom, a state like that of Nirvāna, a paradise of Bliss; while in another sense it refers to Intellectual man himself, the container of the Eden in which grows the tree of Knowledge of good and evil: man being the *Knower* thereof. . . .

[Eden] was the abode of the “Sons of Wisdom,” the first mind-born sons of the Third Race. Yet it was neither the only one nor the primitive cradle of humanity, though it was the copy of the cradle, verily, of the first thinking *divine* man. It was the *Paradesha*, the highland of the first Sanskrit-speaking people, the *Hēdonē*, the country of delight of the Greeks, but it was not the “*bower* of voluptuousness” of the Chaldeans, for the latter was only the reminiscence of it; and also because it was not there that the *Fall of Man* occurred after the “separation.” The Eden of the Jews was *copied* from the Chaldean *copy*.<sup>3</sup>

**Today, the only pure and direct descendants of the Third Race are the “fallen” and degenerated Australians, whose far-distant ancestors belonged to its seventh subrace.**

The present yellow races are the descendants, however, of the early branches of the Fourth Race. Of the third, the only *pure and direct* descendants are, as said above, a portion of the fallen and degenerated Australians, whose far-distant ancestors belonged to a division of the seventh Sub-race of the Third. The rest are of mixed Lemuro-Atlantean descent. They have since then entirely changed in stature and intellectual capacities.<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 171-72

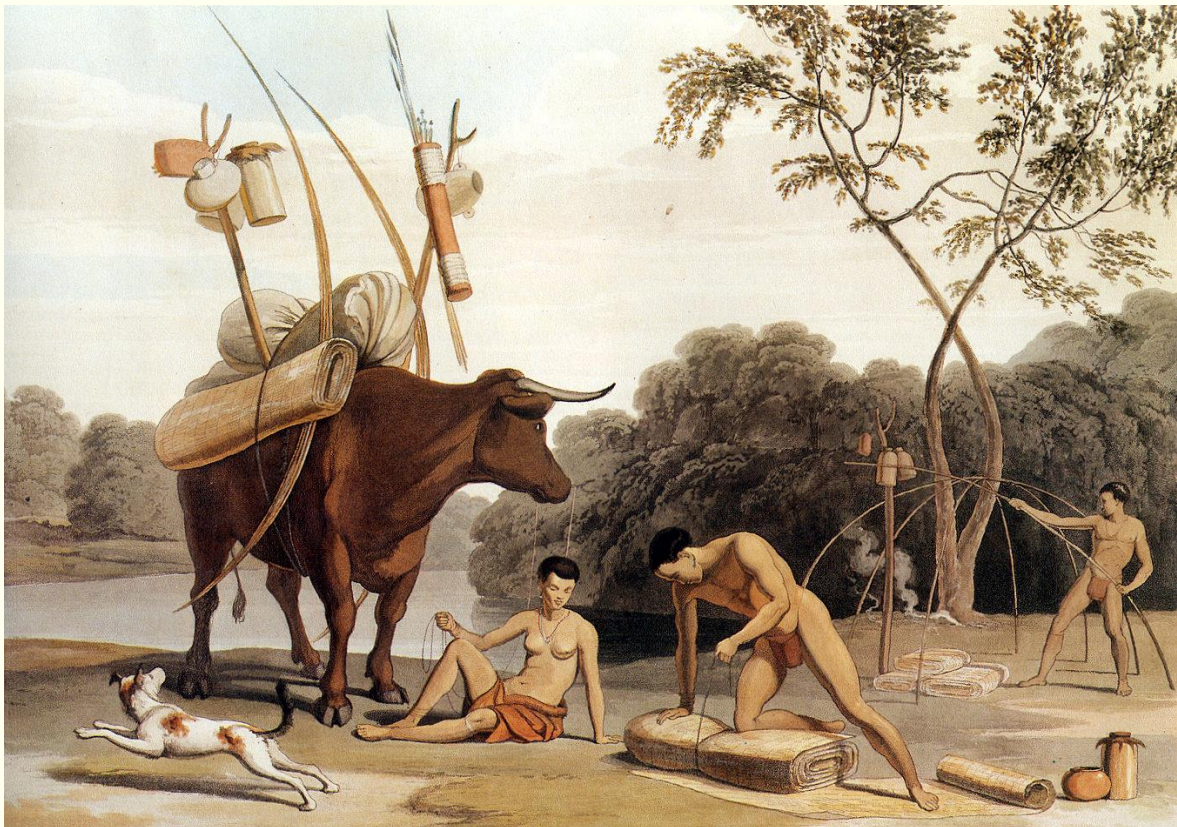
<sup>2</sup> [However, “Sanskrit, as now known, was not spoken by the Atlanteans, and most of the philosophical terms used in the systems of the India of the post-Mahābhāratan period are not found in the *Vedas*, nor are they to be met with in the original Stanzas [of Dzyan], but only their equivalents.” *Secret Doctrine*, I p. 23]

<sup>3</sup> *ibid.*, II pp. 203-4

<sup>4</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 199 *fn.*

**Like the Khoikhoi of South-western Africa, the Malays and Papuans are mixed stock, resulting from the intermarriages of low Atlantean subraces with the seventh subrace of the Third Root-Race. Thus they are of indirect Lemuro-Atlantean descent.**

The Malays and Papuans are a *mixed* stock, resulting from the intermarriages of the low Atlantean sub-races with the Seventh sub-race of the Third Root-Race. Like the Hottentots,<sup>1</sup> they are of indirect *Lemuro-Atlantean* descent. It is a most suggestive fact — to those concrete thinkers who demand a *physical* proof of Karma — that the lowest races of men are now rapidly dying out; a phenomenon largely due to an extraordinary sterility setting in among the women, from the time that they were first approached by the Europeans. A process of decimation is taking place all over the globe, among those races, whose “time is up” — among just those stocks, be it remarked, which esoteric philosophy regards as the senile representatives of lost archaic nations. It is inaccurate to maintain that the extinction of a lower race is *invariably* due to cruelties or abuses perpetrated by colonists. Change of diet, drunkenness, etc., etc., have done much; but those who rely on such data as offering an all-sufficient explanation of the crux, cannot meet the phalanx of facts now so closely arrayed.<sup>2</sup>



Korah-Khoikhoi dismantling their huts, preparing to move to new pastures (1805) Samuel Daniell

<sup>1</sup> [See <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Khoikhoi>]

<sup>2</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 779-80

## Holy procreation about to turn into animal gratification, celestial fire into terrestrial.

**The generative force, spiritual at the beginning, turned material on the physical plane. Our present mode of procreation began towards the end of the third Root-Race.**

Daksha [is] a form of Brahmā, and his son in the *Purānas*. But the *Rig Veda* states that “Daksha sprang from Aditi, and Aditi from Daksha,” which proves him to be a personified correlating Creative Force acting on *all the planes*. The Orientalists seem very much perplexed what to make of him; but Roth is nearer the truth than any, when saying that Daksha is the spiritual power, and at the same time the male energy that generates the gods in eternity, which is represented by Aditi. The *Purānas* as a matter of course, anthropomorphize the idea, and show Daksha instituting “sexual intercourse on this earth,” after trying every other means of procreation. The generative Force, spiritual at the commencement, becomes of course at the most material end of its evolution a procreative Force on the physical plane; and so far the Purānic allegory is correct, as the Secret Science teaches that our present mode of procreation began towards the end of the third Root-Race.<sup>1</sup>

**The followers of the Lesser Mysteries were allowed to perceive things only through a mist, as it were, “with eyes closed.” But the Initiates or Seers of the Greater Mysteries, “those who see things unveiled,” were taught the true Mysteries of the Zodiac, and the relations and correspondences between its twelve constellations and the ten orifices of the human body.<sup>2</sup>**

Each of our seven physical senses (two of which are still unknown to profane science), and also our seven states of consciousness — *viz*:

- 1 Waking;
- 2 Waking-dreaming;
- 3 Natural sleeping;
- 4 Induced or trance sleep;
- 5 Psychic;
- 6 Super-psychic; and
- 7 Purely spiritual — corresponds with one of the seven cosmic planes, develops and uses one of the seven super-senses, and is connected directly, in its use on the terrestro-spiritual plane, with the cosmic and divine centre of force that gave it birth, and which is its direct creator.

Each is also connected with, and under the direct influence of, one of the seven Sacred Planets.<sup>3</sup> These belonged to the Lesser Mysteries, whose followers were called *Mystai* [*μυσται*] (the veiled), seeing that they were allowed to perceive things only

---

<sup>1</sup> *Theosophical Glossary*: Daksha

<sup>2</sup> [Consult Hieronymus von Mansfeld (*Comp. & Ed.*). *The True Colours of Man*, Gwernymynydd: Philaletheians UK, 2015; v. 17.15.2022; 92pp. This is our fifth Major Work. — ED. PHIL.]

<sup>3</sup> See *Secret Doctrine*, I pp. 572-74.

through a mist, as it were “with the eyes closed”; while the Initiates or “Seers” of the Greater Mysteries were called Eoptai [επόπται] (those who see things unveiled).<sup>1</sup> It was the latter only who were taught the true Mysteries of the Zodiac and the relations and correspondences between its twelve signs (two secret) and the ten human orifices.

**The difference in the number of orifices between man and woman is merely exoteric.**

The latter are now of course ten in the female, and only nine in the male; but this is merely an external difference. In the second volume of *The Secret Doctrine* it is stated that till the end of the Third Root-Race (when androgynous man separated into male and female) the ten orifices existed in the hermaphrodite, first potentially, then functionally. The evolution of the human embryo shows this. For instance, the only opening formed at first is the buccal cavity, “a *cloaca* communicating with the anterior extremity of the intestine.” This becomes later the mouth and the posterior orifice: the Logos differentiating and emanating gross matter on the lower plane, in occult parlance.

**The connection between Zodiac and orifices stems from the power of mental procreation that was coeval with the Third Race.**

The difficulty which some students will experience in reconciling the correspondences between the Zodiac and the orifices can be easily explained. Magic is coëval with the Third Root-Race, which began by creating through Kriyāśakti and ended by generating its species in the present way.<sup>2</sup> Woman being left with the full or perfect cosmic number 10 (the divine number of Jehovah), was deemed higher and more spiritual than man. In Egypt, in days of old, the marriage service contained an article that the woman should be the “lady of the lord,” and real lord over him, the husband pledging himself to be “obedient to his wife” for the production of alchemical results such as the elixir of life and the philosopher’s stone, for the *spiritual* help of the woman was needed by the male alchemist. But woe to the alchemist who should take this in the dead-letter sense of *physical* union. Such sacrilege would become black magic and be followed by certain failure. The true alchemist of old took *aged* women to help him, carefully avoiding the young ones; and if any of them happened to be married they treated their wives for months both before and during *operations* as sisters.<sup>3</sup>

Even in the evolution of the Races we see the same order as in nature and man.<sup>4</sup> Placental animal man became such only after the separation of sexes in the Third Root-Race. In the physiological evolution, the placenta is fully formed and functional only after the third month of uterine life.<sup>5</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> [See the excerpt on the senses and gunas from G. de Purucker’s *Fountain-Source of Occultism*, pp. 240-43, appended at the end of the present Instruction. — Boris de Zirkoff.]

<sup>2</sup> See *The Secret Doctrine*, Vol. II, pp. 456, 461, 465.

<sup>3</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (E.S. INSTRUCTION No. I) XII pp. 532-33

<sup>4</sup> All the uterine contents, having a direct spiritual connection with their cosmic antetypes, are on the physical plane potent objects in Black Magic — therefore considered unclean.

<sup>5</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (E.S. INSTRUCTION No. I) XII p. 524

**The third and last semi-spiritual, sexless race was also the last vehicle of the divine, innate Wisdom of its Enochs and Seers. The union of Wisdom and Intelligence, the former ruling the latter, is called in the Hermetic texts “the God possessing the double fecundity of the two sexes.”**

What say the old sages, the philosopher-teachers of antiquity. Aristophanes speaks thus on the subject in Plato's *Banquet*:<sup>1</sup>

Our nature of old was not the same as it is now. It was *androgynous*, the form and name partaking of, and being common to both the male and female. . . . Their bodies were round, and the manner of their running circular.<sup>2</sup> They were terrible in force and strength and had prodigious ambition. Hence Zeus *divided each of them into two*, making them weaker; Apollo, under his direction, closed up the skin.

Meshia and Meshiane were but a single individual with the old Persians.

They also taught that man was the product of the Tree of Life, growing in androgynous pairs, till they were separated at a subsequent modification of the human form.<sup>3</sup>

In the Book of the Generations (*Tōledōth*) of Adam, the verse “God created (*bārā*, brought forth) man in his image, in the image of God created he him, male and female created he them,” if read esoterically will yield the true sense, viz.: “The *Elōhīm* [Gods] brought forth from themselves [by modification] man in their image . . . created they *him* [collective humanity, or *Adam*], male and female created *he* [collective Deity] them.”<sup>4</sup>

**The mystery of inactive and active, separating and separated androgynes will now be explained.**

This will show the esoteric point. The *sexless* Race was their first production, a modification *of* and *from* themselves, the pure spiritual existences; and this was Adam *solus*. Thence came the *second* Race: Adam-Eve or Yōd-Havāh, inactive androgynes; and finally the *Third*, or the “*Separating* Hermaphrodite,” Cain and Abel, who produce the Fourth, Seth-Enos, etc. It is that Third, the last semi-spiritual *race*, which was also the last vehicle of the divine and innate Wisdom, ingenerate in the Enochs, the Seers of that Mankind. The *Fourth*, which had tasted from the fruit of the Tree of Good and Evil — Wisdom united already to earthy, and therefore *impure*,

---

<sup>1</sup> 189-90

<sup>2</sup> Compare Ezekiel's vision (ch. i) of the four divine beings who “had the likeness of a man” and yet had the appearance of a wheel, “when they went, they went upon their four sides . . . for the spirit of the living creature was in the wheel.” [Drawing from the same Series herein presented on page 57 below. — ED. PHIL.]

<sup>3</sup> See Dr. Wilder's Essay: *The Primeval Race Double-Sexed*.

<sup>4</sup> Eugibinus, a Christian, and the Rabbis Samuel, Manasseh ben Israel, and Maimonides taught that “Adam had *two* faces and *one* person, and from the beginning he was both male and female — male on one side and female on the other [like Manu's Brahmā], but afterwards the parts were separated.” The one hundred and thirty-ninth Psalm of David recited by Rabbi Jeremiah ben Eleāzār is evidence of this. “Thou hast *fashioned* me behind and before,” not *beset* as in the Bible (verse 5), which is absurd and meaningless, and this shows, as Dr. Wilder thinks, “that the primeval form of mankind was androgynous.”

intelligence<sup>1</sup> — had consequently to acquire that Wisdom by initiation and great struggle. And the union of Wisdom and Intelligence, the former *ruling* the latter, is called in the Hermetic books “the God possessing the double fecundity of the two sexes.” Mystically Jesus was held to be man-woman. See also in the *Orphic hymns*, sung during the Mysteries, we find: “Zeus is a male, Zeus is an immortal maid.”<sup>2</sup> The Egyptian Ammon was the goddess Neith, in his other half. Jupiter has female breasts, Venus is bearded in some of her statues, and Ilā, the goddess, is also Sudyumna, the god, as Vaivasvata’s progeny.

The name *Adam*, [says Professor A. Wilder] or man, itself implies this double form of existence. It is identical with *Athamas*, or *Thomas* (Tamil, *Tam*), which is rendered by the Greek *Didymos*, a twin; if, therefore, the first woman was formed subsequently to the first man, she must, as a logical necessity, be “taken out of man” . . . and the *side* which the *Elōhīm* had taken from man, “made he a woman” [*Genesis* ii]. The Hebrew word here used is *tzala*, which bears the translation we have given. It is easy to trace the legend in Berosus, who says that *Thalath* (the *Omoroka*, or Lady of Urka) was the beginning of creation. She was also Telita, the queen of the Moon. . . . The two memorable twin births of *Genesis*, that of Cain and Abel, and of Esau and Jacob, shadow the same idea. *The name Hebel is the same as Eve*, and his characteristics seems to be feminine. “Unto thee shall be his desire,” said the Lord God to Cain, “and thou shalt rule over him.” [*Gen.* iv, 7] The same language had been uttered to Eve. “Thy desire shall be to thy husband, and he shall rule over thee.”<sup>3</sup>

Thus the pristine bi-sexual unity of the human *Third* Root-Race is an axiom in the Secret Doctrine. Its virgin individuals were raised to “Gods,” because that Race represented their “divine Dynasty.” The moderns are satisfied with worshipping the male heroes of the Fourth Race, who created gods after their own sexual image, whereas the gods of primeval mankind were “male and female.”<sup>4</sup>

**Third Race men began separating in their prenatal shells or eggs, and issuing out of them as distinct male and female babies.**

Almost sexless, in its early beginnings, [Humanity’s Third Race] became bisexual or androgynous; very gradually of course. The passage from the former to the latter transformation required numberless generations, during which the simple cell that issued from the earliest parent (the two in one), first developed into a bisexual being; and then the cell, becoming a regular egg, gave forth a unisexual creature. The Third-Race-mankind is the most mysterious of all the hitherto developed five Races. The mystery of the “How” of the generation of the distinct sexes must, of course, be very obscure here, as it is the business of an embryologist and a specialist, the present work giving only faint outlines of the process. But it is evident that the units of

---

<sup>1</sup> See the union of *Hokhmāh*, Wisdom, with *Bināh*, Intelligence, or Jehovah, the *Demiurge*, called *Understanding* in the *Proverbs* viii, 5. Unto men *Wisdom* (divine occult Wisdom) crieth: “Oh, ye simple, understand Wisdom; and ye fools, be ye of an *understanding heart*.” It is *spirit* and *matter*, the *nous* and the *psychē*; of the latter of which *James* (iii, 15) says that it is “earthly, sensual, devilish.”

<sup>2</sup> Cory, *Ancient Fragments*, 1832, p. 290; Aristotle, *De mundo* (*Peri kosmou*), 7, 1-4

<sup>3</sup> Wilder, *op. cit.*

<sup>4</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 133-35

the Third Race humanity began to separate in their prenatal shells, or eggs,<sup>1</sup> and to issue out of them as distinct male and female babes, ages after the appearance of its early progenitors. And, as time rolled on its geological periods, the newly born sub-races began to lose their natal capacities. Toward the end of the fourth *sub-race*, the babe lost its faculty of walking as soon as liberated from its shell, and by the end of the fifth, mankind was born under the same conditions and by the same identical process as our historical generations. This required, of course, millions of years.<sup>2</sup>



Leda and the Swan by Leonardo da Vinci, Wilton House, Salisbury, England

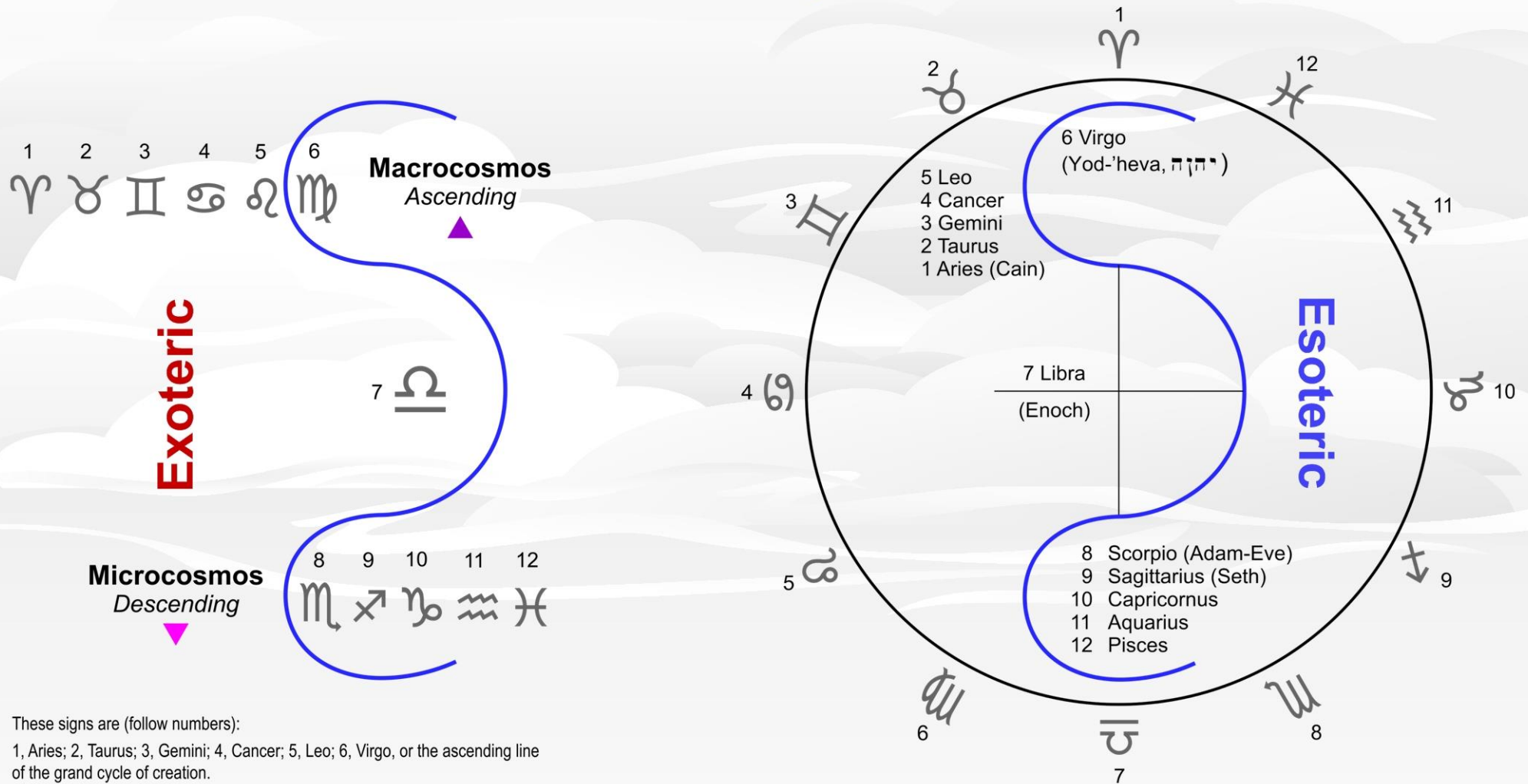
---

<sup>1</sup> The “fables” and “myths” about Lēda and Jupiter, and such like, could never have sprung up in people’s fancy, had not the allegory rested on a fact in nature. Evolution, gradually transforming man into a mammal, did in his case only what it did in that of other animals. But this does not prevent man from having always stood at the head of the animal world and other organic species, and from having preceded the former. [Look up “Bestride the Bird of Life,” in our Secret Doctrine’s First Proposition Series. — ED. PHIL.]

<sup>2</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 197



# The Wheel of Ezekiel



These signs are (follow numbers):

1, Aries; 2, Taurus; 3, Gemini; 4, Cancer; 5, Leo; 6, Virgo, or the ascending line of the grand cycle of creation.

After this comes 7, Libra — "man," which, though it is found right in the middle, or the intersection point, leads down the numbers:

8, Scorpio; 9, Sagittarius; 10, Capricornus; 11, Aquarius; and 12, Pisces.

Integrative Theosophical Studies  
**After Isis Unveiled, Vol. II, pp. 460-64**  
 Revision 18.10 presented 30 November 2018  
[www.philaletheians.co.uk](http://www.philaletheians.co.uk)



## Separation of the sexes begun.

**The primitive rite of covenanting by inter-transfusion of blood began in the Third Race, in commemoration of the separation of the sexes, and was firmly established in the Fourth.**

The arcane doctrine teaches that the “blood” rites are as old as the Third Root-Race, being established in their final form by the Fourth Parent race in commemoration of the separation of androgynous mankind, their forefathers, into males and females. G. Massey is a strict scholar, who holds only to that which is made evident to him, and ignores the Occultistic division of mankind into Races, and the fact that we are in our Fifth Root-Race, and would, of course, refuse to carry mankind back into *pre-Tertiary* times. Yet his researches and the fruit of his life-labour, corroborate, by their numberless new facts revealed by him, most wonderfully, the teachings of the “Secret Doctrines.”

The Theosophists are reminded that the “seven souls” are what we call the “seven principles” in man. “Blood” is the *principle* of the Body, the lowest in our septenary, as the highest is “Ātma,” which may well be symbolized by the Sun; Ātma being the light and life in man, as the physical sun is the light and life of our solar system.<sup>1</sup>

**The first man and woman, the biblical Enoch, appeared in the fifth sub-race of the Third Root-Race.**

Though we apply the term “*truly human*,” only to the Fourth Atlantean Root-Race, yet the Third Race is almost human in its latest portion, since it is during its fifth sub-race that mankind *separated* sexually, and that the *first man was born* according to the now normal process. This “first man” answers in the Bible to Enos or Henoch, son of Seth (*Genesis iv*).<sup>2</sup>



Variant of Leda and the Swan (detail)

<sup>1</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (FOOTNOTES TO “BLOOD-COVENANTING”) VIII p. 251-52

<sup>2</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 715 *fn*.

## Fourth Root-Race: The Atlantean

### Synoptic overview.

The Fourth Root-Race has been the subject of a monograph, *Rise and Demise of Atlantis*, first published in 2006 as part of our Integrative Theosophical Studies Online Series 4 on Anthropogenesis. It can be found in our Major Works and in [Google Books](#). The subject matter is further amplified and supplemented in our Atlantean Realities Series. There now follows an abstract from that monograph.

Atlantis was a global configuration of islands covering of what is now the mid-Atlantic Ocean, as well as portions of the Pacific, and had islands even in the Indian Ocean. Europe and America were connected by a land passage, of which Iceland, Madeira, and the other Atlantic islands are remnants.

Atlantis and its illustrious "Fourth Race" inhabitants sunk 856,000 years ago, coinciding with the elevation of the Alps.

Titans and Cyclopes of old belonged to the Atlantean Race. Progressively, the human frame consolidated and symmetrised. Two front eyes developed but the "seers" sinned and lost the third. After the separation of the sexes, Karma forced the creative gods to incarnate in mindless men. Then, sight and speech developed, for, language is coeval with reason. Humanity had passed the middle point in the Great Cycle. The door for further monads entering the human kingdom closed and the balance struck. Many of us are now working off the effects of the evil karmic causes produced by us in Atlantean bodies.

Prometheus is the pre-eminent Atlantean hero and philanthropist. He bestowed to animal man divine mind. But the gift was abused and became a curse. The mystery of the Fourth Race "falling" into matter explained: Angels fell but not Man. Eminent Atlanteans are still kindling the Promethean fire. Zoroaster, Ulysses, Noah, Kabeiroi, Telchines, and other heroic figures are none other than mankind's divine instructors and true benefactors.

Atlantis was a land of beautiful and strong giants. Their initiates commemorated images of the five Races in stone for the instruction of future generations. Though perfected in materiality, they degenerated in spirituality. Black magic, bestiality, selfishness, and self-adoration spelled the demise of that proud race.



## Pivotal attributes of the first four Root-Races.

Race	Watcher	Procreation	Appearance	Cognition	Speech	Demise	Parallels
1. Shadows (Chhayas), Astral Sons of Yoga, Self-existent and Self-born. (Adam 2 of Genesis. Adam 1 is Kadmon, Heavenly Man or Second Logos.)	Watched by the Sun, Lunar Ancestors (Pitris), or Lords of the Moon, gave their body.		Ethereal, "moon-coloured," phantom-like. Neither type nor colour, and hardly an objective, though colossal form.	Unintelligent, mindless (amanasa), i.e., mind not yet awakened.	Speechless, because mindless.	Neither flood nor fire could destroy them. They disappeared in the second race without either begetting it, procreating it, or dying.	Ātma / Hearing / Aether (Inner or noetic hearing dwarfed to outer, or mere physical, in the early Fifth Race.)
2.1 Early Second, Fathers of the Sweat-born.	Watched by Brihaspati-Jupiter.	Sexless (devoid of sex, i.e., latent hermaphrodites), by fission.	Boneless giants, i.e., soft-boned semi-human monsters.	Weak spark of intelligence.	Chant-like vowel sounds.	But their "Sons," the Second Root-Race, could be, and were so, destroyed.	Buddhi / Touch / Air (The "odd" eye was the only seeing organ.)
2.2 Late Second, Sweat-born race begins.		Asexual (no distinct sex, i.e., inactive hermaphrodites), by budding.					
3.1 Early Lemurian, Sweat-born race continues. Sons of Passive Yoga produced unconsciously by the Second Race. (Adam and Eve.)	Watched by Sukra-Venus.	Still asexual, amoeba-like, by exudation of vital fluid, the drops of which coalesced to form an oviform ball, nourished from without.	One-eyed (i.e., organ of objective sight. Not the third eye of Fourth Race Initiates, the "Sons of Cycles" or Cyclopes, which is the reverse.)	Still mindless, hence sinless.	Slight improvement on the sounds of Nature, on the cry of gigantic insects, and of the first animals that, however, were hardly nascent.	Second sub-race of First Race came to an end in the second sub-race of the Third.	
3.2 Middle Lemurian, Egg-born androgynous.		Bisexual (partaking of the attributes of both sexes, i.e., separating hermaphrodites), nourished from within.	Three-eyed, four-armed, with light yellow-gold complexes. Bones solidified.	Awakening intelligence. Lowest point in the arc of descent reached. Axle of the wheel tilted.	Speech was no better than a tentative effort. Communicated by thought-transference.	First Root-Race came to an end altogether. For, men had lost their balance.	
3.3 Late Lemurian, Womb-born race of men and women begins.	Solar Ancestors (Pitris), or Sons of Mind (Manasaputras), gave their mind.	Separation of sexes begun in the fifth sub-race, foreshadowing the "fall" of Spirit.	Stature begins decreasing. Twin physical eyes now prominent.	Intelligence about to be succumbed to temptations of personal desires (Kama).	Monosyllabic speech of vowel pattern mixed with hard consonants.		Higher Manas / Sight / Fire (i.e., light. Third eye became a gland.)
4. Atlantean, Womb-born race continues. (Adam 3 of Genesis.)	Watched by Soma-Moon.	Separation of sexes completed and thus creation of the first human species accomplished, but at a high cost: "The whole creation groans and suffers the pains of childbirth." (Romans viii, 22)	Two-eyed, two-armed, red-yellow at first, larger in size than now, with body symmetry peaking in the middle of the race; brown-white, later. Together with the yellow races, they form the bulk of present-day humanity.	Intelligence fully awakened. Acquired knowledge of good and evil. At the middle point of the race, karmic balance was struck. No more animal monads can now enter the human kingdom.	Agglutinative languages developed, followed by inflectional speech, root of Sanskrit and first true language; now the mystery tongue of Fifth Race Initiates.	Black magic, bestiality, and self-adoration spelled the demise of that proud race by rising waves. "They perished to the last man, the soil sinking under their feet and the earth engulfing those who had desecrated her." (Comm.)	Lower Manas / Taste / Water. (Twin eyes, organs of objective sight, now fully developed. Third eye continues functioning till nearly the end of the race.)

## Fifth Root-Race: The Aryan

**Divine Kings incarnated on earth to teach nascent humanity.**

**The Atlanteans were the first purely human, earthly race; Aryans, are the second.**

The Atlanteans . . . belonged to the Fourth, while the Āryans and their Semitic Branch are of the Fifth Race. Plato, while repeating the story as narrated to Solon by the priests of Egypt, intentionally confuses (as every *Initiate* would) the two continents, and assigns to the small island which sunk last all the events pertaining to the two enormous continents, the prehistoric and traditional. Therefore, he describes the *first couple*, from whom the whole island was peopled, as being formed of the Earth. In saying so, he means neither Adam and Eve, nor yet his own Hellenic forefathers. His language is simply allegorical, and by alluding to “Earth,” he means “matter,” as the Atlanteans were really the first purely *human* and *terrestrial* race — those that preceded it being more divine and ethereal than human and solid.<sup>1</sup>

**“Two nations are in thy womb,” saith the Lord to Rebekah.**

By the law of analogy and permutation, in the *Chaldean Book of Numbers*, as also in the “Books of Knowledge” and of “Wisdom,” the “seven primordial worlds” mean also the “seven primordial” races (sub-races of the First Root-Race of the *Shadows*); and, again, the Kings of Edōm are the sons of “Esau the father of the Edōmites,”<sup>2</sup> *i.e.*, Esau represents in the Bible the race which stands between the Fourth and the Fifth, the Atlantean and the Āryan. “Two *nations* are in thy womb,” saith the Lord to Rebekah; and Esau was *red* and *hairy*. From verse 24 to 34, ch. xxv of *Genesis* contains the allegorical history of the birth of the Fifth Race.<sup>3</sup>

**The wise leaders of our race lived their lives in learning, not teaching.**

[The Secret Doctrine] is the uninterrupted record covering thousands of generations of Seers whose respective experiences were made to test and to verify the traditions passed orally by one early race to another, of the teachings of higher and exalted beings, who watched over the childhood of Humanity. That for long ages, the “Wise Men” of the Fifth Race, of the stock saved and rescued from the last cataclysm and shifting of continents, had passed their lives *in learning, not teaching*. How did they do so? It is answered: by checking, testing, and verifying in every department of na-

---

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 266

<sup>2</sup> *Genesis* xxxvi, 43

<sup>3</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 705; [on the destruction of the worlds in the *Zohar* and Kabbalistic treatises.]

ture the traditions of old by the independent visions of great adepts; *i.e.*, men who have developed and perfected their physical, mental, psychic, and spiritual organisations to the utmost possible degree. No vision of one adept was accepted till it was checked and confirmed by the visions — so obtained as to stand as independent evidence — of other adepts, and by centuries of experiences.<sup>1</sup>

**What they knew, they passed on in solemn silence and secrecy to the elect.**

It was a common claim of all the ancient nations that the real mysteries of what is called so unphilosophically, *creation*, were divulged to the elect of our (fifth) race by its first dynasties of *divine* Rulers — gods in flesh, “divine incarnations,” or *Avatars*, so called. The last Stanzas, given from the *Book of Dzyan* in *The Secret Doctrine* (Vol. II, p. 21), speak of those who ruled over the descendants . . . produced from the Holy stock,” and . . . Who redescended, who made peace with the fifth [race], who taught and instructed it . . . ”<sup>2</sup>

**They are the Sons of the Fire, the King-Instructors who incarnated here on earth to teach nascent Humanity.**

The “Rays” [of Third Logos] are the “Sons of the Fire-mist,” produced by the *Third Creation*, or Logos. The actual “Sons of the Fire” of the Fifth Race and Sub-races are so called simply because they by their wisdom belong, or are nearer to, the hierarchy of the divine “Sons of the Fire-Mist,” the highest of the planetary Chohans or Angels. But the Sons of the Fire here spoken of as addressing the Sons of the Earth are, in this case, the King-Instructors who incarnated on this earth to teach nascent Humanity. As “Kings” they belong to the divine dynasties of which every nation, India, Chaldea, Egypt, Homeric Greece, etc., has preserved a tradition or record in some form or other. The name “Sons of the Fire-Mist” was also given to the Hierophants of old. They are certainly sub-divisions of the Third Logos. They are the Fire-Chohans or Angels, the Ether Angels, the Air and Water Angels, and the Angels of the Earth. The seven lower Sēphirōth are the earthly angels and correspond to the seven hierarchies of the seven elements, five of which are known, and two unknown.<sup>3</sup>

**They are led by Gautama Shakyamuni, called the Fourth and Fifth Buddha because during the Fourth Round He presides over the Fifth Root-Race.**

Our present period is a Bhadra Kalpa [Kalpa of the Sages], and the exoteric teaching makes it last 236 million years. It is “so called because 1,000 Buddhas or sages appear in the course of it.” (*Sanskrit-Chinese Dict.*) “Four Buddhas have already appeared” it adds; but as out of the 236 million, over 151 million years have already elapsed, it does seem a rather uneven distribution of Buddhas. This is the way exoteric or popular religions confuse everything. Esoteric philosophy teaches us that every Root-Race has its chief Buddha or Reformer, who appears also in the seven sub-races as a Bodhisattva (*q.v.*). Gautama Śākyamuni was the fourth, and also the

---

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, I pp. 272-73

<sup>2</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (THE ROOTS OF RITUALISM – VII) XI p. 85

<sup>3</sup> *ibid.*, (TRANSACTIONS OF THE BLAVATSKY LODGE – X) X pp. 394-95; [on whether the Sons of the Fire are Rays of the Third Logos.]

fifth Buddha: the fifth, because we are the fifth root-race; the fourth, as the chief Buddha in this *fourth* Round. The Bhadra Kalpa, or the “period of stability,” is the name of our present Round, esoterically — its duration applying, of course, only to our globe (D), the “1,000” Buddhas being thus in reality limited to but forty-nine in all.<sup>1</sup>

### **He is Samanta Bhadra, a Universal Sage.**

The name of one of the four *Bodhisattvas* of the Yogāchāra School, of the Mahāyāna (the Great Vehicle) of Wisdom of that system. There are four terrestrial and three celestial Bodhisattvas: the first four only act in the present races, but in the middle of the fifth Root-race appeared the fifth Bodhisattva, who, according to an esoteric legend, was Gautama Buddha, but who, having appeared too early, had to disappear bodily from the world for a while.<sup>2</sup>

**In Hindu Occultism, divine consciousness and its human reflections on earth are symbolised by Vaivasvata Manu who is in charge of our present Fourth Round, the Indian Noah and progenitor of the thinking men of the present Fifth Race, one of forty-nine that emanated from the Root-Manu.<sup>3</sup>**

Our *Manas*, or Ego, proceeds from, and is the Son (figuratively) of Mahat. Vaivasvata Manu (the Manu of our own fifth race and Humanity in general) is the chief personified representative of the *thinking* Humanity of the fifth Root-race; and therefore he is represented as the eldest Son of the Sun and an *Agnishvāta* Ancestor. As “*Manu*” is derived from *Man*, to think, the idea is clear. Thought in its action on human brains is endless. Thus Manu is, and contains the potentiality of all the thinking forms which will be developed on earth from this particular source. In the exoteric teaching he is the beginning of this earth, and from him and his daughter Ilā humanity is born; he is a unity which contains all the pluralities and their modifications. Every Manvantara has thus its own Manu and from this Manu the various Manus or rather all the *Mānasa* of the Kalpas will proceed. As an analogy he may be compared to the white light which contains all the other rays, giving birth to them by passing through the prism of differentiation and evolution. But this pertains to the esoteric and metaphysical teachings.<sup>4</sup>



<sup>1</sup> *Theosophical Glossary*: Bhadrakalpa

<sup>2</sup> *ibid.*, Samanta Bhadra; [cf. Vairochana, “the best translator of the semi-esoteric Canon of Northern Buddhism, and a contemporary of the great Samantabhadra.” *ibid.*]

<sup>3</sup> Cf. “. . . whereas the Hindu *Purānas* speak of one Vaivasvata Manu, we affirm that there were several, the name being a generic one.” *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 251

<sup>4</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (TRANSACTIONS OF THE BLAVATSKY LODGE – VI) X pp. 363-64; [on whether Manu is a unity also of human consciousness personified, or an individualization of the Thought Divine for manvantaric purposes.]

## Humanity has now come of age.

### Our Fifth Root-Race begun its existence 1,000,000 years ago.

Now our Fifth Root-Race has already been in existence — as a race *sui generis* and quite free from its parent stem — about 1,000,000 years; therefore it must be inferred that each of the four preceding Sub-Races has lived approximately 210,000 years; thus each Family-Race has an average existence of about 30,000 years. Thus the European “Family Race” has still a good many thousand years to run,<sup>1</sup> although the nations or the innumerable spines<sup>2</sup> upon it, vary with each succeeding “season” of three or four thousand years. It is somewhat curious to mark the comparative approximation of duration between the lives of a “Family-Race” and a “Sidereal year.”<sup>3</sup>

### The Great Cataclysm that sunk the Fourth Continent beneath the floor of what is now the Atlantic Ocean took place 200,000 after the dawn of our race.

The *semi*-universal deluge<sup>4</sup> known to geology (first glacial period) must have occurred just at the time allotted to it by the Secret Doctrine: namely, 200,000 years (in round numbers) after the commencement of our FIFTH RACE, or about the time assigned by Croll and Stockwell for the first glacial period: *i.e.*, about 850,000 years ago. Thus, as the latter disturbance is attributed by geologists and astronomers to “an extreme eccentricity of the Earth’s orbit,” and as the Secret Doctrine attributes it to the same source, but with the addition of another factor, the shifting of the Earth’s axis . . .<sup>5</sup>

### We have since passed the middle point in the Great Cycle. The door for further sparks of the Divine Fire entering the human kingdom is now closed and the balance struck.

The last human Monad incarnated before the beginning of the 5<sup>th</sup> Root-Race. The cycle of *metempsychosis* for the human monad is closed, for we are in the Fourth Round and the Fifth Root-Race.<sup>6</sup>



### Humanity's Fifth Root-Race (Drawing).

There now follows a drawing from our Planetary Rounds and Globes Series. — ED. PHIL.

<sup>1</sup> [Cf. “Every Sidereal Year the tropics recede from the pole *four degrees* in each revolution from the equinoctial points, as the equator rounds through the *Zodiacal* constellations. Now, as every astronomer knows, at present the tropic is only twenty-three degrees and a fraction less than half a degree from the equator. Hence it has still 2½ degrees to run before the end of the Sidereal year; which gives humanity in general, and our civilized races in *particular*, a reprieve of about 16,000 years.” *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 331]

<sup>2</sup> [*i.e.*, of the Cactus. Look up drawing overleaf. — ED. PHIL.]

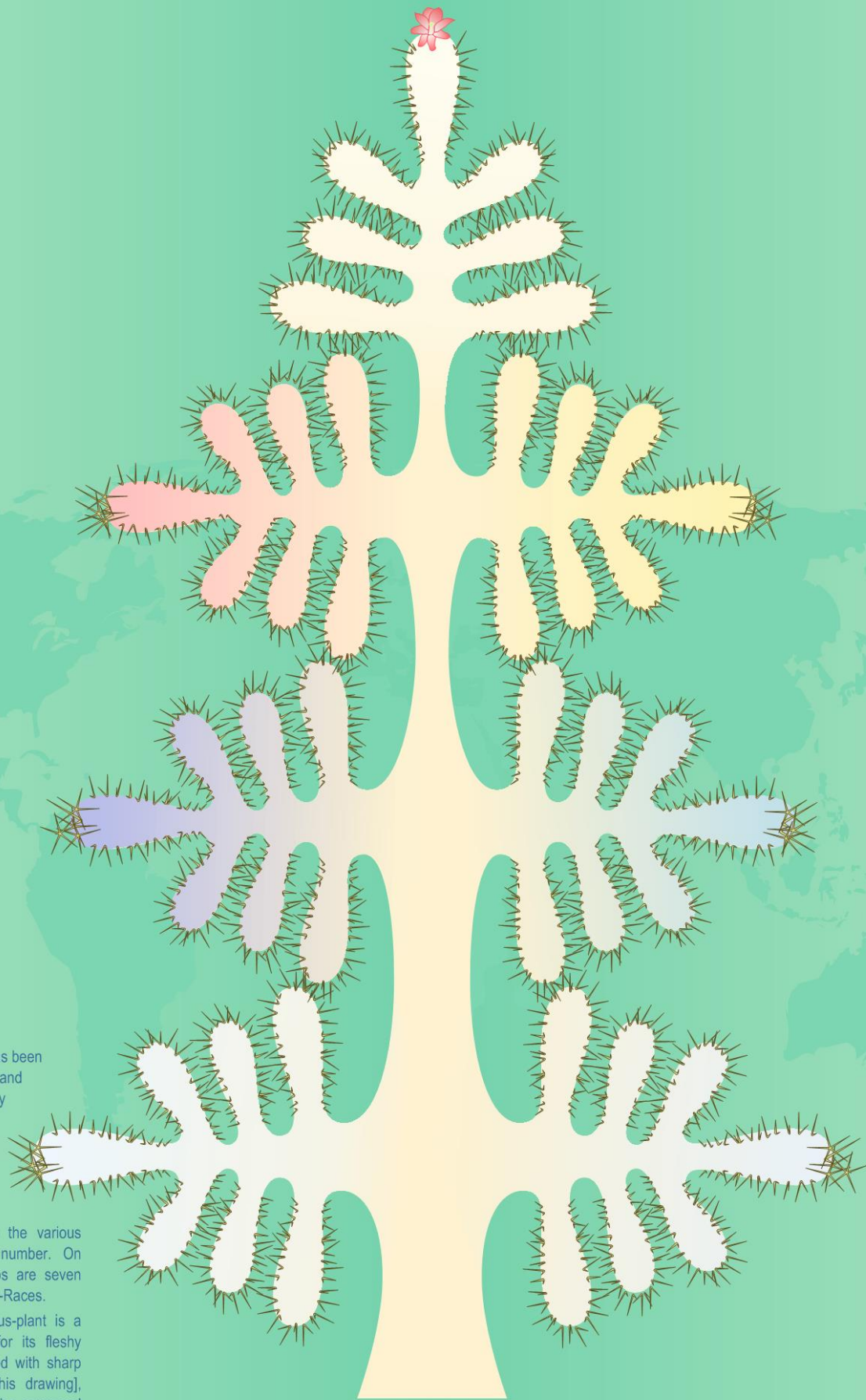
<sup>3</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 435

<sup>4</sup> [*i.e.*, “that great Cataclysm, which befell the Fourth, really human, though gigantic Race, the one which preceded the *Āryan*.” *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 144]

<sup>5</sup> *ibid.*, II pp. 144-45

<sup>6</sup> *ibid.*, I pp. 184-85





The human Race has been compared to a tree, and this serves admirably as an illustration.

The main stem of a tree may be compared to the Root-Race.

Its larger limbs to the various Sub-Races; 7 in number. On each of these limbs are seven Branches, or Family-Races.

After this the cactus-plant is a better illustration, for its fleshy "leaves" are covered with sharp spines [1,449 in this drawing], each of which may be compared to a nation or tribe of human beings. (Cf. SD II, 434-35)

The term Root-Race applies to one of the seven great Races [e.g., Lemurian, Atlantean, Aryan, etc.], sub-Race to one of its great Branches, and Family-Race to one of the sub-divisions, which include nations and large tribes. (SD II, 198 fn)

Integrative Theosophical Studies

## HUMANITY'S FIFTH ROOT-RACE

After *The Secret Doctrine* II, pp. 434-35

Illustration of the Human Race and its branches on Planet Earth, Tree of Life and Knowledge Eternal. The duration of each Root-Race is shown in Diagram 3.

[www.philaletheians.co.uk](http://www.philaletheians.co.uk)

Revision 10.12



**Though somewhat more refined, the animal propensities of the age are not the less developed for that, for we are still in the acme of materiality.**

The “days of Sinners” [*Book of Enoch*, ch. lxxix] meant the days when matter would be in its full sway on Earth, and man would have reached the apex of physical development in stature and animality. That came to pass during the period of the Atlanteans, about the middle point of their Race (the 4<sup>th</sup>), which was drowned as prophesied by Ūriēl. Since then man began decreasing in physical stature, strength, and years, as will be shown in Volume II. But as we are in the mid-point of our *sub-race* of the Fifth Root Race — the acme of materiality in each — therefore the animal propensities, though more refined, are not the less developed for that: and they are so chiefly in civilized countries.<sup>1</sup>

**The struggle for animal existence has already begun yielding slowly but surely to the struggle for divine existence.**

It is the old, old story, the struggle of matter and spirit, the “survival of the *unfittest*,” because of the strongest and the most material. But the period when nascent Humanity, following the law of the natural and *dual* evolution, was descending along with spirit into matter — is closed. We (Humanity) are now helping matter to ascend toward spirit; and to do that we have to help substance to disenthral itself from the viscous grip of sense. We, of the fifth Root Race, are the direct descendants of the primeval Humanity of that Race; those, who on this side of the Flood tried, by commemorating it, to save the antediluvian Truth and Wisdom, and were worsted in our efforts by the dark genius of the Earth — the spirit of matter, whom the Gnostics called Ialdabaōth and the Jews Jehovah. Think ye, that even the Bible of Moses, the book you know so well and understand so badly, has left this claim of the Ancient Doctrine without witness? It has not. Allow us to close with a (to you) familiar passage, only interpreted in its true light.<sup>2</sup>

**But psychism will seduce and snag many a forerunner of the next subrace.**

Your position as the fore-runners of the sixth sub-race of the fifth root-race has its own special perils as well as its special advantages. Psychism, with all its allurements, and all its dangers, is necessarily developing among you, and you must beware lest the Psychic outruns the Manasic and Spiritual development. Psychic capacities held perfectly under control, checked and directed by the Manasic principle, are valuable aids in development. But these capacities running riot, controlling instead of controlled, using instead of being used, lead the Student into the most dangerous delusions and the certainty of moral destruction. Watch therefore carefully this development, inevitable in your race and evolution-period so that it may finally work for good and not for evil; and receive, in advance, the sincere and potent blessings of Those whose good-will will never fail you, if you do not fail yourselves.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, I pp. 609-10

<sup>2</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (THE BABEL OF MODERN THOUGHT) XIII p. 98

<sup>3</sup> *ibid.*, (LETTER TO THE FIFTH ANNUAL CONVENTION) XIII p. 173

**When the hour strikes, the wicked shall be destroyed by fire and their power annihilated. And their names shall be blotted out of the holy books.<sup>1</sup>**

It is a well-established belief among the Eastern, and especially the Mongolian and Tibetan, Occultists that toward the end of every race, when mankind reaches its apex of knowledge in that cycle, dividing into two distinct classes, it branches off — one as the “Sons of Light” and the other as the “Sons of Darkness,” or initiated Adepts and natural-born magicians or — *mediums*. Toward the very close of the race, as their mixed progeny furnishes the first pioneers of a new and a higher race, there comes the last and supreme struggle during which the “Sons of Darkness” are usually exterminated by some great cataclysm of nature — by either fire or water. Atlantis was submerged, hence the inference that that portion of the mankind of the fifth race which will be composed of “natural-born magicians” will be exterminated at the future great cataclysm by — fire.<sup>2</sup>



---

<sup>1</sup> Note to Students by ED. PHIL. — “It is not lawful for the Occultist to seek or even to thirst for revenge; let him Wait, until sin pass away; for their [the sinners’] names shall be blotted out of the holy books [the astral records]; their seed shall be destroyed, and their spirits slain.”

*Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (THE BOOK OF ENOCH, ORIGIN AND FOUNDATION OF CHRISTIANITY) XIV p. 86; [& quoting from the *Book of Enoch*, Archbishop Laurence’s translation, ch. cv, 21.]

<sup>2</sup> *ibid.*, (FOOTNOTES TO “GLEANNINGS FROM ÉLIPHAS LÉVI”) IV pp. 45-46

## Continents evolve on parallel lines with races; and races, with soil and climate.

### Enoch stands for the first subrace of the Fifth Root-Race, and for the two preceding Root-Races with their fourteen subraces.

Esoterically, Enoch is the “Son of man,” the first; and symbolically, the first Sub-Race of the *Fifth* Root Race.<sup>1</sup> And if his name yields for purposes of numerical and astronomical glyphs the meaning of the solar year, or 365, in conformity to the age assigned to him in *Genesis*, it is because, being the seventh, he is, for Occult purposes, the personified period of the two preceding Races with their fourteen Sub-Races. Therefore, he is shown in the Book as the great grandfather of Noah who, in his turn, is the personification of the mankind of the Fifth, struggling with that of the Fourth Root-Race — the great period of the revealed and profaned Mysteries, when the “sons of God” coming down on Earth took for wives the daughters of men, and taught them the secrets of the Angels; in other words, when the “mind-born” men of the Third Race mixed themselves with those of the Fourth, and the divine Science was gradually brought down by men to Sorcery.<sup>2</sup>

### While the Puranas pay more attention to spiritual causes than to effects, the Bible plunges the faithful into material genesis, nearly skips the pre-Adamic races, and then proceeds developing its allegories concerning the Fifth Root-Race.

The *Purānas* on the one hand, and the Jewish Scriptures on the other, are based on the same scheme of evolution, which, read esoterically and expressed in modern language, would be found to be quite as scientific as much of what now passes current as the final word of recent discovery. The only difference between the two schemes is, that the *Purānas*, giving as much, and perhaps more attention to the causes than to the effects, allude to the pre-Cosmic and pre-*Genesis* periods rather than to those of so-called Creation, whereas the Bible, saying only a few words of the former period, plunges forthwith into material genesis, and, while nearly skipping the *pre-Adamic* races, proceeds with its allegories concerning the Fifth Race.<sup>3</sup>



<sup>1</sup> In the Bible [*Genesis* iv and v] there are three distinct Enochs [Hanōkh] — the son of Cain, the son of Seth, and the son of Jared; but they are all identical, and two of them are mentioned for the purposes of misleading. The years of only the last two are given, the first one being left without further notice.

<sup>2</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (THE BOOK OF ENOCH, ORIGIN AND FOUNDATION OF CHRISTIANITY) XIV p. 86

<sup>3</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 251-52

**The appearance of the Great Continents follows the order of evolution of the Great Races, from the First to the Fifth.<sup>1</sup> Europe is the Fifth Continent.**

The Fifth Continent was America; but, as it is situated at the Antipodes,<sup>2</sup> it is Europe and Asia Minor, almost coeval with it, which are generally referred to by the Indo-Āryan Occultists as the fifth. If their teaching followed the appearance of the Continents in their geological and geographical order, then this classification would have to be altered. But as the sequence of the Continents is made to follow the order of evolution of the Races, from the first to the fifth, our Āryan Root-Race, Europe must be called the fifth great Continent. The Secret Doctrine takes no account of islands and peninsulas, nor does it follow the modern geographical distribution of land and sea. Since the day of its earliest teachings and the destruction of the great Atlantis, the face of the earth has changed more than once. There was a time when the delta of Egypt and Northern Africa belonged to Europe, before the formation of the Straits of Gibraltar, and a further upheaval of the continent, changed entirely the face of the map of Europe. The last serious change occurred some 12,000 years ago,<sup>3</sup> and was followed by the submersion of Plato's little Atlantic island, which he calls Atlantis after its parent continent. Geography was part of the mysteries, in days of old. Says the *Zohar*:

These secrets (of land and sea) were divulged *to the men of the secret science*, but not to the geographers.<sup>4</sup>

The claim that physical man was originally a colossal pre-tertiary giant, and that he existed 18,000,000 years ago, must of course appear preposterous to admirers of, and believers in, modern learning. The whole *posse comitatus* of biologists will turn away from the conception of this third race Titan of the Secondary age, a being fit to fight as successfully with the then gigantic monsters of the air, sea, and land, as his forefathers — the ethereal prototypes of the Atlantean — had little need to fear that which could not hurt him. The modern anthropologist is quite welcome to laugh at our Titans, as he laughs at the Biblical Adam, and as the theologian laughs at his pithecoïd ancestor. The Occultists and their severe critics may feel that they have pretty well mutually squared their accounts by this time. Occult sciences claim less and give more, at all events, than either Darwinian Anthropology or Biblical Theology.

---

<sup>1</sup> The Great Continents:

1. Imperishable Sacred Land
2. Hyperborean
3. Lemuria
4. Atlantis
5. Europe

<sup>2</sup> [Pātāla or the Nether World, as America is called in India.]

<sup>3</sup> One more "coincidence":

"Now it is proved that in geologically recent times, *this region of North Africa was in fact a peninsula of Spain*, and that its union with Africa was effected on the north by the rupture of the Straights of Gibraltar, and on the South by an *upheaval to which the Sahara owes its existence*. The shores of this former sea of Sahara are still marked by the shells of the same snails that live on the shores of the Mediterranean."

(Prof. Oscar Schmidt, *Doctrine of Descent and Darwinism*, p. 224)

<sup>4</sup> Part III, folio 10a, Amsterdam ed.

Nor ought the Esoteric Chronology to frighten any one; for, with regard to figures, the greatest authorities of the day are as fickle and as uncertain as the Mediterranean wave. As regards the duration of the geological periods alone, the learned men of the Royal Society are all hopelessly at sea, and jump from one million to five hundred millions of years with the utmost ease, as will be seen more than once during this comparison.<sup>1</sup>

**Human races evolved on parallel lines with the evolution of three geological strata, from which their complexion was as much derived as it was determined by the climate of those zones. The three fundamental colours are red, yellow, and black. When mixed in variable quantities with the white of the skin, they give rise to numerous shades.**

Esotericism now classes these seven variations [of complexion and type], with their four great divisions, into only *three* distinct primeval races — as it does not take into consideration the First Race, which had neither type nor colour, and hardly an objective, though colossal form. The evolution of these races, their formation and development, went *pari passu* and on parallel lines with the evolution, formation, and development of three geological strata, from which the human complexion was as much derived as it was determined by the climates of those zones. It names three great divisions, namely, the RED-YELLOW, the BLACK, and the BROWN-WHITE.<sup>2</sup> The Āryan races, for instance, now varying from dark brown, almost black, red-brown-yellow, down to the whitest creamy colour, are yet all of one and the same stock — the Fifth Root-Race — and spring from one single progenitor, called in Hindu *exotericism* by the generic name of Vaivasvata Manu, the latter, remember, being that generic personage, the Sage, who is said to have lived over 18,000,000 years ago, and also 850,000 years ago — at the time of the sinking of the last remnants of the great continent of Atlantis,<sup>3</sup> and who is said to live even *now* in his mankind.

The light yellow is the colour of the first SOLID human race, which appeared after the middle of the Third Root-Race (*after its fall* into generation — as just explained), bringing on the final changes. For, it is only at that period that the last transformation took place, which brought forth man as he is now, only on a magnified scale. This Race gave birth to the Fourth Race; “Śiva” gradually transforming that portion of Humanity which became “black with sin” into *red-yellow* (the red Indians and the Mongolians being the descendants of these) and finally into brown-white races — which now, together with the yellow Races, form the great bulk of Humanity. The al-

---

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 8-9

<sup>2</sup> “There are,” says Topinard (English edition of *Anthropology*, with preface by Professor Broca), “THREE fundamental elements of colour in the human organism: namely, the *red*, the *yellow*, and the *black*, which, mixed in variable quantities with the white of the tissues, give rise to those numerous shades seen in the human family.” Here is science unintentionally supporting Occultism again.

<sup>3</sup> It must be remembered that the “last remnants” here spoken of, refer to those portions of the “great continent” which still remained, and not to any of the numerous islands which existed contemporaneously with the continent. Plato’s “island” was, for instance, one of such remnants; the others having sunk at various periods previously. An occult “tradition” teaches that such submersions occur whenever there is an eclipse of the “spiritual sun.”

legory in *Linga-Purāna* is curious, as showing the great ethnological knowledge of the ancients.<sup>1</sup>

**The first subrace of the Aryan Fifth Race witnessed the doom of the last of Atlanteans 850,000 years ago. The fourth, that of the last island of Atlantis, 11,000 years ago.**

The three Zodiacs belong to three different epochs: namely, to the last three family races of the fourth Sub-race of the Fifth Root-race, each of which must have lived approximately from 25 to 30,000 years. The first of these (the “Āryan-Asiatics”) witnessed the doom of the last of the populations of the “giant Atlanteans”<sup>2</sup> who perished some 850,000 years ago (the Ruta and Daitya Island-Continents) toward the close of the Miocene Age.<sup>3</sup> The fourth sub-race witnessed the destruction of the last remnant of the Atlanteans — the Āryo-Atlanteans in the last island of Atlantis, namely, some 11,000 years ago. In order to understand this the reader is asked to glance at the diagram of the genealogical tree of the Fifth Root-Race — generally, though hardly correctly, called the Āryan race, and the explanations appended to it.<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 249-50; [on Stanza X.39b.]

<sup>2</sup> The term “Atlantean” must not mislead the reader to regard these as one race only, or even a nation. It is as though one said “Asiatics.” Many, multityped, and various were the Atlanteans, who represented several *humanities*, and almost a countless number of races and nations, more varied indeed than would be the “Europeans” were this name to be given indiscriminately to the five existing parts of the world; which, at the rate colonization is proceeding, will be the case, perhaps, in less than two or three hundred years. There were brown, red, yellow, white and black Atlanteans; giants and dwarfs (as some African tribes comparatively are, even now).

<sup>3</sup> Says a teacher in *Esoteric Buddhism*, on p. 64: “In the Eocene age, even in its very first part, the great cycle of the fourth race men, the [Lemuro] Atlanteans, had already reached its highest point [of civilization], and the great continent, the father of nearly all the present continents, showed the first symptoms of sinking. . . .” And on page 70, it is shown that Atlantis as a whole perished during the Miocene period. To show how the continents, races, nations and cycles overlap each other, one has but to think of Lemuria, the last of whose lands perished about 700,000 years before the beginning of the Tertiary period (see p. 65 of the same work), and the last of “Atlantis” only 11,000 years ago; thus both overlapping — one the Atlantean period, and the other the Āryan.

<sup>4</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 433-34.

[*Note 20 by Boris de Zirkoff, (ibid., pp. 805-6):* It is obvious from H.P. Blavatsky’s own words closing this paragraph that she is not too happy about the necessity of using the term *Āryan* in a racial or ethnic sense. Lack of adequate terms for various aspects of the esoteric philosophy has created many difficulties for students who have been forced to use existing words with additional and often very strained meanings.

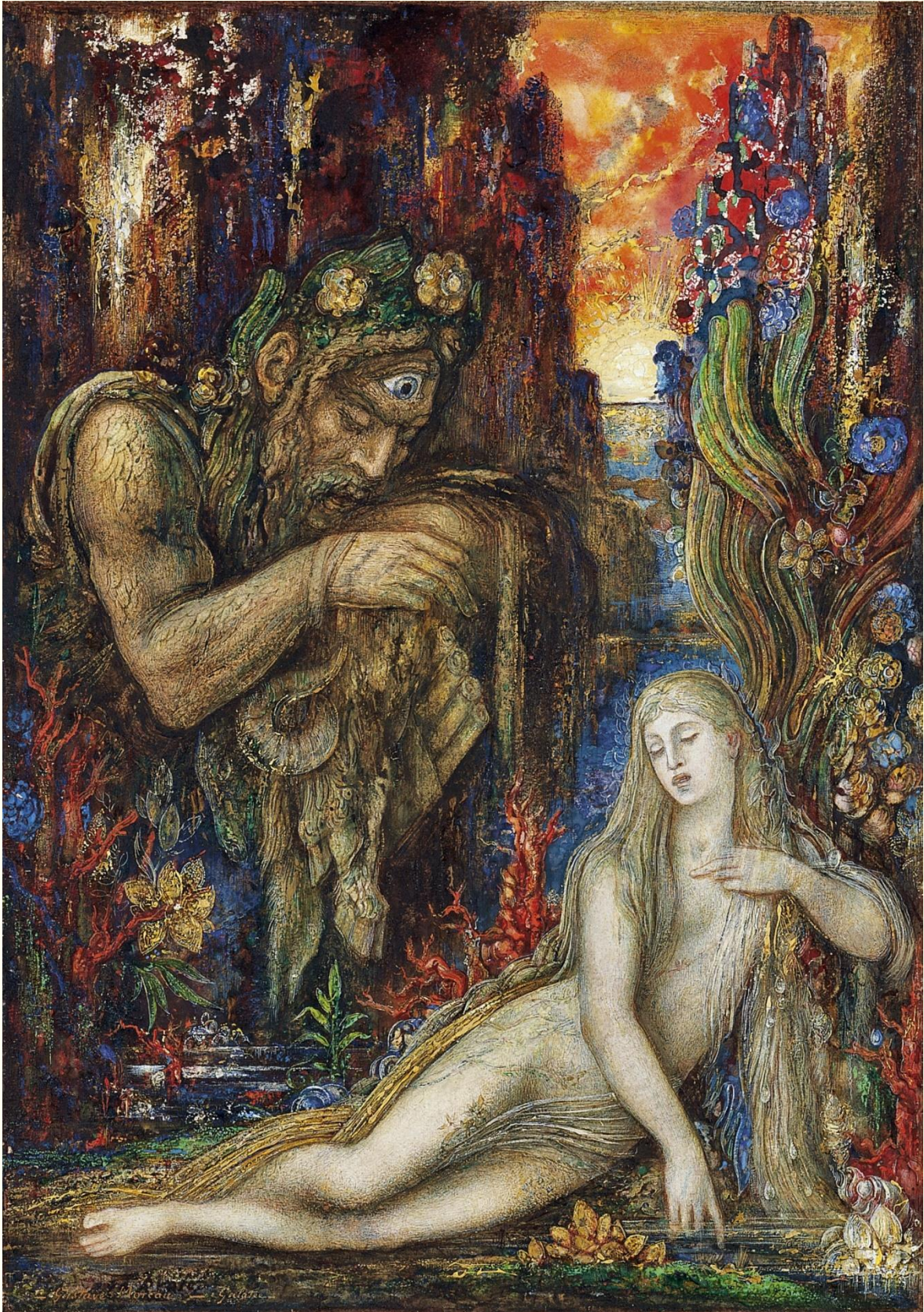
*Āryan*, as a term, similarly to the expression *Indo-European*, began to be used by modern scholars especially to indicate a family of languages, but from the beginning it has been found very difficult to keep apart the use of the word as indicating languages and the application of the term not only to the speakers of the languages at any given period but also the supposed original speakers of these languages. The effect of this confusion has often been serious.

In Sanskrit, the term *Ārya* (Avestan *airya*; Old Persian *ariya*, whence Persian *Īran*; and *Ario* — in Teutonic and Keltic names) means noble, respectable, honourable, highly esteemed, worthy. Hence the term *Āryāvarta* to designate the abode of the noble or excellent ones, the sacred land of the Āryans.

As Occidental scholarship developed, the term *Āryan* began to denote a member of the people which spoke the language from which the Indo-European languages are derived. The existence of a prehistoric Āryan people was first assumed by philologists from the close relationship and inferred common origin of the Indo-European languages. This people was supposed to have dwelt in central Asia and thence to have separated in two streams of migration, one toward Persia and India, and one toward Europe. In more recent years ethnologists have seriously disputed the Asiatic or even the common Āryan origin of the peoples of Europe, while most philologists themselves have made Europe rather than Asia the centre of dispersion. In ethnology today, Āryan has become a rather loose term for an Āryan-speaking individual of the so-called Caucasian race — another very inadequate term. Even the great Max Müller himself, a scholar who had to use the term in his own research and writings, said once: “To me an ethnologist who speaks of an *Āryan* race, *Āryan* blood, *Āryan* eyes and hair, is as great a sinner as a linguist who speaks of a dolichocephalic dictionary or a brachycephalic grammar.”

The student should consult the rather comprehensive text on “Historical Difficulties” and “Esoteric History” — some of it dictated to H.P. Blavatsky by her Teachers — in Volume V of the *Collected Writings*, pp. 198-241]

[The above articles can be found in our Atlantean Realities Series. — ED. PHIL.]



Polyphemus spying on Galatea (1896) Gustave Moreau, Museo Thyssen-Bornemisza, Madrid



**The early Aryans were giants. But they have since degenerated morally and physically.**

It was the belief of entire antiquity, Pagan and Christian, that the earliest mankind was a race of giants. Certain excavations in America in mounds and in caves, have already yielded in isolated cases groups of skeletons of nine and twelve feet high. These belong to tribes of the early Fifth Race, now degenerated to an average size of between five and six feet. But we can easily believe that the Titans and Cyclopes of old really belonged to the Fourth (Atlantean) Race, and that all the subsequent legends and allegories found in the Hindu *Purānas* and the Greek Hesiod and Homer, were based on the hazy reminiscences of real Titans — men of a superhuman tremendous physical power, which enabled them to defend themselves, and hold at bay the gigantic monsters of the Mesozoic and early Cainozoic times — and of actual Cyclopes — three-eyed mortals.<sup>1</sup>

**Incas were the first offshoot of the first subrace of the Fifth Race.**

Incas [is] the name given to the creative gods in the Peruvian Theogony, and later to the rulers of the country. “The Incas, *seven* in number have repeopled the earth after the Deluge,” Coste makes them say (I, iv, p. 19). They belonged at the beginning of the *fifth* Root-race to a dynasty of divine kings, such as those of Egypt, India and Chaldea.<sup>2</sup>

**They were followed by the Egyptians and the early Chinese.**

The two most ancient people of the Fifth Root-Race, the Hindu Āryans and the Egyptians, adding to them the early Chinese races (the remnants of the Fourth or Atlantean Race) — based the whole of their mysteries on number 10.<sup>3</sup>

**Aryan Hindus were the last offshoot of the first subrace.**

[Alice D. Le Plongeon, writing on “Ancient Races,” wonders whether the elephant worship in India may not be an outgrowth of mammoth worship in America. To this H.P. Blavatsky remarks:]

We would rather say that it is the other way about. The Āryan Hindu is the last offshoot of the first sub-race of the fifth Root-race which is now the dominant one.<sup>4</sup>

**Aeolians, Dorians, and Ionians were remnants of Atlantean stock.<sup>5</sup>**

By the connection together of the old Greeks and Romans without distinction, was meant that the primitive Latins were swallowed by Magna Græcia. And by “the modern” belonging “to the fifth race” — both these small branchlets from whose veins had been strained out the last drop of the Atlantean blood — it was implied that the *Mongoloid* 4<sup>th</sup> race blood had already been eliminated. Occultists make a distinction between the races intermediate between any two Root-races: the Westerns do not.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 293

<sup>2</sup> *Theosophical Glossary*: Incas

<sup>3</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 603

<sup>4</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (MISCELLANEOUS NOTES) XII p. 382

<sup>5</sup> Look up “Aeolians, Dorians, Ionians” in our Hellenic and Hellenistic Series. — ED. PHIL.

The “old Romans” were Hellenes in a new ethnological disguise; the still older Greeks — the real blood ancestors of the future Romans.<sup>1</sup>

**But the blood of the true Roman was Hellenic from its beginning.**

The Founders of Rome were decidedly a *mongrel* people, made up of various scraps and remnants of the many primitive tribes — only a few really Latin families, the descendants of the distinct sub-race that came along with the Umbro-Sabellians from the East remaining. And, while the latter preserved their distinct colour down to the Middle Ages through the Sabine element, left unmixed in its mountainous regions — the blood of the true Roman *was Hellenic blood* from its beginning. The famous Latin league is no fable but history. The succession of kings descended from the Trojan Æneas is a fact; and, the idea that Romulus is to be regarded as simply the symbolical representative of a people, as Æolus, Dorius, and Ion were once, instead of a living man, is as unwarranted as it is arbitrary. It could only have been entertained by a class of historiographers bent upon condoning their sin in supporting the *dogma* that Shem, Ham, and Japhet were the historical, once living ancestors of mankind, — by making a burnt offering of every really historical but *non-Jewish* tradition, legend, or record which might presume to a place on the same level with these three privileged archaic mariners instead of humbly grovelling at their feet as “absurd myths” and old wives’ tales and superstitions.

**Today’s spiritually highest men are the Aryan Asiatics; those intellectually highest are their white conquerors, men of the seventh subrace.**

Our fourth Round Humanity has its one great cycle, and so have her races and sub-races. The “curious rush”<sup>2</sup> is due to the double effect of the former — the beginning of its downward course; — and of the latter (the small cycle of your “sub-race”) running on to its apex. Remember, you belong to the fifth Race, yet you are but a *Western* sub-race. Notwithstanding your efforts, what you call civilization is confined only to the latter and its off-shoots in America. Radiating around, its deceptive light may seem to throw its rays a greater distance than it does in reality. There is no “rush” in China, and of Japan you make but a caricature.<sup>3</sup>

I told you before now, that the highest people now on earth (spiritually) belong to the first sub-race of the fifth *Root Race*, and those are the Aryan Asiatics; the highest race (physical intellectuality) is the last sub-race of the fifth — yourselves the white conquerors. The majority of mankind belongs to the seventh sub-race of the fourth *Root race*, — the above mentioned Chinamen and their off-shoots and branchlets (Malayans, Mongolians, Tibetans, Javanese, etc., etc., etc.) and remnants of other sub-races of the fourth — and the seventh sub-race of the third race. All these, fallen, degraded semblances of humanity are the direct lineal descendants of highly civi-

---

<sup>1</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (ESOTERIC HISTORY) V pp. 214-16

<sup>2</sup> [Replying to the question: “Is there any way of accounting for what seems the curious rush of human progress within the last two thousand years, as compared with the relatively stagnant condition of the fourth round people up to the beginning of modern progress?”]

<sup>3</sup> *Mahatma Letter* 23b (93b) p. 146; 3<sup>rd</sup> Combined ed.

lized nations neither the names nor memory of which have survived except in such books as *Popol-Vuh* and a few others unknown to Science.<sup>1</sup>

**Redskins, Eskimos, Papuans, Australians, Polynesians, all are dying out now. The time is drawing near when there will remain nothing but three great human types, the White, the Yellow, and the African Black, with their Atlanto-European divisions.**

Why does this (Karmic) sterility attack and root out certain races at their “appointed hour”? The answer that it is due to a “mental disproportion” between the colonizing and aboriginal races is obviously evasive, since it does not explain the sudden “checks to fertility” which so frequently supervene. The dying out of the Hawaiians, for instance, is one of the most mysterious problems of the day. Ethnology will sooner or later have to recognize with Occultists that the true solution has to be sought for in a comprehension of the workings of Karma. As Lefèvre remarks, “the time is drawing near when there will remain nothing but three great human types” (before the Sixth Root-Race dawns), the white (Āryan, Fifth Root-Race), the yellow, and the African negro — with their crossings (Atlanto-European divisions). Redskins, Eskimos, Papuans, Australians, Polynesians, etc., — all are dying out. Those who realize that every Root-Race runs through a gamut of seven sub-races with seven branchlets, etc., will understand the “why.” The tide-wave of incarnating EGOS has rolled past them to harvest experience in more developed and less senile stocks; and their extinction is hence a Karmic necessity.<sup>2</sup>



<sup>1</sup> *Mahatma Letter* 23b (93b) p. 151; 3<sup>rd</sup> Combined ed.

<sup>2</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 780; [& quoting A. Lefèvre, *La Philosophie*, 1879]

## The ape is not a product of natural evolution but an accidental cross-breed between animal and man.

From *The Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 260-63.

**It is the ape that is a “special and unique instance,” not man. The pithecoïd is an accidental creation, the result of an unnatural process, a forced growth.**

Occultism denies that all the preceding forms of human life belonged to types lower than our own, for it is not so. But simply because the “missing link,” such as to prove the existing theory undeniably, will never be found by palæontologists. Believing as we do that man has evolved from, and passed through, (during the preceding Rounds), the lowest forms of every life, vegetable and animal, on earth, there is nothing very degrading in the idea of having the orang-utan as an ancestor of our physical form. Quite the reverse; as it would forward the Occult doctrine with regard to the final evolution of everything in terrestrial nature into man, most irresistibly. One may even enquire how it is that biologists and anthropologists, having once firmly accepted the theory of the descent of man from the ape — how it is that they have hitherto left untouched the future evolution of the existing apes into man? This is only a logical sequence of the first theory, unless Science would make of man a privileged being, and his evolution a *non*-precedent in nature, quite a *special* and unique case. And that is what all this leads physical Science to. The reason, however, why the Occultists reject the Darwinian, and especially the Haeckelian, hypothesis is because it is the ape which is, in sober truth, a special and unique instance, not man. The pithecoïd is *an accidental creation*, a forced growth, the result of an unnatural process.

The occult doctrine, is, we think, more logical. It teaches a cyclic, never varying law in nature, the latter having no personal, “special design,” but acting on a uniform plan that prevails through the whole manvantaric period and deals with the land worm as it deals with man. Neither the one nor the other have sought to come into being, hence both are under the same evolutionary law, and both have to progress according to Karmic law. Both have started from the same neutral centre of Life and both have to remerge into it at the consummation of the cycle.

It is not denied that in the preceding Round man *was* a gigantic ape-like creature; and when we say “man” we ought perhaps to say, the rough mould that was developing for the use of man in this Round only — the middle, or the transition point of which we have hardly reached. Nor was man what he is now during the first two and a half Root-races. That point he reached, as said before, only 18,000,000 years ago, during the Secondary period, as we claim.

**Still, he is “a god on earth who had fallen into matter” or generation.**

Till then he was, according to tradition and Occult teaching, “a god on earth who had fallen into matter,” or generation. This may or may not be accepted, since the Secret Doctrine does not impose itself as an infallible dogma, and since, whether its prehistoric records are accepted or rejected, it has nothing to do with the question of the

*actual* man and his inner nature; the Fall mentioned above having left no original sin on Humanity. But all this has been sufficiently dealt with.

Furthermore, we are taught that the transformations through which man passed on the descending arc — which is centrifugal for spirit and centripetal for matter — and those he prepares to go through, henceforward, on his ascending path, which will reverse the direction of the two forces — viz., matter will become centrifugal and spirit centripetal — that all such transformations *are next in store for the anthropoid ape also*, all those, at any rate, who have reached the remove next to man in this Round — and these will all be men in the Fifth Round, as present men inhabited ape-like forms in the Third, the preceding Round.<sup>1</sup>

**Apes appeared millions of years after the “speaking men,” and are the latest contemporaries of the Aryan Root-Race. Their unprogressed Egos were compelled by Karma to incarnate in animal forms as a punishment for the bestiality they displayed from the late Third to the early Fourth Root-Race. They are dwarfed and degraded examples of ourselves as we were then. The “speechless men” will become speaking animals (men of a lower order) in the Fifth Round, perhaps at the close of the Sixth Root-Race.**



Behold, then, in the modern denizens of the great forests of Sumatra the degraded and *dwarfed* examples — “blurred copies,” as Mr. Huxley has it — of ourselves, as we (the majority of mankind) were in the earliest sub-races of the Fourth Root-race during the period of what is called the “Fall into generation.” The ape we know is not the product of natural evolution but an *accident*, a cross-breed between an animal being, or form, and man. As has been shown in the present Volume (anthropogenesis), it is the speechless animal that first started sexual connection, having been the first to separate into males and females. Nor was it intended by Nature that man should follow the bestial example — as shown by the comparatively painless procreation of their species by the animals, and the terrible suffering and danger of the same in the woman. The ape is, indeed, as remarked in *Isis Unveiled*,<sup>2</sup> “a transformation of species most directly connected with that of the human family — a *bastard branch engrafted on their own stock before the final perfection of the latter*” — or man. The

apes are millions of years later than the speaking human being, and are the latest

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 260-62

<sup>2</sup> Vol. II, p. 278. [Picture above: Lilith (1892) John Maler Collier, Atkinson Art Gallery, Southport, England]

contemporaries of our Fifth Race. Thus, it is most important to remember that the *Egos* of the apes are entities compelled by their Karma to incarnate in the animal forms, which resulted from the bestiality of the *latest* Third and the earliest Fourth Race men. They are entities who had already reached the “human stage” before this Round. Consequently, they form an exception to the general rule. The numberless traditions about Satyrs are no fables, but represent an extinct race of animal men. The animal “Eves” were their foremothers, and the human “Adams” their forefathers; hence the *Kabbalistic allegory of Līlith or Lilatu*, Adam’s *first* wife, whom the Talmud describes as a *charming* woman, *with long wavy hair*, i.e., — a female hairy animal of a character now unknown, still a female animal, who in the Kabbalistic and Talmudic allegories is called the female reflection of Sammāēl, Sammāēl-Līlith, or man-animal united, a being called *Hayāh Bishā*, the Beast or Evil Beast.<sup>1</sup> It is from this unnatural union that the present apes descended. The latter are truly “speechless men,” and will become speaking animals (or men of a lower order) in the Fifth Round, while the adepts of a certain school hope that some of the *Egos* of the apes of a higher intelligence will reappear at the close of the Sixth Root-race. What their form will be is of secondary consideration. The form means nothing. Species and genera of the flora, fauna, and the highest animal, its crown — man, change and vary according to the environments and climatic variations, not only with every Round, but every Root-Race likewise, as well as after every geological cataclysm that puts an end to, or produces a turning point in the latter. In the Sixth Root-Race the fossils of the Orang, the Gorilla and the Chimpanzee will be those of extinct quadrumanous mammals; and new forms — though fewer and ever wider apart as ages pass on and the close of the Manvantara approaches — will develop from the “cast off” types of the human races as they revert once again to astral, out of the mire of physical, life. There were none before man, and they will be extinct before the Seventh Race develops. Karma will lead on the monads of the unprogressed men of our race and lodge them in the newly evolved human frames of the thus physiologically regenerated baboon.<sup>2</sup>

**The Hindus attribute a divine origin to apes and monkeys because they recognise that these “senseless” mortals of the Third Race were once gods from another plane.**

*The inner, now concealed, man, was then [in the beginnings] the external man. The progeny of the Dhyānis [Pitris], he was “the son like unto his father.” Like the lotus, whose external shape assumes gradually the form of the model within itself, so did the form of man in the beginning evolve from within without. After the cycle in which man began to procreate his species after the fashion of the present animal kingdom, it became the reverse. The human foetus follows now in its transformation all the forms that the physical frame of man had assumed throughout the three Kalpas [Rounds] during the tentative efforts at plastic formation around the monad by senseless, because imperfect, matter, in her blind wanderings. In the present age, the physical embryo is a plant, a reptile, an animal, before it finally becomes man, evolving within himself his own ethereal*

---

<sup>1</sup> Zohar, ii, 255-59

<sup>2</sup> Secret Doctrine, II pp. 262-63

*counterpart, in his turn. In the beginning it was that counterpart [astral man] which, being senseless, got entangled in the meshes of matter.*

But this “man” belongs to the fourth Round. As shown, the MONAD had passed through, journeyed and been imprisoned in, every transitional form throughout every kingdom of nature during the three preceding Rounds. But the monad which becomes human *is not the Man*. In this Round — with the exception of the highest mammals after man, the anthropoids<sup>1</sup> destined to die out in this our race, when their monads will be liberated and pass into the astral human forms (or the highest elementals)<sup>2</sup> of the Sixth and the Seventh Races, and then into lowest human forms<sup>3</sup> in the fifth Round — no units of either of the kingdoms are animated any longer by monads destined to become human in their next stage, but only by the lower Elementals of their respective realms.

The last human Monad incarnated before the beginning of the 5<sup>th</sup> Root-Race.<sup>4</sup>



---

<sup>1</sup> Nature never repeats herself, therefore the anthropoids of our day have not existed at any time since the middle of the Miocene period; when, like all crossbreeds, they began to show a tendency, more and more marked as time went on, to return to the type of their first parent, the black and yellow gigantic Lemuro-Atlantean. To search for the “Missing Link” is useless. To the scientists of the closing sixth Root-race, millions and millions of years hence, our modern races, or rather their fossils, will appear as those of small insignificant apes — an extinct species of the *genus homo*.

<sup>2</sup> These “Elementals” will become human Monads, in their turn, only at the next great planetary Manvantara.

<sup>3</sup> Such anthropoids form an exception because they were not intended by Nature, but are the direct product and creation of “senseless” man. The Hindus give a divine origin to the apes and monkeys because the men of the Third Race were gods from another plane who had become “senseless” mortals. This subject had already been touched upon in *Isis Unveiled* twelve years ago as plainly as was then possible. On pp. 278-279, Vol. II, the reader is referred to the Brahmins, if he would know the reason of the regard they have for the monkeys. For then he (the reader) would “perhaps learn — were the Brahman to judge him worthy of an explanation — that the Hindu sees in the ape but what Manu desired he should: the transformation of species most directly connected with that of the human family — a bastard branch engrafted on their own stock before the final perfection of the latter. He might learn, further, that in the eyes of the educated ‘heathen’ the spiritual or *inner* man is one thing, and his terrestrial, physical casket another. That physical nature, the great combination of physical correlations of forces ever creeping onward towards perfection, has to avail herself of the material at hand; she models and remodels as she proceeds, and finishing her crowning work in man, presents him alone as a fit tabernacle for the overshadowing of the divine Spirit.”

<sup>4</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, I pp. 184-85

## Man is a unity only at his origin and at his very end, not in-between

**Up to the Fifth Race, animal and man were on a par as to suffering, in their efforts to unfold divine consciousness here on earth. Today, karma weighs heavily on the shoulders of thinking, therefore, responsible men.**

We know [“we,” the *Initiates*] that the whole creation [*omnis creatura* or *creature*, in the *Vulgate*] groaneth and travaileth [in childbirth] in pain together until now. (*Romans* viii, 22)<sup>1</sup>

This is plainly saying that man and animal are on a par on earth, as to suffering, in their evolutionary efforts toward the goal and in accordance with Karmic law. By “until now,” is meant up to the fifth race. To make it still plainer, the great Christian Initiate explains by saying:

Not only they [the animals], but ourselves also, which have the first-fruits of the Spirit, even we ourselves groan within ourselves, waiting for the adoption, to wit, the redemption of our body. (viii, 23)

Yes, it is we, men, who have the “first-fruits of the Spirit,” or the direct Parabrahmic light, our *Ātma* or seventh principle, owing to the perfection of our fifth principle (*Manas*), which is far less developed in the animal. As a compensation, however, their Karma is far less heavy than ours. But that is no reason why they too should not reach one day that perfection that gives the fully evolved man the Dhyanchohanik form.<sup>2</sup>

**The heaviest Karma of our race was generated by ourselves in the previous race. As Atlanteans, we misused our divine powers and made the holy tabernacle, designed for a god, fane of every spiritual iniquity.**

The “eye of Śiva” did not become entirely atrophied before the close of the Fourth Race. When spirituality and all the divine powers and attributes of the deva-man of the Third had been made the handmaidens of the newly-awakened physiological and psychic passions of the physical man, instead of the reverse, the eye lost its powers. But such was the law of Evolution, and it was, in strict accuracy, no FALL. The sin was not in using those newly-developed powers, but in *misusing* them; in making of the tabernacle, designed to contain a god, the fane of every *spiritual* iniquity. And if we say “sin,” it is merely that everyone should understand our meaning; as the term *Karma*<sup>3</sup> would be the right one to use in this case; while the reader who would feel perplexed at the use of the term “spiritual” instead of “physical” iniquity, is reminded

---

<sup>1</sup> “*Omnis creatura ingemiscit, et parturit usque adhuc*,” in the original Latin translation.

<sup>2</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (HAVE ANIMALS SOULS? – III) VII pp. 45-46; [full text in our *Blavatsky Speaks Series*. — ED. PHL.]

<sup>3</sup> Karma is a word of many meanings, and has a special term for almost every one of its aspects. It means, as a synonym of sin, the performance of some action for the attainment of an object of *worldly*, hence *selfish*, desire, which cannot fail to be hurtful to somebody else. Karman is action, the Cause; and Karma again is “the law of ethical causation”; the *effect* of an act produced egotistically, when the great law of harmony depends on altruism.



of the fact that there can be no physical iniquity. The body is simply the irresponsible organ, the tool of the *psychic*, if not of the “Spiritual man.” While in the case of the Atlanteans, it was precisely the Spiritual being which sinned, the Spirit element being still the “Master” principle in man, in those days. Thus it is in those days that the heaviest Karma of the Fifth Race was generated by our Monads.<sup>1</sup>

**Yet, in its infancy, mankind “was of one lip and of one speech,” had one doctrine and one philosophy.**

In the beginning of time, or rather, in the childhood of the fifth Race, “the whole earth was of one *lip* and of one speech,” saith chapter xi of *Genesis*. Read esoterically, this means that mankind had one universal doctrine, a philosophy, common to all; and that men were *bound* by one religion, whether this term be derived from the Latin word *relegere*, “to gather, or be united” in speech or in thought, from *religens*, revering the gods,” or, from *religare*, “to be bound fast together.” Take it one way or the other, it means most undeniably and plainly that our forefathers from beyond the “flood” accepted in common one *truth* — *i.e.*, they believed in that aggregate of subjective and objective *facts* which form the consistent, logical and harmonious whole called by us the *Wisdom-Religion*.<sup>2</sup>

**The deadly strife between spirit and matter, light and darkness, goodness and evil, began on our globe with the first appearance of contrasts and opposites in vegetable and animal nature, and continued more fiercely than ever after man had become the selfish and wicked being he now is.**

And then, *men will arise from the dead* and immortality come.<sup>3</sup>

Now the latter is of course purely allegorical. It stands in the occult sense, that materialism and sin being called death, the materialist, or the unbeliever, is “a dead man” — spiritually. Occultism has never regarded the physical personality as *the* man; nor has Paul, if his *Epistle to the Romans* (vi-vii), is correctly understood. Thus mankind, arrived “at the appointed time” (the end of our present *Round*), at the end of the cycle of gross material flesh, will, with certain bodily changes, have come to a clearer spiritual perception of the truth. Redemption from flesh means a proportionate redemption from sin. Many are those who *seeing will believe*, and, in consequence, *rise “from the dead.”* By the middle of the Seventh Race, says an occult prophecy, the struggle of the two conflicting Powers (*Buddhi* and *Kama-Manas*) will have almost died out. Everything that is irredeemably sinful and wicked, cruel and destructive, will have been eliminated, and that which is found to survive will be swept away from being, owing, so to speak, to a Karmic tidal-wave in the shape of scavenger-plagues, geological convulsions and other means of destruction. The Fifth Round will bring forth a higher kind of Humanity; and, as intelligent Nature always proceeds gradually, the last Race of this Round must necessarily develop the needed materials thereof. Meanwhile, we are still in the Fifth Race of the Fourth Round only, and in the *Kaliyuga*, into the bargain. The deadly strife between spirit and matter, between Light

---

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 302

<sup>2</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (THE BABEL OF MODERN THOUGHT) XIII p. 98

<sup>3</sup> *Zamyād Yasht*, xix, 89 *et seq.*

and Goodness and Darkness and Evil, began on our globe with the first appearance of contrasts and opposites in vegetable and animal nature, and continued more fiercely than ever after man had become the selfish and personal being *he now is*. Nor is there any chance of its coming to an end before falsehood is replaced by truth, selfishness by altruism, and supreme justice reigns in the heart of man. Till then, the noisy battle will rage unabated. It is selfishness, especially; the love of *Self* above all things in heaven and earth, helped by human vanity, which is the begetter of the seven mortal sins. No; Ashmogh, the cruel “biped serpent,” is not so easily reduced. Before the poor creature now in the clutches of Darkness is liberated through Light, it has to know itself. Man, following the Delphic injunction, has to become acquainted with, and gain the mastery over, every nook and corner of his heterogeneous nature, before he can learn to discriminate between HIMSELF and his *personality*. To accomplish this difficult task, two conditions are absolutely requisite: one must have thoroughly realised in practice the noble Zoroastrian precept: “Good thoughts, good words, good deeds,” and must have impressed them indelibly on his soul and heart, not merely as a lip-utterance and form-observance. Above all, one has to crush *personal vanity* beyond resurrection.<sup>1</sup>

**Man is a Unity only at his origin and at his very end. In the intermediate period, there is a ceaseless struggle between divine wisdom and its earthly reflection, between truth and error. If man can emerge from the region of lust and iniquity victorious, he may rebecome what he was before and retire into the Silence and Darkness whence he came.**

The doctrines of Theosophy are simply the faithful echoes of Antiquity. Man is a *Unity* only at his origin and at his end. All the Spirits, all the Souls, gods and demons emanate from and have for their root-principle the SOUL OF THE UNIVERSE says Porphyry (*De Sacrifice*).<sup>2</sup> Not a philosopher of any notoriety who did not believe

- 1 In reincarnation (metempsychosis),
- 2 In the plurality of principles in man, or that man had *two* Souls of separate and quite different natures; one perishable, the *Astral Soul*, the other incorruptible and immortal; and
- 3 That the former was not the man whom it represented — “neither his spirit nor his body, but his *reflection*, at best.”

This was taught by Brahmans, Buddhists, Hebrews, Greeks, Egyptians, and Chaldeans; by the post-diluvian heirs of the pre-diluvian Wisdom, by Pythagoras and Socrates, Clemens Alexandrinus, Synesius, and Origen, the oldest Greek poets as much as the Gnostics, whom Gibbon shows as the most refined, learned and enlightened men of all ages (See *The History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*, ch. xv). But

---

<sup>1</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (DEVIL'S OWN THOUGHTS ON ORMUZD AND AHRIMAN) XIII, pp. 128-29

<sup>2</sup> [Porphyry's text entitled *De sacrificio et magia* appears to be a mediaeval condensation of Book II of his *De abstinencia carnis* (On Abstinence from Animal Food). This condensed version in its Latin form is appended to Iamblichus' *De mysteriis Egyptiorum*, etc., Venice, 1497, and London, 1552, 1570, 1577. Thomas Taylor has translated the complete text of *De abstinencia* in his *Select Works of Porphyry*, London, 1823, wherein occurs, in Book II, 37, a passage somewhat similar to what H.P. Blavatsky mentions in the text above. — *Boris de Zirkoff*.

Note to Students by ED. PHIL. — Look up “Plutarch on why eating animals is repulsive” and “Taylor's Vindication of the Rights of Brutes,” in our Down to Earth Series.]

the rabble was the same in every age: superstitious, self-opinionated, materializing every most spiritual and noble idealistic conception and dragging it down to its own low level, and — ever adverse to philosophy.

But all this does not interfere with that fact, that our “fifth Race” man, analysed esoterically as a septenary creature,<sup>1</sup> was ever *exoterically* recognized as mundane, sub-mundane, terrestrial and supra-mundane, Ovid graphically describing him as:<sup>2</sup>

Bis duo sunt homines — *manes, caro, spiritus, umbra*  
Quattuor has partes tot loca suscipiunt.  
Terra tegit carnem, tumulum circumvolat umbra,  
Orcus habet manes, spiritus astra petit.<sup>3</sup>

**The ancients revered the pristine spirituality of their divine ancestors. The modern anthropomorphists prefer to worship male gods that they “created” after their own fleshly organs.<sup>4</sup>**

Thus the pristine bi-sexual unity of the human *Third* Root-Race is an axiom in the Secret Doctrine. Its virgin individuals were raised to “Gods,” because that Race represented their “divine Dynasty.” The moderns are satisfied with worshipping the male heroes of the Fourth Race, who created gods after their own sexual image, whereas the gods of primeval mankind were “male and female.”

As stated in Volume I, the humanities developed co-ordinately, and on parallel lines with the four Elements, every new Race being physiologically adapted to meet the additional element. Our Fifth Race is rapidly approaching the Fifth Element<sup>5</sup> — call it interstellar ether, if you will — which has more to do, however, with psychology than with physics.<sup>6</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> [Cf. “Each of the seven races send seven ramifying branchlets from the Parent Branch: and through each of these in turn man *has* to evolve before he passes on to the next higher race; and that — *seven times*. Well may you open wide your eyes, good friend, and feel puzzled — it is so. The branchlets typify varying specimens of humanity — physically and spiritually — and no one of us can miss one single rung of the ladder.” *Mahatma Letter* 18 (62) p. 116; 3<sup>rd</sup> Combined ed.]

<sup>2</sup> [Note 1 by Boris de Zirkoff: In her essay on “Chinese Spirits,” immediately following the present article, H.P. Blavatsky quotes these verses again, attributing them to a “Latin poet.” They are also quoted, in a somewhat incomplete form, in *Isis Unveiled*, I p. 362, where they are attributed to Lucretius who is supposed to portray old Ennius as saying these words. The two last lines only occur again in *Isis Unveiled*, I p. 37, where they are attributed to Ovid again. In spite of an exhaustive search having been made, no such verses have been found either in Lucretius or in Ovid.]

Note 2 by ED. PHIL: Latin epitaph quoted by Tiberius Hemsterhuis in *Luciani colloquia et Timon*, 1708, and by John Carr in his 1779 translation of Lucian’s *Sale of Lives*, Vol. II, “Diogenes and Hercules,” p. 105 *fn.* tracing man’s lower four-fold aspects after death. *i.e.*,

The flesh (carnem, visible body or sthūla-śarīra) is concealed by the earth;  
The shadow (umbra, astral body or linga-śarīra) hovers over the grave;  
The ghost (manes, animal self or kāma-manas) descends to the underworld (kāma-loka);  
The spirit (spiritus, or inner man freed from its earthy prison) ascends to the stars.]

<sup>3</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (THEORIES ABOUT REINCARNATION AND SPIRITS) VII pp. 198-99

<sup>4</sup> Look up “The Origin of Good and Evil” and “The Original Sin is a Jewish invention,” in our Black versus White Magic Series. — ED. PHIL.

<sup>5</sup> [Not Ether, which is the lining or gross body of Akāśa but *Æther*, Akāśa itself. Consult “Akasha vs. Astral Light,” in our Secret Doctrine’s First Proposition Series, to find out the difference between the two. The distinguishing features of *Æther* and Ether are herein presented overleaf. — ED. PHIL.]

<sup>6</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 135

## Æther and Ether compared and contrasted.<sup>1</sup>

Æther	Ether
Æther is, formless and supernal.	Ether is physical and infernal.
Symbolised by the “fiery waters” of Space, only rudimentally differentiated.	Symbolised by liquid water, <i>i.e.</i> , fully differentiated matter.
Father of the Universe and the all-vivifying Spirit of Cosmic Matter.	Mother of differentiated matter vivified by the Fire of Æther.
Equivalent to the Father-Creator, Zeus or Pater-Æther.	Equivalent to the infernal Serpent-Tempter, the Astral Light of the Kabbalists.
Æther-Fire is the Spirit of Fire, the active male generative principle.	Ether is the Soul of Matter and Light of Fire, the passive female principle, from which everything in this Universe emanates.
Æther-Ākāśa are the fifth and sixth principles of the Body of Kosmos, thus corresponding to Buddhi-Manas in Man.	The Ether of Space is the lowest of the septenate division of Ākāśa-Pradhāna, <i>i.e.</i> , primordial Fire-Substance.
Æther has the same relation to Cosmos and our little Earth, as Manas to the Monad and the Body.	Ether has nought to do with Spirit, but a good deal with subjective matter and our Earth.
Ākāśa is the noumenon of the Cosmic Septenary and synthesis of Æther.	Ether is one of seven Cosmic Principles, and the lining of Ākāśa.
Æther-Chaos-Ākāśa is the Soul of the Universe and noumenon of the Astral Light.	The Astral Light is no “light,” it is the dark side of Ether, teeming with conscious, semi-conscious, and unconscious entities.
Æther is Ākāśa, in its higher aspect.	Ether is Ākāśa in its lowest aspect, cosmic sediment mingling with the highest layer of Astral Light. Beginning with the Fifth Root-Race, it will develop fully only at the beginning of the Fifth Round.
Æther is unevolved Spirit becoming objective matter.	Ether is objective matter rebecoming subjective Spirit, when it eludes our physical senses.



<sup>1</sup> Table excerpted from “Aether and Ether.” Look up this title in our Confusing Words Series. — ED. PHIL.

**The ancients divided the senses into five simply because their teachers stopped at the hearing, as being a sense that became limited at the beginning of the Fifth Race.**

The division of the physical senses into five, comes to us from great antiquity. But while adopting the number, no modern philosopher has asked himself how these senses could exist, *i.e.*, be perceived and used in a self-conscious way, unless there was the *sixth* sense, mental perception to register and record them; and (this for the Metaphysicians and Occultists) the SEVENTH to preserve the spiritual fruition and remembrance thereof, as in a Book of Life which belongs to Karma. The ancients divided the senses into five, simply because their teachers (the Initiates) stopped at the *hearing*, as being that sense which developed in the *physical plane* (got dwarfed rather, limited to this plane) only at the beginning of the Fifth Race. (The Fourth Race already had begun to lose the *spiritual* condition, so pre-eminently developed in the Third Race.)<sup>1</sup>

**As the sixth sense has hardly sprouted above the soil of materiality, few can at present enjoy the legitimate outgrowth and endowments of the higher life.**

As to the 6<sup>th</sup> sense of this, our race, it has hardly sprouted above the soil of its materiality. It is highly unreasonable, therefore, to expect for the men of the 5<sup>th</sup> to sense the nature and essence of that which will be fully *sensed* and perceived but by the 6<sup>th</sup> — let alone the 7<sup>th</sup> race — *i.e.*, to enjoy the legitimate outgrowth of the evolution and endowments of the future races with only the help of our present limited senses. The exceptions to this quasi universal rule have been hitherto found only in some rare cases of constitutional, abnormally precocious individual evolutions; or, in such, where by early training and special methods, reaching the stage of the 5<sup>th</sup> Rounders, some men in addition to the natural gift of the latter have fully developed (by certain occult methods) their sixth, and in still rarer cases their seventh, sense. As an instance of the former class may be cited the Seeress of Prévorst; a creature born *out of time*, a rare precocious growth, ill adapted to the uncongenial atmosphere that surrounded her, hence a martyr ever ailing and sickly. As an example of the other, the Count St. Germain may be mentioned. Apace with the anthropological and physiological development of man runs his spiritual evolution. To the latter, purely intellectual growth is often more an impediment than a help. An instance: Radiant stuff — “the fourth state of matter” — has been hardly discovered, and no one — the eminent discoverer himself not excepted — has yet any idea of its full importance, its possibilities, its connection with physical phenomena, or even its bearing upon the most puzzling scientific problems.<sup>2</sup> How then can any “Adept” attempt to prove the fallacy of much that is predicated in the nebular and solar theories when the only means by which he could successfully prove his position is an appeal to, and the exhibition of, that sixth sense consciousness which the physicist cannot postulate? Is not this plain?<sup>3</sup>

---

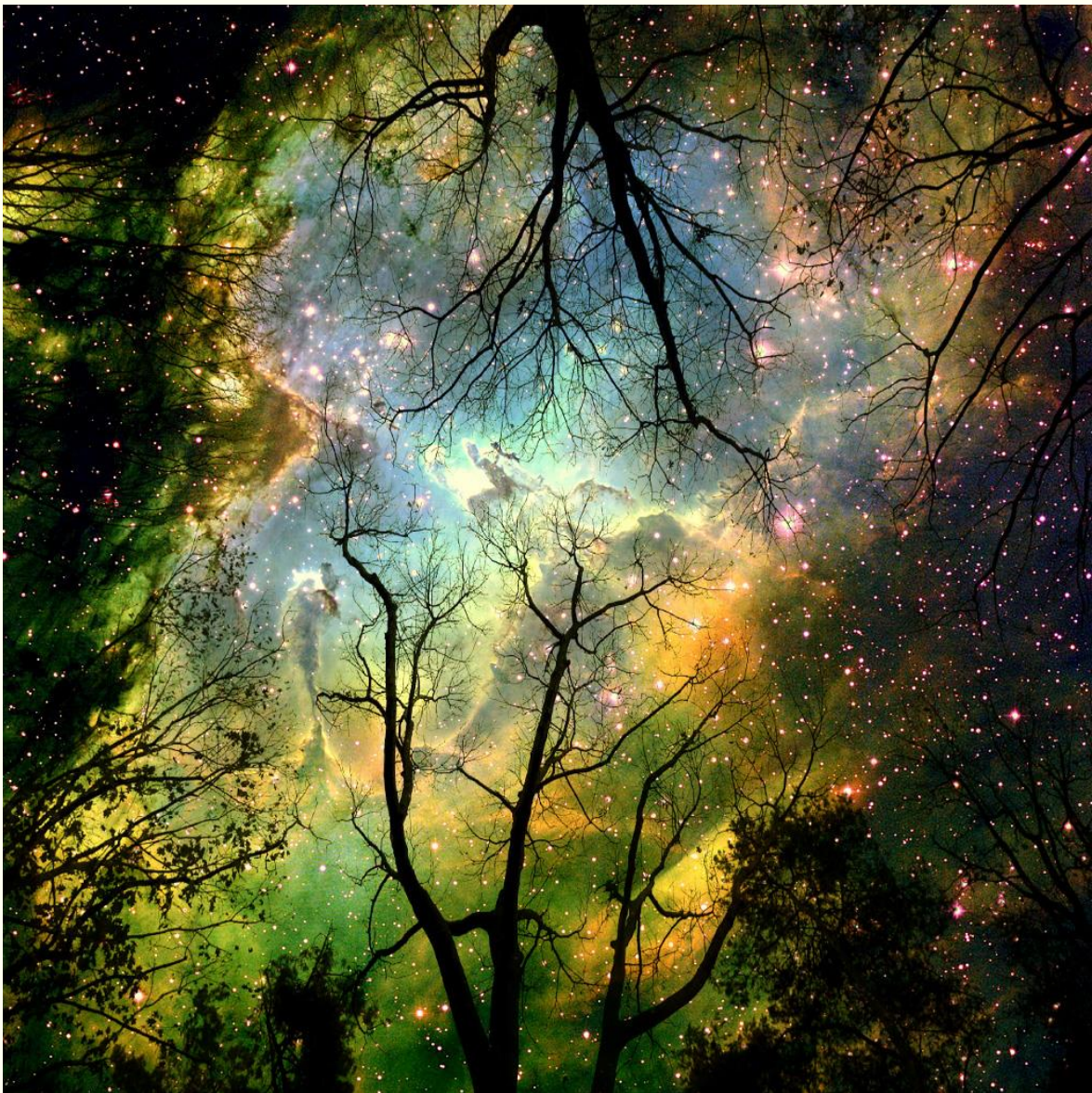
<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, I p. 535 fn.

<sup>2</sup> [See note by Boris de Zirkoff, pp. 264-65, *ibid.*]

<sup>3</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (REPLIES TO AN ENGLISH F.T.S.) V pp. 144-45

**Men of the Fourth Round have now reached the latter half of the Fifth Root-Race. Those of the Fifth Round, though only in their First Root-Race, are immeasurably higher than we are today, spiritually if not intellectually.**

We men of the fourth round are already reaching the latter half of the fifth race of our fourth round humanity, while the men (the few earlier comers) of the fifth round, though only in their first race (or rather class), are yet immeasurably higher than we are — spiritually if not intellectually; since with the completion or full development of this fifth principle (intellectual soul) they have come nearer than we have, are closer in contact with their sixth principle Buddhi. Of course many are the differentiated individuals even in the fourth r. as germs of principles are not equally developed in all, but such is the rule.<sup>1</sup>



---

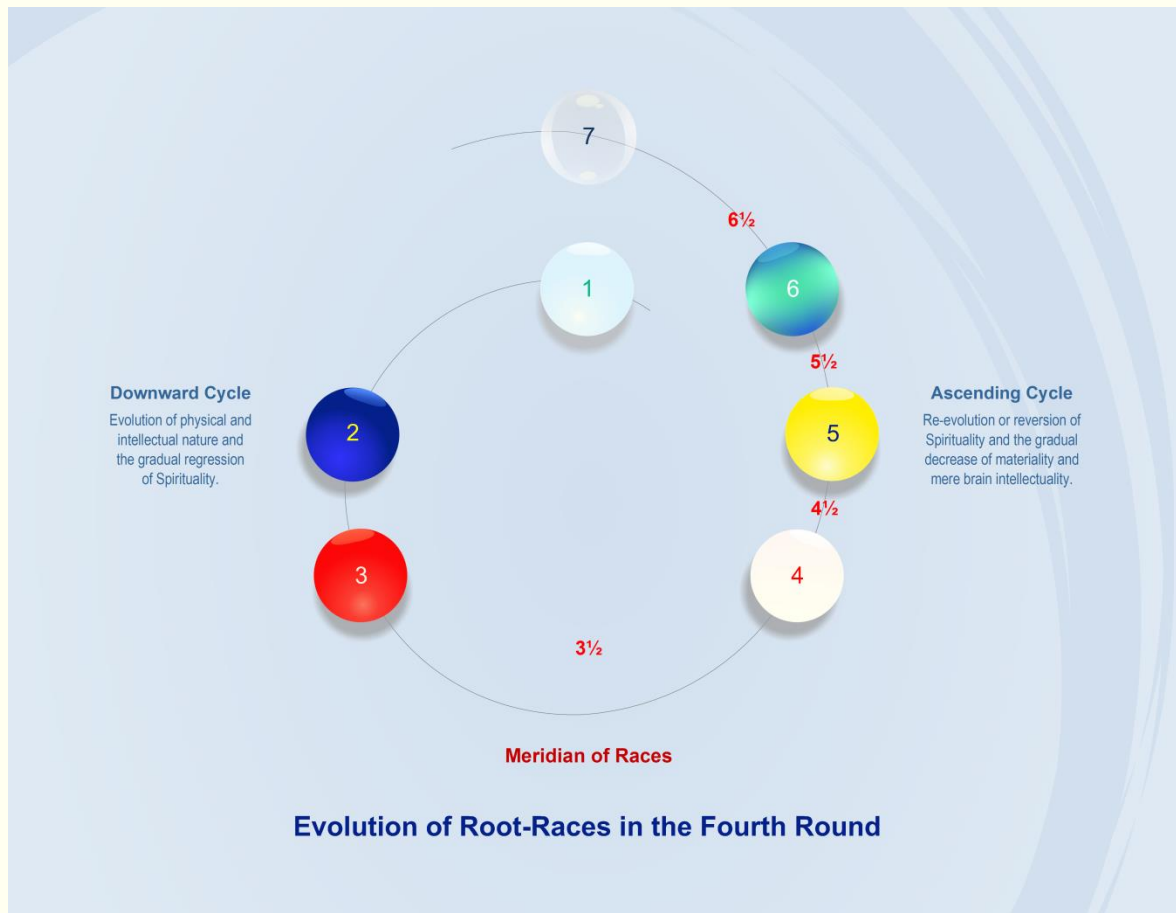
<sup>1</sup> *Mahatma Letter* 15 (67) p. 93; 3<sup>rd</sup> Combined ed.

## Man is the child of Cyclic Necessity.

**Humanity has crossed the meridian of perfect adjustment between spirit and matter, or equilibrium between spiritual perception and brain intellect.**

*We [the Fifth Root-Race] in our first half [of duration] onward [on the now ASCENDING arc of the cycle] are on the mid-point of [or between] the First and the Second Races — falling downward [i.e., the races were then on the descending arc of the cycle]. . . . Calculate for thyself, Lanoo, and see. (Commentary, xx)*

Calculating as advised, we find that during that transitional period — namely, in the second half of the First Spiritual ethero-astral race — nascent mankind was devoid of the intellectual brain element. As it was on its *descending* line, and as we are parallel to it, on the *ascending*, we are, therefore devoid of the Spiritual element, which is now replaced by the intellectual.



For, remember well, as we are in the *mānasa* period of our cycle of races, or in the Fifth, we have, therefore, crossed the meridian point of the perfect adjustment of Spirit and Matter — or that equilibrium between brain intellect and Spiritual perception. One important point has, however, to be borne in mind.

We are only in the Fourth Round, and it is in the Fifth that the full development of *Manas*, as a direct ray from the Universal MAHAT — a ray unimpeded by matter —

will be finally reached. Nevertheless, as every sub-race and nation have their cycles and stages of developmental evolution repeated on a smaller scale, it must be the more so in the case of a Root-Race. Our race then has, as a Root-race, crossed the equatorial line and is cycling onward on the Spiritual side; but some of our sub-races still find themselves on the shadowy descending arc of their respective national cycles; while others again — the oldest — having crossed their crucial point, which alone decides whether a race, a nation, or a tribe will live or perish, are at the apex of spiritual development as sub-races.<sup>1</sup>

**Ether has begun purging the dross of sensuality, and is dawning upwards toward Æther.**

Make a difference between Æther and Ether, the former being divine, the latter physical and *infernal*. Ether is the lowest of the septenate division of Ākāśa-Pradhāna, primordial Fire-Substance. Æther-Ākāśa is the fifth and sixth principles of the body of Kosmos — thus corresponding to Buddhi-Manas, in Man; *Ether* is its Kosmic sediment mingling with the highest layer of the Astral Light. Beginning with the fifth root-race, it will develop fully only at the beginning of the fifth round. Æther is Ākāśa in its higher aspect, and *Ether* Ākāśa, in its lowest. In one sense it is equivalent to the Father-Creator, Zeus, Pater Æther; on the other to the infernal Serpent-Tempter, the Astral Light of the Kabbalists. In the latter case it is fully differentiated matter, in the former only rudimentally differentiated. In other words, Spirit becomes objective matter; and objective matter rebecomes subjective Spirit, when it eludes our meta-physical senses. Æther has the same relation to the Cosmos and our little Earth, as Manas to the Monad and body. Therefore, Ether has nought to do with Spirit, but a good deal, with subjective matter and our Earth.<sup>2</sup>

**Though the earthly spirit of the Fourth Race is still strong in us, we are approaching the time when the pendulum of evolution will direct its swing decidedly upwards, bringing us back on a parallel line with the primitive Third Root-Race in Spirituality.**

“When the seed of the animal man is cast into the soil of the animal woman, that seed cannot germinate unless it has been fructified by the five virtues [the fluid of, or the emanation from, the principles] of the six-fold Heavenly man. Wherefore the Microcosm is represented as a Pentagon, within the Hexagon Star, the Macrocosm.”<sup>3</sup>  
. . . Mankind in its first prototypal, shadowy form, is the offspring of the Elōhīm of Life (or Pitris); in its qualitative and physical aspect it is the direct progeny of the “Ancestors,” the lowest Dhyānis, or Spirits of the Earth; for its moral, psychic, and spiritual nature, it is indebted to a group of divine Beings, the name and characteristics of which will be given in Volume II. Collectively, men are the handiwork of hosts of various spirits; distributively, the tabernacles of those hosts; and occasionally and singly, the vehicles of some of them. In our present all-material Fifth Race, the earthly Spirit of the Fourth is still strong in us; but we are approaching the time when the pendulum of evolution will direct its swing decidedly upwards, bringing Humanity

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 300-1

<sup>2</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (TRANSACTIONS OF THE BLAVATSKY LODGE – IX) X p. 384; [on what relation does Ether stand to Spirit and Matter.]

<sup>3</sup> Ἀνθρώπος [Man], a work on Occult Embryology, Bk. I



back on a parallel line with the primitive Third Root-Race in Spirituality. During its childhood, mankind was composed wholly of that Angelic Host, who were the indwelling Spirits that animated the monstrous and gigantic tabernacles of clay of the Fourth Race — built by (as they are now also), and composed of, countless myriads of lives.<sup>1</sup> This sentence will be explained later on in the present *Commentary*. The “tabernacles” have improved in texture and symmetry of form, growing and developing with the globe that bore them; but the physical improvement took place at the expense of the spiritual inner man and nature. The three middle principles in earth and man became with every race more material; the Soul stepping back to make room for the physical intellect; the essence of elements becoming the material and composite elements now known.<sup>2</sup>

**The formation of the next subrace has already begun in America.**

Since the beginning of the Atlantean Race many million years have passed, yet we find the last of the Atlanteans, still mixed up with the Āryan element, 11,000 years ago. This shows the enormous overlapping of one race over the race which succeeds it, though in character and external type the elder loses its characteristics, and assumes the new features of the younger race. This is proved in all the formations of mixed human races. Now, Occult philosophy teaches that even now, under our very eyes, the new Race and [sub] Races are preparing to be formed, and that it is in America that the transformation will take place, and has already silently commenced.

Pure Anglo-Saxons hardly three hundred years ago, the Americans of the United States have already become a nation apart, and, owing to a strong admixture of various nationalities and inter-marriage, almost a race *sui generis*, not only mentally, but also physically . . .

**Americans are the germs of the last two subraces of the Fifth Root-Race, in preparation for the emergence of the Sixth.**

Thus the Americans have become in only three centuries a “primary race,” *pro tem.*, before becoming a race apart, and strongly separated from all other now existing races. They are, in short, the germs of the *Sixth* sub-race, and in some few hundred years more, will become most decidedly the pioneers of that race which must succeed to the present European or fifth sub-race, in all its new characteristics. After this, in about 25,000 years, they will launch into preparations for the seventh sub-race; until, in consequence of cataclysms — the first series of those which must one day destroy Europe, and still later the whole Āryan race (and thus affect both Americas), as also most of the lands directly connected with the confines of our continent and isles — the Sixth Root-Race will have appeared on the stage of our Round. When shall this be? Who knows save the great Masters of Wisdom, perchance, and they are as silent upon the subject as the snow-capped peaks that tower above them. All we know is,

---

<sup>1</sup> Science, dimly perceiving the truth, may find bacteria and other infinitesimals in the human body, and see in them but occasional and abnormal visitors to which diseases are attributed. Occultism — which discerns a life in every atom and molecule, whether in a mineral or human body, in air, fire or water — affirms that our whole body is built of such lives, the smallest bacteria under the microscope being to them in comparative size like an elephant to the tiniest infusoria.

<sup>2</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, I pp. 224-25; [Look up also Appendices A to D.]

that it will silently come into existence; so silently, indeed, that for long millenniums shall its pioneers — the peculiar children who will grow into peculiar men and women — be regarded as anomalous *lusus naturæ*, abnormal oddities physically and mentally. Then, as they increase, and their numbers become with every age greater, one day they will awake to find themselves in a majority. It is the present men who will then begin to be regarded as exceptional mongrels, until these die out in their turn in civilised lands; surviving only in small groups on islands — the mountain peaks of today — where they will vegetate, degenerate, and finally die out, perhaps millions of years hence, as the Aztecs have, as the Nyam-Nyam and the dwarfish Mūla-Kurumba of the Nilgiri Hills are dying. All these are the remnants of once mighty races, the recollection of whose existence has entirely died out of the remembrance of the modern generations, just as we shall vanish from the memory of the Sixth Race Humanity. The Fifth will overlap the Sixth Race for many hundreds of millenniums, changing with it slower than its new successor, still changing in stature, general physique, and mentality, just as the Fourth overlapped our Āryan race, and the Third had overlapped the Atlanteans.

**Global submersions and destructions by wave and volcanic fire will spell the end of our Fifth Race. But when the Sixth Race commences there will be no more Americans.**

This process of preparation for the Sixth great Race must last throughout the whole sixth and seventh sub-races (*vide supra*, the diagram of the Genealogical Tree of the Fifth Race).<sup>1</sup> But the *last* remnants of the Fifth Continent will not disappear until sometime after the birth of the *new* Race; when another and *new* dwelling, the sixth continent, will have appeared above the *new* waters on the face of the globe, so as to receive the new stranger. To it also will emigrate and settle all those who shall be fortunate enough to escape the general disaster. When this shall be — as just said — it is not for the writer to know. Only, as nature no more proceeds by sudden jumps and starts, than man changes suddenly from a child into a mature man, the final cataclysm will be preceded by many smaller submersions and destructions both by wave and volcanic fires. The exultant pulse will beat high in the heart of the race now in the American zone, but there will be no more Americans when the Sixth Race commences; no more, in fact, than Europeans; for they will have now become a *new race*, and many new nations. Yet the Fifth will not die, but survive for a while: overlapping the new Race for many hundred thousands of years to come, it will become transformed with it — slower than its new successor — still getting entirely altered in mentality, general physique, and stature. Mankind will not grow again into giant bodies as in the case of the Lemurians and the Atlanteans; because while the evolution of the Fourth Race led the latter down to the very bottom of materiality in its physical development, the present Race is on its ascending arc; and the Sixth will be rapidly growing out of its bonds of matter, and even of flesh.

---

<sup>1</sup> [Cf. "Drawing 4. Humanity's Fifth Root-Race," from our Planetary Rounds and Globes Series, presented above. — ED. PHIL.]

**Man is the child of Cyclic Destiny. Cycles of Materiality will be succeeded by Cycles of Spirituality, and fully developed faculties will open up the sixth sense. The majority of future men will be glorious Adepts.**

Thus it is the mankind of the New world — one by far the senior of our Old one, a fact men had also forgotten — of *Pātāla* (the Antipodes, or the Nether World, as America is called in India), whose mission and Karma it is, to sow the seeds for a forthcoming, grander, and far more glorious Race than any of those we know of at present [the Fifth]. The Cycles of Matter will be succeeded by Cycles of Spirituality and a fully developed mind. On the law of parallel history and races, the majority of the future mankind will be composed of glorious Adepts. Humanity is the child of cyclic Destiny, and not one of its Units can escape its unconscious mission, or get rid of the burden of its co-operative work with nature. Thus will mankind, race after race, perform its appointed cycle-pilgrimage. Climates will, and have already begun, to change, each tropical year<sup>1</sup> after the other dropping one sub-race, but only to beget another higher race on the ascending cycle; while a series of other less favoured groups — the failures of nature — will, like some individual men, vanish from the human family without even leaving a trace behind.

Such is the course of Nature under the sway of KARMIC LAW: of the ever present and the ever-becoming Nature. For, in the words of a Sage, known only to a few Occultists:

THE PRESENT IS THE CHILD OF THE PAST; THE FUTURE, THE BEGOTTEN OF THE PRESENT. AND YET, O PRESENT MOMENT! KNOWEST THOU NOT THAT THOU HAST NO PARENT, NOR CANST THOU HAVE A CHILD; THAT THOU ART EVER BEGETTING BUT THYSELF? BEFORE THOU HAST EVEN BEGUN TO SAY "I AM THE PROGENY OF THE DEPARTED MOMENT, THE CHILD OF THE PAST," THOU HAST BECOME THAT PAST ITSELF. BEFORE THOU UTTEREST THE LAST SYLLABLE, BEHOLD! THOU ART NO MORE THE PRESENT BUT VERILY THAT FUTURE. THUS, ARE THE PAST, THE PRESENT, AND THE FUTURE, THE EVER-LIVING TRINITY IN ONE — THE MAHĀMĀYĀ OF THE ABSOLUTE IS.<sup>2</sup>

**Unfortunately, the mind of the present generation is not ready to receive occult truths. Such will be the privilege of the advanced thinkers of the Sixth Root-Race.**

It is barely possible that the minds of the present generations are not quite ripe for the reception of Occult truths. Such will be the retrospect furnished to the advanced thinkers of the Sixth Root-Race of the history of the acceptance of Esoteric Philosophy — fully and unconditionally. Meanwhile the generations of our Fifth Race will continue to be led away by prejudice and preconceptions. Occult Sciences will have the finger of scorn pointed at them from every street-corner, and everyone will seek to ridicule and crush them in the name, and for the greater glory, of Materialism and

---

<sup>1</sup> [Note 21 by Boris de Zirkoff, (pp. 446 & 505): H.P. Blavatsky uses the term *Tropical Year* in the same way as the term *Sidereal Year*, meaning the Precessional Cycle of 25,900 ordinary years (at times given as 25,868 years). This should be clearly kept in mind, to avoid a possible confusion with the present-day astronomical term *tropical year* which means the interval between two successive returns of the sun to the vernal equinox. Its length is 365 days, 5 hours, 48 minutes, 46.0 seconds (or 365.24220 days) of mean solar time; it is now diminishing at the rate of 0.53 seconds a century. It is the year of the seasons, the ordinary year to which the calendar must conform. Owing to the westward precession of the equinox, the tropical year is twenty minutes shorter than the sidereal year.]

<sup>2</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 444-46

its so-called Science. . . . The Theosophists and Occultists stand arraigned by public opinion, which still holds high the banner of the inductive Sciences.<sup>1</sup>

**The Rays of the Divine Monad are not destined to become wholly self-conscious and self-dependant entities in this Round, before the Last Root-Race in the Last Round of this Manvantara.**

We now come to an important point with regard to the double evolution of the human race. The Sons of Wisdom, or the *spiritual* Dhyānis, had become “intellectual” through their contact with matter, because they had already reached, during previous cycles of incarnation, that degree of intellect which enabled them to become independent and self-conscious entities, *on this plane* of matter. They were reborn only by reason of Karmic effects. They *entered* those who were “ready,” and became the Arhats, or *sages*, alluded to above. This needs explanation.

**The entrance into a dark room through the same aperture of one ray of sunlight following another will not constitute two rays, but one ray intensified.**

It does not mean that *Monads* entered forms in which other *Monads* already were. They were “Essences,” “Intelligences,” and *conscious spirits*; entities seeking to become still more conscious by uniting with more developed matter. Their essence was too pure to be distinct from the universal essence; but their “Egos,” or *Manas* (since they are called *Mānasaputra*, born of “Mahat,” or *Brahmā*) had to pass through earthly human experiences to become *all-wise*, and be able to start on the returning ascending cycle. The *Monads* are not *discrete* principles, limited or conditioned, but rays from that one universal *absolute* Principle. The entrance into a dark room through the same aperture of one ray of sunlight following another will not constitute *two* rays, but one ray intensified. It is not in the course of natural law that man should become a *perfect* septenary being, before the seventh race in the seventh Round. Yet he has all these principles latent in him from his birth. Nor is it part of the evolutionary law that the Fifth principle (*Manas*), should receive its complete development before the *Fifth* Round. All such prematurely developed intellects (on the *spiritual* plane) in our Race are *abnormal*; they are those whom we call the “Fifth-Rounders.”

**Even in the coming Seventh Root-Race, at the close of the Fourth Round, while our four lower principles will be fully developed that of Manas will be only proportionately so.**

This limitation, however, refers solely to the spiritual development. The intellectual, on the physical plane, was reached during the Fourth Root-Race. Thus, those who were “half ready,” who received “but a spark,” constitute the average humanity which has to acquire its intellectuality during the present Manvantaric evolution, after which they will be ready in the next for the full reception of the “Sons of Wisdom.” While those which “were not ready” at all, the latest *Monads*, which had hardly evolved from their last transitional and lower animal forms at the close of the Third Round, remained the “narrow-brained” of the Stanza. This explains the otherwise unaccountable degrees of intellectuality among the various races of men — the sav-

---

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, I p. 298

age Bushman and the European — even now. Those tribes of savages, whose reasoning powers are very little above the level of the animals, are not the unjustly disinherited, or the *unfavoured*, as some may think — nothing of the kind. They are simply those *latest arrivals* among the human Monads, which *were not ready*: which have to evolve during the present Round, as on the three remaining globes (hence on four different planes of being) so as to arrive at the level of the average class when they reach the Fifth Round. One remark may prove useful, as food for thought to the student in this connection. The MONADS of the lowest specimens of humanity (the “narrow-brained” savage South-Sea Islander, the African, the Australian) *had no Karma to work out when first born as men, as their more favoured brethren in intelligence had*. The former are spinning out Karma only now; the latter are burdened with past, present, and future Karma. In this respect the poor savage is more fortunate than the greatest genius of *civilised countries*.<sup>1</sup>



### **Bhaumika or Earthly Manvantara (Drawing).**

There now follows a drawing from our Planetary Rounds and Globes Series. — ED. PHIL.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 167-68



In Bhaumika Manvantara every Root-Race is separated by a catastrophe, a cataclysm (Cf BCW V 163) — a kind of minor pralaya. Ever-recurring cataclysms by fire and water close the cycle of every Root-Race. (Cf SD II 307 fn & 309)

When a globe of a planetary chain goes into "obscuration" [or dormancy, so that Humanity can rest between two planets] every quality, including heat, retires from it and it remains in statu quo, like the "sleeping Beauty," until Fohat, the "Prince Charmant," awakens it with a kiss. (Cf BCW X 393)

Mankind, from the First down to the last, or Seventh Race, is composed of one and the same company of actors, who have descended from higher spheres to perform their artistic tour on this our planet, Earth. Starting as pure spirits on our downward journey around the world (verily!) with the knowledge of truth — now feebly echoed in the Occult Doctrines — inherent in us, cyclic law brings us down to the reversed apex of matter, which is lost down here on earth and the bottom of which we have already struck; and then, the same law of spiritual gravity will make us slowly as-cend to still higher, still purer spheres than those we started from. (BCW XIV 303)

Root-Race duration in this Round, here on Earth. (BCW XIII 304)

Integrative Theosophical Studies

**BHAUMIKA OR EARTHLY MANVANTARA**

Human Period of Activity on Planet Earth (Globe D) in this, our Fourth Round, inaugurated by Manu Vaivasvata. It consists of seven distinct Root-Races which are outside purely anthropological division.

[www.philaletheians.co.uk](http://www.philaletheians.co.uk)  
Revision 10.12

Race 1	1,574,344
Race 2	3,148,688
Race 3	4,723,032
Race 4	6,297,376
Race 5	7,871,720
Race 6	9,446,064
Race 7	11,020,408
<b>Total</b>	<b>44,081,632</b>

## Sixth Root-Race: The Enlightened

**Having lost spirituality in favour of physical development at the close of the Fourth Root-Race, we are now gradually but imperceptibly losing physicality until the Sixth Race will be on a par with the spirituality of the Second, the long extinct prehistoric race. Then, all human iniquities will have vanished into endless space, and ether into Æther.**

The whole range of physical phenomena proceed from the *Primary* of Ether — Ākāśa, as dual-natured Ākāśa proceeds from undifferentiated *Chaos*, so-called, the latter being the primary *aspect* of Mūlaprakriti, the root-matter and the first abstract Idea one can form of Parabrahman. Modern Science may divide its hypothetically conceived ether in as many ways as it likes; the *real* Æther of Space will remain as it is throughout. It has its seven principles, as all the rest of nature has, and where there was no Ether *there would be no sound*, as it is the vibrating sound-board in nature in all of its seven differentiations. This is the first mystery the Initiates of old have learned. Our present normal physical senses were (from our present point of view) abnormal in those days of slow and progressive downward evolution and fall into matter. And there was a day when all that which in our modern times is regarded as phenomena, so puzzling to the physiologists now compelled to believe in them — such as thought transference, clairvoyance, clairaudience, etc.; in short, all that which is called now “wonderful and abnormal” — all that and much more belonged to the senses and faculties common to all humanity. We are, however, cycling back and cycling forward; *i.e.*, having lost in spirituality that which we acquired in physical development until almost the end of the Fourth Race, we (mankind) are as gradually and imperceptibly losing now in the physical all that we regain once more in the spiritual *re*-evolution. This process must go on until the period which will bring the Sixth Root-Race on a parallel line with the spirituality of the Second, long extinct mankind.<sup>1</sup>

**The first Five Root-Races are symbolised by a five-faced Shiva who, in the Sixth, will be called the six-faced or six-pointed star.**

Pañchānana (*Sk.*). “Five-faced,” a title of Śiva; an allusion to the five races (since the beginning of the *first*) which he represents, as the ever reincarnating Kumāra throughout the Manvantara. In the sixth root-race he will be called the “six-faced.”<sup>2</sup> . . . the six-pointed star [symbolises] the coming sixth Race which, as the Secret Doctrine teaches us, will



<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, I pp. 536-37

<sup>2</sup> *Theosophical Glossary*: Pañchānana

originate in America.<sup>1</sup>

**Toward the beginning of the next Root-Race man will finally come of age, and many of the hitherto secret knowledge will become common knowledge.**

Occult philosophy divulges few of its most important vital mysteries. It drops them like precious pearls, one by one, far and wide apart, and only when forced to do so by the evolutionary tidal wave that carries on humanity on slowly, silently, but steadily toward the dawn of the Sixth-Race mankind. For once out of the safe custody of their legitimate heirs and keepers, those mysteries cease to be occult: they fall into the public domain and have to run the risk of becoming in the hands of the selfish — of the *Cains* of the human race — curses more often than blessings.<sup>2</sup>

Secrets of [Nature] could not be given to anyone but a regular chela of many years' standing and during his successive initiations; mankind as a whole has first to come of age, to reach its majority, which will happen but toward the beginning of its sixth race — before such mysteries can be safely revealed to it.<sup>3</sup>

**The last subrace of the Sixth Root-Race will be flourishing on top of old "Lemuria" and "Atlantis," the continents of which will have resurfaced by then. The British Isles will be no more as they are the first part of Europe to be destroyed by submarine volcanos and water; France and other lands will follow suit.**

Of course your Science is right in many of her generalities, but her premises are wrong, or at any rate — very faulty. For instance she is right in saying that while the new America was forming, the ancient Atlantis was sinking and gradually washing away; but she is neither right in her given epochs nor in the calculations of the duration of that sinking. The latter — is the future fate of your British Islands, the first on the list of victims that have to be destroyed by fire (submarine volcanos) and water;<sup>4</sup> France and other lands will follow suit. When they reappear again, the last seventh Sub-race of the sixth Root race of present mankind will be flourishing on "Lemuria" and "Atlantis" both of which will have reappeared also (their reappearance following immediately the disappearance of the present isles and continents), and very few seas and *great waters* will be found then on our globe, waters as well as land appearing and disappearing and shifting periodically and each in turn.<sup>5</sup>



<sup>1</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings* (LITERARY JOTTINGS – A THEOSOPHICAL SCULPTOR) X p. 240; [on a medallion made by Josepha North, F.T.S., Aryan Branch of New York.]

<sup>2</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, I p. 558

<sup>3</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings* (REPLY TO AN ENGLISH F.T.S.) V p. 143 *fn.*

<sup>4</sup> [Cf. "Every Sidereal Year the tropics recede from the pole *four degrees* in each revolution from the equinoctial points, as the equator rounds through the Zodiacal constellations. Now, as every astronomer knows, at present the tropic is only twenty-three degrees and a fraction less than half a degree from the equator. Hence it has still 2½ degrees to run before the end of the Sidereal year; which gives humanity in general, and our civilized races in *particular*, a reprieve of about 16,000 years." *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 331]

<sup>5</sup> *Mahatma Letter* 23b (93b) pp. 152-53; 3<sup>rd</sup> Combined ed.



## The so-called “fourth dimension of space” is the sixth characteristic of matter and harbinger of the sixth sense.

**Water, one of four primordial Elements, was transmitted to us by the Fourth Root-Race, as we shall transmit Æther, the Fifth Element, to the Sixth. Then our sixth sense shall be awakened.**

Now *Wind, Air* and *Spirit* have ever been synonymous with every nation. *Pneuma* (Spirit) and *Anemos* (wind) with the Greeks, *Spiritus* and *Ventus* with the Latins, were convertible terms even if dissociated from the original idea of the breath of life. In the “Forces” of Science we see but the *material effect of the spiritual affect* of one or the other of the four primordial Elements, transmitted to us by the 4<sup>th</sup> Race, as we shall transmit Æther (or rather the gross subdivision of it) in its fullness to the Sixth Root Race.<sup>1</sup>

**“The fourth dimension” is an unfortunate verbalism. Space and time are often viewed outside mental perceptions and experiences rather as what they truly are, fanciful generalizations of lower minds. Giving reality to abstractions is an error of realism.**

The Second Round brought forth and developed two Elements — Fire and Earth — and *its* humanity, adapted to this condition of Nature, if we can give the name Humanity to beings living under conditions unknown to men, was — to use again a familiar phrase in a strictly figurative sense (the only way in which it can be used correctly) — “a two-dimensional species.” The processes of natural development which we are now considering will at once elucidate and discredit the fashion of speculating on the attributes of the *two, three, and four* or more “dimensional Space”; but in passing, it is worthwhile to point out the real significance of the sound but incomplete intuition that has prompted — among Spiritualists and Theosophists, and several great men of Science, for the matter of that<sup>2</sup> — the use of the modern expression, “the fourth dimension of Space.” To begin with, of course, the superficial absurdity of assuming that Space itself is measurable in any direction is of little consequence. The familiar phrase can only be an abbreviation of the fuller form — the “*Fourth dimension of MATTER in Space.*”<sup>3</sup> But it is an unhappy phrase even thus expanded, because while it is perfectly true that the progress of evolution may be destined to introduce us to new characteristics of matter, those with which we are already familiar are really more numerous than the three dimensions.<sup>4</sup>



---

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, I p. 342

<sup>2</sup> Professor Zöllner's theory has been more than welcomed by several Scientists — who are Spiritualists — Professors Butlerof and Wagner, of St. Petersburg, for instance.

<sup>3</sup> “The giving reality to Abstractions is the error of Realism. Space and Time are frequently viewed as separated from all the concrete experiences of the mind, instead of being generalizations of these in certain aspects.” (Bain, *Logic*, Part II, p. 389; 1873 ed.)

<sup>4</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, I p. 251

**The next characteristic of matter or “permeability” (spiritual sight) will correspond to the sixth sense, that of “normal clairvoyance,” for any perception must be related to senses. Then, those who have been seeking a “fourth dimension” to explain the passage of matter through matter shall find what they sought, the sixth characteristic of matter.**

The faculties, or what is perhaps the best available term, the characteristics of matter, must clearly bear a direct relation always to the senses of man. Matter has extension, colour, motion (molecular motion), taste, and smell, corresponding to the existing senses of man, and by the time that it fully develops the next characteristic — let us call it for the moment PERMEABILITY — this will correspond to the next sense of man — let us call it “NORMAL CLAIRVOYANCE”; thus, when some bold thinkers have been thirsting for a fourth dimension to explain the passage of matter through matter, and the production of knots upon an endless cord, what they were really in want of, was a *sixth characteristic of matter*.

**Since the three dimensions (length–breadth–thickness) belong but to one characteristic of matter (extension), common sense justly rebels against the suggestion that there can be more than three.**

The three dimensions belong really but to one attribute or characteristic of matter — extension; and popular common sense justly rebels against the idea that under any condition of things there can be more than three of such dimensions as length, breadth, and thickness. These terms, and the term “dimension” itself, all belong to one plane of thought, to one stage of evolution, to one characteristic of matter. So long as there are foot rules within the resources of Kosmos, to apply to matter, so long will they be able to measure it three ways and no more; and from the time the idea of measurement first occupied a place in the human understanding, it has been possible to apply measurement in three directions and no more. But these considerations do not militate in any way against the certainty that in the progress of time — as the faculties of humanity are multiplied — so will the characteristics of matter be multiplied also. Meanwhile, the expression is far more incorrect than even the familiar one of the “Sun rising or setting.”<sup>1</sup>

**Normal, spiritual clairvoyance is the opposite of psychic; the latter is abnormal and counterfeit.**

Spiritual clairvoyance is derived from the Sun; all psychic states, diseases, and even lunacy, proceed from the Moon.<sup>2</sup>

Clairvoyance [is] the faculty of seeing with the inner eye or spiritual sight. As now used it is a loose and flippant term, embracing under its meaning a happy guess due to natural shrewdness or intuition, and also that faculty which was so remarkably exercised by Jacob Boehme and Swedenborg. Real clairvoyance means the faculty of seeing through the densest matter (the latter disappearing at the will and before the

---

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, I pp. 251-52

<sup>2</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (FACTS UNDERLYING ADEPT BIOGRAPHIES) XIV pp. 142-43

spiritual eye of the Seer), and irrespective of time (past, present and future) or distance.<sup>1</sup>

At the close of our Race, people, it is said, through suffering and discontent, will become more spiritual. Clairvoyance will become a general faculty. We shall be approaching the spiritual state of the Third and Second Races.<sup>2</sup>

**The Third Eye<sup>3</sup> or Eye of Dangma of the stanzas of Dzyan will open again, and the minds of those who will live at that time shall be awakened and become as pellucid as crystal.**

For further information and commentaries, see Appendices A to D. — ED. PHIL.



---

<sup>1</sup> *Theosophical Glossary*: Clairvoyance

<sup>2</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (CYCLES AND AVATĀRAS) XIV p. 356 fn. [on *Vishnu-Purāna*, IV, ch. xxiv, 228-29; tr. Wilson]

<sup>3</sup> [Synonymous terms by ED. PHIL

Cyclopean Eye, Deva Eye (Devāksha), Dhyāni-Chohans (generic name for the creative powers of the Hierarchy of Compassion), Eye of Śiva, Hanōkh or Hermes (son of Seth and generic name of early seers), Initiator's Instructor, Inner Eye or Seer, Seth or Agathodaimōn (progenitor of the Third Race), Voice of the Silence.

While Buddhi is wedded to Ātman, man's spiritual energy remains dormant. If galvanized by the essence of Manas, Buddhi awakens and becomes an active, irresistible centre of spiritual force and guidance.]

## Seventh Root-Race: Immortal Gods

**By the middle of the Seventh Root-Race, the struggle between the two Opposing Powers (Buddhi and Kama-Manas, on our plane) will have almost died out. Everything that is irredeemably sinful and wicked will have been eliminated. What may have survived will be swept away by Karmic tidal-waves in the shape of scavenger-plagues, geological convulsions, and other means of destruction.**

And then, *men will arise from the dead* and immortality come.<sup>1</sup>

Now the latter is of course purely allegorical. It stands in the occult sense, that materialism and sin being called death, the materialist, or the unbeliever, is “a dead man” — spiritually. Occultism has never regarded the physical personality as *the* man; nor has Paul, if his *Epistle to the Romans* (vi-vii), is correctly understood. Thus mankind, arrived “at the appointed time” (the end of our present *Round*), at the end of the cycle of gross material flesh, will, with certain bodily changes, have come to a clearer spiritual perception of the truth. Redemption from flesh means a proportionate redemption from sin. Many are those who *seeing will believe*, and, in consequence, *rise “from the dead.”* By the middle of the Seventh Race, says an occult prophecy, the struggle of the two conflicting Powers (*Buddhi* and *Kama-Manas*) will have almost died out. Everything that is irredeemably sinful and wicked, cruel and destructive, will have been eliminated, and that which is found to survive will be swept away from being, owing, so to speak, to a Karmic tidal-wave in the shape of scavenger-plagues, geological convulsions and other means of destruction. The Fifth Round will bring forth a higher kind of Humanity; and, as intelligent Nature always proceeds gradually, the last Race of this Round must necessarily develop the needed materials thereof. Meanwhile, we are still in the Fifth Race of the Fourth Round only, and in the *Kaliyuga*, into the bargain. The deadly strife between spirit and matter, between Light and Goodness and Darkness and Evil, began on our globe with the first appearance of contrasts and opposites in vegetable and animal nature, and continued more fiercely than ever after man had become the selfish and personal being *he now is*. Nor is there any chance of its coming to an end before falsehood is replaced by truth, selfishness by altruism, and supreme justice reigns in the heart of man. Till then, the noisy battle will rage unabated. It is selfishness, especially; the love of *Self* above all things in heaven and earth, helped by human vanity, which is the begetter of the seven mortal sins. No; Ashmogh, the cruel “biped serpent,” is not so easily reduced. Before the poor creature now in the clutches of Darkness is liberated through Light, it has to know itself. Man, following the Delphic injunction, has to become acquainted with, and gain the mastery over, every nook and corner of his heterogeneous na-

---

<sup>1</sup> *Zamyād Yasht*, xix, 89 *et seq.*

ture, before he can learn to discriminate between HIMSELF and his *personality*. To accomplish this difficult task, two conditions are absolutely requisite: one must have thoroughly realised in practice the noble Zoroastrian precept: “Good thoughts, good words, good deeds,” and must have impressed them indelibly on his soul and heart, not merely as a lip-utterance and form-observance. Above all, one has to crush *personal vanity* beyond resurrection.<sup>1</sup>

**The Adept in charge of the Seventh Root-Race will be the future Planetary Spirit, a Dhyani-Chohan who shall instruct the First Root-Race of the Fifth Round after the scheduled obscuration of our planet.**

Every race had its adepts; and with every new race, we are allowed to give them out as much of our knowledge as the men of that race deserve. The last seventh Race will have its Buddha as every one of its predecessors had; but, its adepts will be far higher than any of the present race, for among them will abide the future Planetary, the Dhyāni-Chohan whose duty it will be to instruct or “refresh the memory” of the first race of the fifth Round men after this planet’s future obscuration.<sup>2</sup>

**He will appear as Maitreya-Buddha, the last of Avatars and Buddhas.**

The great Dragon of Wisdom is born of Fire and Water, and into Fire and Water will all be re-absorbed with him.<sup>3</sup>

As this Bodhisattva is said “to assume any form he pleases” from the beginning of a Manvantara to its end, though his special birthday (memorial day) is celebrated according to the *Chin-kuang ming Ching* (“Luminous Sūtra of Golden Light”) in the second month on the nineteenth day, and that of “Maitreya Buddha”<sup>4</sup> in the first month on the first day, yet the two are one. He will appear as Maitreya-Buddha, the last of the Avatāras and Buddhas, in the seventh Race. This belief and expectation are universal throughout the East. Only it is not in the *Kali-yuga*, our present terrifically materialistic age of Darkness, the “Black Age,” that a new Saviour of Humanity can ever appear.<sup>5</sup>

**Each Root-Race is a new “birth” or transformation of the same company of actors, one of seven keynotes for many a subsequent birth in subraces, each carrying the Divine Monad higher and higher until it reaches the Seventh Race.**

When Mr. Sinnett’s *Esoteric Buddhism*, and “Fragments of Occult Truth” are read and comprehended, it will be easy to understand that the “seven births” or transfor-

<sup>1</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (DEVIL’S OWN THOUGHTS ON ORMUZD AND AHRIMAN) XIII, pp. 128-29

<sup>2</sup> *Mahatma Letter* 23b (93b) p. 154; 3<sup>rd</sup> Combined ed.

<sup>3</sup> *John* i, 3, 4

<sup>4</sup> [Cf. “Chagpa-Thog-med is the Tibetan name of Āryāsanga, the founder of the Yogacharyā or Naljorchoedpa School. This Sage and Initiate is said to have been taught ‘Wisdom’ by Maitreya Buddha Himself, the Buddha of the Sixth Race, at Tushita (a celestial region presided over by Him), and as having received from Him the five books of *Champai-chos-nga*. The Secret Doctrine teaches, however, that he came from Dejung, or Śambhala, called the ‘source of happiness’ (‘wisdom-acquired’) and declared by some Orientalists to be a ‘fabulous’ place.” *Blavatsky Collected Writings* (“DOCTRINE OF EYE” AND “DOCTRINE OF HEART”) XIV p. 451 *fn.*]

<sup>5</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, I p. 470; [on Kuan-shih-yin and Kuan-yin. Look up “Kali-Yuga and the Kalki-Avatara,” in our Buddhas and Initiates Series. — ED. PHIL.]

mations refer to the seven births in the *seven root races*. Every such birth being the keynote struck for other and subsequent births in sub-races, each keynote resounding in a higher key than the preceding one on the scale of tones; or, in other words, every new *root-birth* carrying the individuality higher and higher until it reaches the *seventh root-race*, which will bring man finally to the highest, eternal Buddhahood or “Brahma Garbha” in a degree corresponding to that he will have acquired by his enlightenment during his lives on earth.<sup>1</sup>

**Men who will be thus transformed by virtue at the end of our Kali Age of Darkness shall be the seeds of future human beings, and shall give birth to the ultimate race that, following the laws of the Krita Age of Purity, will be born of immaculate parents.**

The *Veda* of the earliest Āryans, before it was written, went forth into every nation of the Atlanto-Lemurians, and sowed the first seeds of all the now existing old religions. The off-shoots of the never dying tree of wisdom have scattered their dead leaves even on Judæo-Christianity. And at the end of the Kali, our present age, Vishnu or the “Everlasting King” will appear as Kalki, and re-establish righteousness upon earth. The minds of those who live at that time shall be awakened, and become as pellucid as crystal. “The men who are thus changed by virtue of that peculiar time [the sixth race] *shall be as the seeds* of other human beings, and shall give birth to a race who shall follow the laws of the Krita age of purity”; *i.e.*, it shall be the seventh race, the race of “Buddhas,” the “Sons of God,” born of *immaculate* parents.<sup>2</sup>

**Peoples at the end of the Sixth and Seventh Root-Races will be sexless again. They will correspond to the “Pudding Bags” of the First in appearance, but empowered by the highest intelligence and spirituality.**

The Sympathetic Cords are only found after a certain stage of animal evolution, and are evolving in complexity to form a second Spinal Cord. At the end of the next Round, Humanity will become once more hermaphrodite, male-female, and then there will be two Spinal Cords in the human Body. In the Seventh Race, the two will merge into the one. The sexually creative power of man is not natural, or rather was not at the beginning. It was an abnormal diversion from the course of human or divine nature, and all tends to make away with it. Man in the end of the Sixth and Seventh Races will not have sexual organs. The evolution of the physical Body corresponds to the Races, and with the evolution of the Races the Sympathetic Cords will develop into a true Spinal Cord, the two Cords growing together and so forming one. We are returning up the arc, with self-consciousness added. The Sixth Race will correspond to the “Pudding Bags,” the First Root-Race, but will have the perfection of form with the highest intelligence and spirituality.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (FOOTNOTES TO “YOGA AND KALPA”) VI p. 14

<sup>2</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 483

<sup>3</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (E.S. INSTRUCTION No. V) XII pp. 700-1

**They will be led by Dharmaprabhasa Buddha,<sup>1</sup> who shall appear when gender and all other illusions of separateness will no longer exist.**

The age in which all sexual difference will have ceased to exist, and birth will take place in the *Anupādaka* [parentless] *mode*, as in the second and third Root-races. Esoteric philosophy teaches that it will take place at the end of the sixth and during the seventh and last Root-race in this Round.<sup>2</sup>

**Then the Adepts and Initiates of the Seventh Root-Race will once more create mind-born Immaculate Sons.**

The *divine* man dwelt in the animal, and, therefore, when the physiological separation took place in the natural course of evolution — when also “all the animal creation was *untied*,” and males were attracted to females — *that race fell*: not because they had eaten of the fruit of Knowledge and knew good from evil, but because they knew no better. Propelled by the sexless creative instinct, the early sub-races had evolved an intermediate race in which, as hinted in the Stanzas, the higher Dhyāni-Chohans had incarnated.<sup>3</sup> “When we have ascertained the extent of the Universe and learnt to know all that there is in it, we will multiply our race,” answer the *Sons of Will and Yoga* to their brethren of the same race, who invite them to do as they do. This means that the great Adepts and Initiated ascetics will “multiply,” *i.e.*, once more produce *Mind-born* immaculate Sons — in the Seventh Root-Race.<sup>4</sup>

**Finally, when the sixth sense has awakened the seventh,<sup>5</sup> Chrēstos shall be regenerated as Christos and will illumine the souls of all men. “And they will listen to my voice; and they shall become one flock under one Shepherd.”<sup>6</sup>**

Therefore, the time is still far distant when “all the people of the universe will form one flock under one shepherd.” Human nature will have to be completely modified

---

<sup>1</sup> *Theosophical Glossary*: Dharmaprabhasa

<sup>2</sup> *ibid.*, Ratnāvabhāsa Kalpa

<sup>3</sup> This is the “undying race” as it is called in Esotericism, and exoterically the fruitless generation of the first progeny of Daksha, who curses Nārada, the divine Rishi, alleged to have dissuaded the Haryaśvas and the Śabalāśvas, the sons of Daksha, from procreating their species, by saying: “Be born in the womb; there shall not be a resting place for thee in all these regions”; after this Nārada, the representative of that race of *fruitless* ascetics, is said, as soon as he dies in one body, to be reborn in another.

<sup>4</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 275

<sup>5</sup> Cf. “When a man is in his normal condition, the introspective Adept can see the golden Aura pulsating in both the [Pineal and Pituitary] glands, a pulsation, like that of the heart, never ceasing throughout life. This motion, however, under the abnormal condition of effort to develop clairvoyant faculties, becomes intensified, and the Aura takes on a stronger vibratory and pulsating or swinging action. The arc (of the Pituitary Gland) mounts upward, more and more, toward the Pineal Gland, until finally the current striking it, just as when the electric current strikes some solid object, the dormant organ is awakened and set all aglowing with the pure Ākāśic Fire. This is the psycho-physiological illustration of two organs on the physical plane, which are the concrete symbols of, and represent respectively, the metaphysical concepts called Manas and Buddhi. The latter, in order to become conscious on this plane, needs the more differentiated fire of Manas; but *once the sixth sense has awakened the seventh*, the light which radiates from it illuminates the fields of infinitude: for a brief space of time, man becomes omniscient; the Past and the Future, Space and Time, disappear and become for him the Present. If an Adept, he will store that knowledge he thus gains, in his physical memory and nothing — save the crime of indulging in Black Magic — can obliterate the remembrance of it. If only a Chela, portions alone of the whole truth will impress themselves on his memory, and he will have to repeat the process for years, never allowing one speck of impurity to stain him mentally or physically, before he becomes a fully initiated Adept.” *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (E.S. INSTRUCTION No. III) XII pp. 617-18

<sup>6</sup> *John* x, 16; Weymouth NT

before it occurs. We will have to attain the Seventh Race, according to the prophecy of the Book of *Dzyan*,<sup>1</sup> because it is then that the “Christos” — designated by his various pagan names, as well as those of the Gnostics “heretics” — will reign in the soul of every individual, in the soul of all those who shall have first accepted the *Chrēst*<sup>2</sup> — I do not say simply those who will have become *Christians*, which is quite another thing. For, let us proclaim it once for all, the word *Christ*, which means the *glorified*, the *triumphant*, and also the “anointed” (from the word *χρίω*, to anoint) cannot be applied to Jesus.<sup>3, 4</sup>



<sup>1</sup> A Tibetan word, the Sanskrit *Jñāna*, occult wisdom, knowledge.

<sup>2</sup> A word which is neither the *Krest* (cross) of the Slavs, nor the crucified “Christ” of the Latins. The Ray made manifest from that Centre of Life which is hidden from the eyes of Humanity for and in Eternity, the *Christos*, crucified as a body of flesh and bones!!!

<sup>3</sup> [Having drawn to Madame Blavatsky’s attention that, according to certain scholars, this assertion is erroneous, she answered as follows: “I say the scholars are either lying or talking nonsense. Our *Masters* affirm the statement. If the story of Jehoshua or Jesus Ben-Pandira is false, then the whole *Talmud*, the whole Jewish Canon is false. He was the disciple of Jehoshua Ben Perahiah, the fifth President of the Sanhedrin after Ezra who *re-wrote* the Bible. Compromised in the revolt of the Pharisees against Jannæus in 105 B.C., he fled into Egypt carrying the young Jesus with him. This account is far truer than that of the New Testament which has no record in history.”]

<sup>4</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (“ESOTERICISM OF CHRISTIAN DOGMA”) VIII pp. 379-80

[Note to Students by ED. PHIL. — “Even according to the Gospels, *Jesus was never anointed*, either as High Priest, as King or as Prophet. ‘As a mortal,’ remarks Nork, ‘he was anointed only once, by a woman, and not because he offered himself as king or High Priest, but, as he said himself, *for his burial*.’ Jesus was a *Chrēstos*: *χρηστός ο Κύριος* (the Lord is good), as St. Peter said (*First Epistle* ii, 3), whether he actually lived during the Christian era or a century earlier, in the reign of Alexander Jannæus and his wife Salome, at Lüd, as stated in the *Sepher Toldoth Jeshu*.” *ibid.* Look up “Gautama and Jesus parallel lives” and “Jesus Ben Pandira, the historical Christ,” in our Buddhas and Initiates Series.]



## A glimpse of the close of the Seventh Root-Race in the Seventh Round, when all men shall be equal to Angels.

**The great cycle of (and struggle for) conscious life begun with the separation of the sexes and will end in the Last Race of the Last Round.**

The life-cycle, or rather the cycle of conscious life, begins with the separation of the mortal animal-man into sexes, and will end with the close of the last generation of men, in the seventh round and seventh race of mankind. Considering we are only in the fourth round and fifth race, its duration is more easily imagined than expressed.<sup>1</sup>

**Humanity is already on the ascending arc. At the close of the Forty-Ninth Race in the Seventh Round of this Manvantara, the Divine Monad shall be pure again, unsullied by evil and temptation, as it was in the very beginning. It shall then be transported to new heights of consciousness by the aroma of its cumulative earthly experience and wisdom.**

The Occult doctrine maintains that, in this Round, the mammalians were a later work of evolution than man. Evolution proceeds in cycles. The great Manvantaric cycle of Seven Rounds, beginning in the First Round with mineral, vegetable, and animal, brings its evolutionary work on the descending arc to a dead stop in the middle of the Fourth *Race*, at the close of the first half of the Fourth *Round*. It is on our Earth, then, (the Fourth sphere and the lowest), and in the present *Round*, that this middle point has been reached. And since the Monad has passed, after its "first inmetallization" on Globe A, through the mineral, vegetable, and animal worlds in every degree of the three states of matter, except the last degree of the third or solid state, which it reached only at the "*mid-point of evolution*," it is but logical and natural that at the beginning of the Fourth Round on Globe D, Man should be the first to appear; and also that his frame should be of the most tenuous matter that is compatible with objectivity. To make it still clearer: if the Monad begins its cycle of incarnations through the three objective kingdoms on the descending curved line, it has necessarily to enter on the re-ascending curved line of the sphere as a man also. On the descending arc it is the spiritual which is gradually transformed into the material. On the middle line of the base, Spirit and Matter are equilibrated in Man. On the ascending arc, Spirit is slowly re-asserting itself at the expense of the physical, or matter, so that, at the close of the seventh Race of the Seventh Round, the Monad will find itself as free from matter and all its qualities as it was in the beginning; having gained in addition the experience and wisdom, the fruition of all its personal lives, without their evil and temptations.<sup>2</sup>



---

<sup>1</sup> *Key to Theosophy*, § XI (ON THE MYSTERIES OF REINCARNATION) p. 197

<sup>2</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 180-81; [on Stanza VIII.28a.]

**Until the Last Battle in the Last Round is fought and won, the Holy Tree of Life<sup>1</sup> cannot wither.**

Ash Yggdrasil [is] the “Mundane Tree,” the Symbol of the World with the old Norsemen, the “tree of the universe, of time and of life.” It is ever green, for the Norns of Fate sprinkle it daily with the water of life from the fountain of Urd, which flows in Midgard. The dragon Nidhogg gnaws its roots incessantly, the dragon of Evil and Sin; but the Ash Yggdrasil cannot wither, until the Last Battle (the Seventh Race in the Seventh Round) is fought, when life, time, and the world will all vanish and disappear.<sup>2</sup>

**That is why the Hindu sage has to light the First and extinguish the Forty-Ninth Fire before reaching his final deliverance.**

This is an esoteric tenet, and the general reader will not make much out of it. But the Theosophist who has read *Esoteric Buddhism* may compute the 7 by 7 of the *forty-nine* “days,” and the *forty-nine* “fires,” and understand that the allegory refers esoterically to the seven human consecutive root-races with their seven subdivisions. Every monad is born in the first and obtains deliverance in the last seventh race. Only a “Buddha” is shown reaching it during the course of one life.<sup>3</sup>

**He who, through a long series of births under Karmic law, shall reach the end of the Manvantara, shall become “equal unto the Angels,” and shall die no more.**

“But they which shall be accounted worthy to obtain that world [Nirvana],<sup>4</sup> and the resurrection from the dead, neither marry, nor are given in marriage: Neither can they die any more: for they are equal unto the angels; and are the children of God, being the children of the resurrection.”<sup>5</sup>



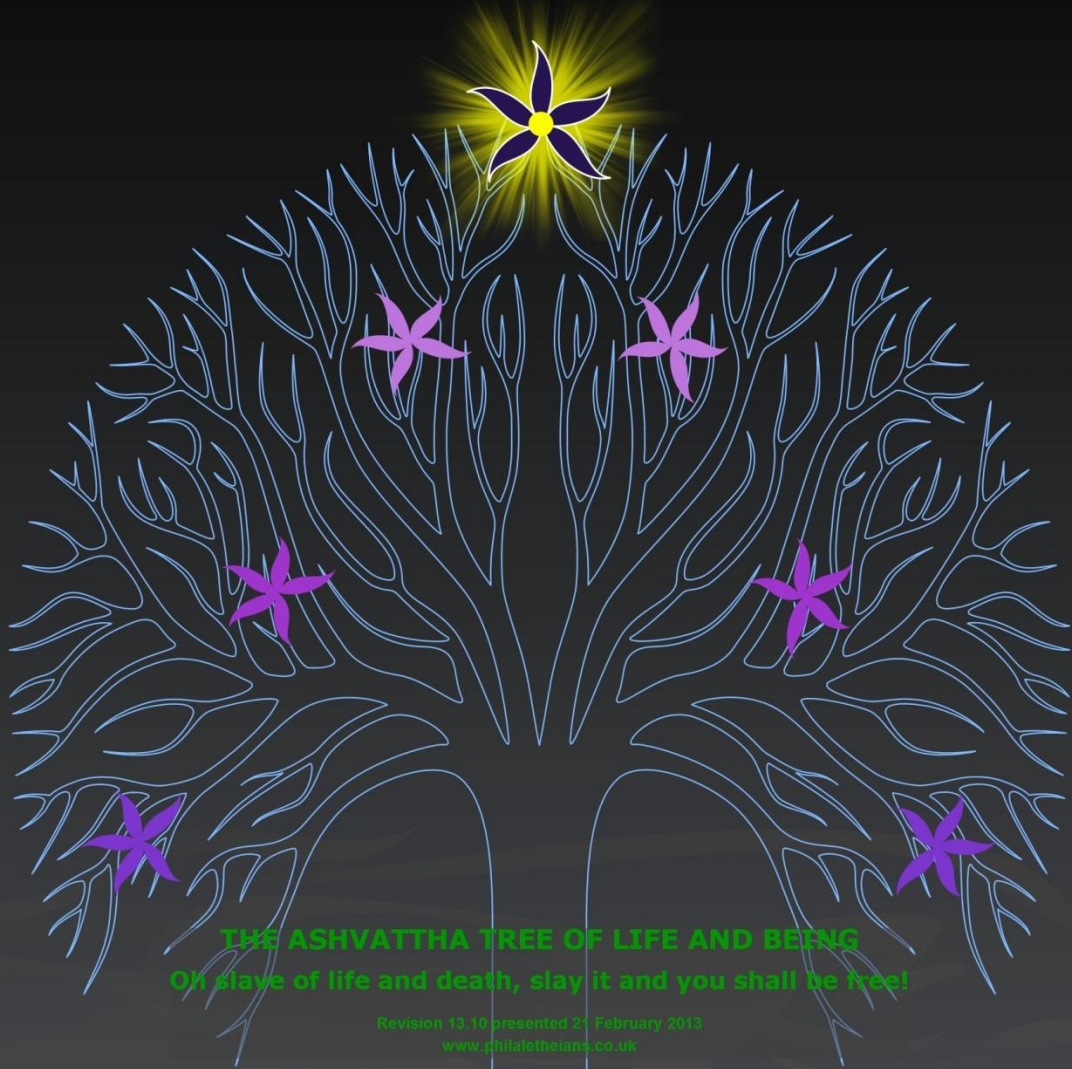
<sup>1</sup> Cf. “. . . The trunk of the ASVATTHA (the tree of Life and Being, the Rod of the caduceus) grows from and descends at every Beginning (every new manvantara) from the two dark wings of the Swan [HANSAS] of Life. The two Serpents, the ever-living and its illusion (Spirit and matter) whose two heads grow from the one head between the wings, descend along the trunk, interlaced in close embrace. The two tails join on earth (the manifested Universe) into one, and this is the great illusion, O Lanoo!” *Secret Doctrine*, I p. 549; [quoting *Commentary on the Esoteric Doctrine*]

<sup>2</sup> *Theosophical Glossary*: Ash Yggdrasil. [“Drawing 7. The Ashvattha Tree of Life and Being,” from our Planetary Rounds and Globes Series, herein presented overleaf. — ED. PHIL.]

<sup>3</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (THE ORIGIN OF EVIL) VIII p. 115 *fn.*

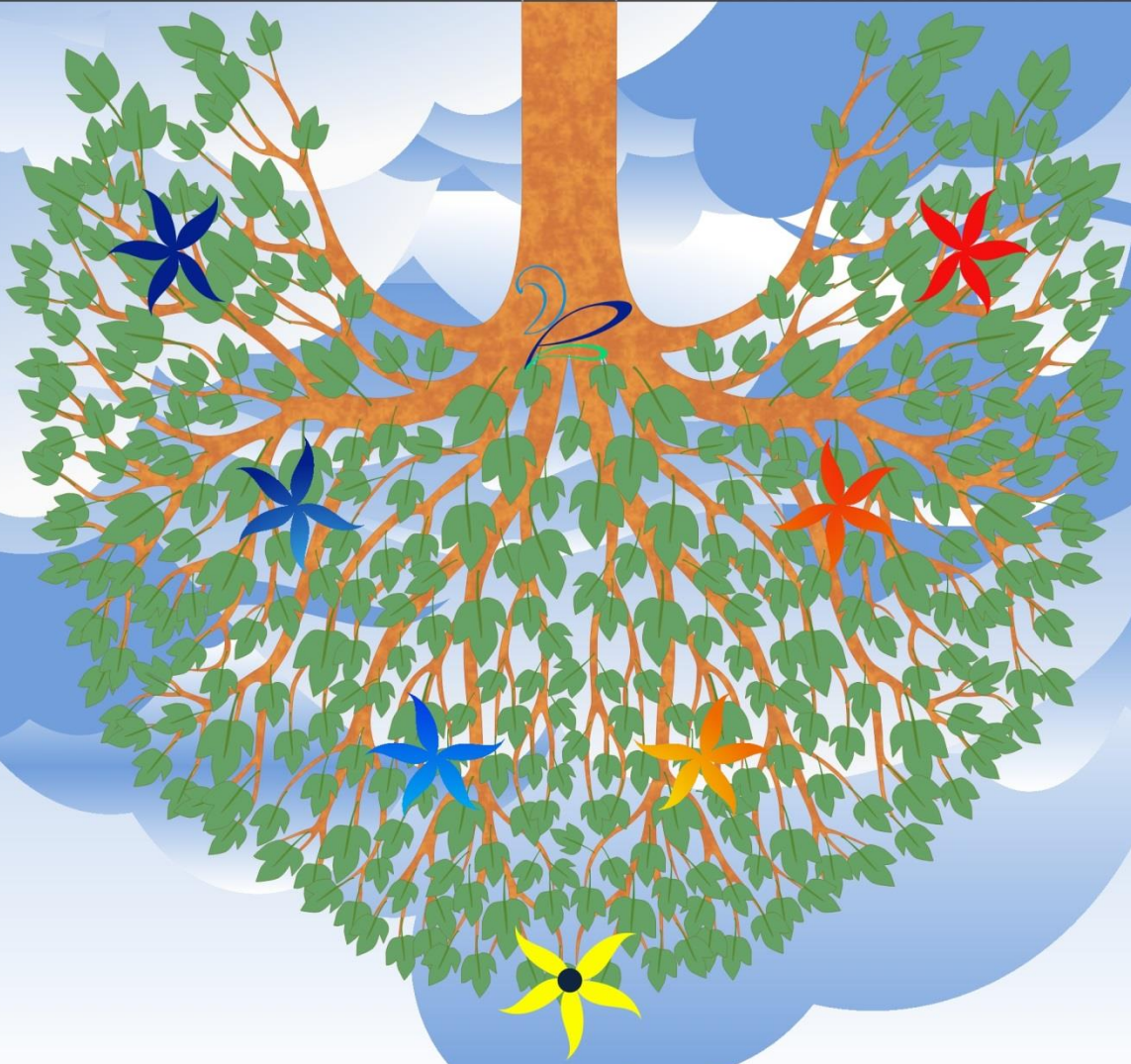
<sup>4</sup> This word [αἰών], translated in the *New Testament* “world” to suit the official interpretation, means rather an “age” (as shown in the *Revised Version*) or one of the periods during the Manvantara, a Kalpa, or Aeōn. Esoterically, the sentence would read: “He who shall reach, through a series of births and Karmic law, the state in which Humanity shall find itself after the Seventh Round and the Seventh Race, when comes Nirvāna, Moksha, and when man becomes ‘equal unto the Angels’ or Dhyāni-Chohans, is a ‘son of the resurrection’ and ‘can die no more’; then there will be no marriage, as there will be no difference of sexes” — a result of our present materiality and animalism. *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (THE DANGERS OF PRACTICAL MAGIC) XIV p. 58 *fn.*

<sup>5</sup> *Luke* xx, 35-36; KJV



**THE ASHVATTHA TREE OF LIFE AND BEING**  
**Oh slave of life and death, slay it and you shall be free!**

Revision 13.10 presented 21 February 2013  
[www.pallaletheians.co.uk](http://www.pallaletheians.co.uk)



## Appendix A. Esoteric History of the Root-Continents.

**The physical frame of man became ready to receive the divine Pilgrim 18,000,000 years ago, after the first great failure of nature to create human beings without the help of the divine “Fashioners.”**

Having been in all the so-called “Seven creations,” allegorizing the seven evolutionary changes, or the *sub-races*, we may call them, *of the First Root-Race of Mankind* — MAN was on earth in this Round from the beginning. Having passed through all the kingdoms of nature in the previous *three* Rounds,<sup>1</sup> his *physical* frame — one adapted to the thermal conditions of those early periods — was ready to receive the *divine Pilgrim* at the first dawn of human life, *i.e.*, 18,000,000 years ago.<sup>2, 3</sup> It is only at the mid-point of the 3<sup>rd</sup> Root-Race that man was endowed with *Manas*. Once united, the *two* and then the *three* made one; for though the lower animals, from the amoeba to man, received *their* Monads, in which all the higher qualities are potential, all have to remain dormant till each reaches its human form, before which stage *Manas* (mind) has no development in them.<sup>4</sup> In the animals every principle is paralysed, and in a foetus-like state, save the second (vital) and the third (the astral), and the rudiments of the fourth (*Kāma*, which is desire, instinct), whose intensity and development varies and changes with the species. To the materialist wedded to the Darwinian theory, this will read like a fairy-tale, a mystification; to the believer in the inner, spiritual man, the statement will have nothing unnatural in it.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> “Follow the law of analogy” — the Masters teach *Ātma-Buddhi* is dual and *Manas* is triple; inasmuch as the former has two aspects, and the latter three, *i.e.*, as a principle *per se*, which gravitates, in its higher aspect, to *Ātma-Buddhi*, and follows, in its lower nature, *Kāma*, the seat of terrestrial and animal desires and passions. Now compare the evolution of the Races, the First and the Second of which are of the nature of *Ātma-Buddhi*, their passive Spiritual progeny, and the Third Root-Race shows three distinct divisions or aspects physiological and psychically: the earliest, sinless; the middle portions awakening to intelligence; and the third and last decidedly *animal*, *i.e.*, *Manas* succumbs to the temptations of *Kāma*.

<sup>2</sup> [Cf. “With regard to the prehuman period, all that can be said, at present, is, that even up to the appearance of the ‘Mindless’ First Race, the Earth was not without its inhabitants. More may be said: that which Science — recognizing *only physical man* — has a right to regard as the *prehuman* period, may be conceded to have extended from the First Race down to the first half of the Atlantean race, since it is only then that man became the ‘complete *organic* being he is now.’ And this would make *Adamic* man no older than a few millions of years.” *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 315]

<sup>3</sup> [Cf. “The Occultists, having most perfect faith in their own exact records, astronomical and mathematical, calculate the age of Humanity, and assert that the latter (as separate sexes) has existed in this Round just 18,618,727 years, as the Brāhmanical teachings and even some Hindu calendars declare.” *Secret Doctrine*, I p. 150 *fn.* N.B. *The Secret Doctrine* was published in 1888 — ED. PHIL.]

<sup>4</sup> “Men are made *complete* only during their third, toward the fourth cycle [race]. They are made ‘gods’ for good and evil, and responsible only when the two arcs meet [after 3½ rounds towards the *fifth* Race]. They are made so by the *Nirmānakāya* [spiritual or astral remains] of the Rudra-Kumāras, ‘*cursed* to be reborn on earth again’; meaning — *doomed in their natural turn to reincarnation* in the higher ascending arc of the terrestrial cycle.” (*Commentary*, ix)

<sup>5</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 254-55

## First Continent, Imperishable Sacred Land.

**Land of gods under their chiefs, the Spirits of Planet Earth,<sup>1</sup> cradle of the First Root-Race, and dwelling of the last divine mortal.**

It is proposed, then, to call the first continent, or rather the first *terra firma* on which the first Race was evolved by the divine progenitors:

I. "The Imperishable Sacred Land."<sup>2</sup>

The reasons for this name are explained as follows: This "Sacred Land" — of which more later on — is stated never to have shared the fate of the other continents; because it is the only one whose destiny it is to last from the beginning to the end of the Manvantara throughout each Round. It is the cradle of the first man and the dwelling of the last *divine* mortal, chosen as a *Śishta* for the future seed of humanity. Of this mysterious and sacred land very little can be said, except, perhaps, according to a poetical expression in one of the *Commentaries*, that the "polestar has its watchful eye upon it, from the dawn to the close of the twilight of 'a day'<sup>3</sup> of the GREAT BREATH."<sup>4, 5</sup>

## Second Continent, Hyperborean.

The "HYPERBOREAN" will be the name chosen for the Second Continent, the land which stretched out its promontories southward and westward from the North Pole to receive the Second Race, and comprised the whole of what is now known as Northern Asia. Such was the name given by the oldest Greeks to the far-off and mysterious region, whither their tradition made Apollo the "Hyperborean" travel every year. *Astronomically*, Apollo is of course the Sun, who, abandoning his Hellenic sanctuaries, loved to visit annually his far-away country, where the Sun was said never to set for one half of the year. *Ἐγγυς γὰρ νυκτιος τε και ηματος εισι κελευθοι*, says a verse in the *Odyssey*.<sup>6</sup>

But *historically*, or better, perhaps, ethnologically and geologically, the meaning is different. The land of the Hyperboreans, the country that extended beyond Boreas, the frozen-hearted god of snows and hurricanes, who loved to slumber heavily on the chain of Mount Rhiphaeus, was neither an ideal country, as surmised by the mythologists, nor yet a land in the neighbourhood of Scythia and the Danube.<sup>7</sup> It was a real Continent, a *bona fide* land which knew no winter in those early days, nor have its sorry remains more than one night and day during the year, even now. The noctur-

<sup>1</sup> ["That which in the *Vendidad*, for instance, is referred to as Airyana-Vaējah, wherein was born the original Zoroaster, is called in the Purānic literature 'Śveta-Dvīpa,' 'Mount Meru,' the abode of Vishnu, etc., etc.; and in the Secret Doctrine is simply named the 'Land of the Gods' under their chiefs, the 'Spirits of this Planet.'" *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 6; on the archaic and esoteric names of the First Continent.]

<sup>2</sup> [*Synonymous terms*: Mount Meru, Ādi-Varsha or Primordial Land, Śveta-Dvīpa or White Continent.]

<sup>3</sup> [Day of Brahmā or a planetary manvantara.]

<sup>4</sup> In India called "The Day of Brahmā."

<sup>5</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 6

<sup>6</sup> X, 86. ["So near are the outgoings of the night and the day."]

<sup>7</sup> See K.H.W. Völcker, *Mythische Geographie der Griechen und Römer*, 1832, pp. 145-70.

nal shadows never fall upon it, said the Greeks; for it is the *land of the Gods*, the favourite abode of Apollo, the god of light, and its inhabitants are his beloved priests and servants. This may be regarded as poetised *fiction* now; but it was poetised *truth* then.<sup>1</sup>

**Asia is the Root-Continent, as old as the Second Race, yet contemporary with man.**<sup>2</sup>

Northern Asia is as old as the Second Race. One may even say that Asia is contemporary with man, since from the very beginnings of human life its *root-continent*, so to speak, already existed; that part of the world now known as Asia being only cut off from it in a later age, and divided by the glacial waters.

If, then, the teaching is understood correctly, the first continent which came into existence capped over the whole North Pole like one unbroken crust, and remains so to this day, beyond that inland sea which seemed like an unreachable *mirage to the few* arctic travellers who perceived it.<sup>3</sup>

**The history of Root-Races begins at the separation of the sexes, when the preceding egg-bearing androgynous men perished rapidly, and the succeeding subraces of the Third Root-Race appeared as an entirely new race physiologically. The actual duration of the first 2½ races is withheld from all but the higher Initiates.**

Thus, if we are to believe esoteric teaching, there have been no more *universal* geological disturbances and changes for the last 120 millions of years, and the Earth was, even before that time, ready to receive her human stock. The appearance of the latter, however, in its full physical development, as already stated, took place only about eighteen millions of years ago, after the first great failure of nature to create beings alone, without the help of the divine “Fashioners,” had been followed by the successive evolution of the first three races.<sup>4</sup> The actual duration of the first two and a half Races is withheld from all but the higher Initiates.<sup>5</sup> The History of the Races begins at the separation of the Sexes, when the preceding egg-bearing androgynous race perished rapidly, and the subsequent sub-races of the Third Root-Race ap-

---

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 7

<sup>2</sup> [Cf. “The Aryan race was born and developed in the far north, though after the sinking of the continent of Atlantis its tribes emigrated further south into Asia. Hence Prometheus is son of Asia, and Deukalion, his son, the Greek Noah.” *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 768]

<sup>3</sup> *ibid.*, II p. 401

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Stanzas III *et seq.*

<sup>5</sup> [Cf. “It may make our position plainer if we state at once that we use Sir C. Lyell’s nomenclature for the ages and periods, and that when we talk of the Secondary and Tertiary age, of the Eocene, Miocene and Pliocene periods — this is simply to make our facts more comprehensible. Since these ages and periods have not yet been allowed fixed and determined durations, 2½ and 15 million years being assigned at different times to one and the same age (the Tertiary); and since no two geologists and naturalists seem to agree on this point, Esoteric teachings may remain quite indifferent to whether man is shown to appear in the Secondary or the Tertiary age. If the latter age may be allowed even so much as 15 million years’ duration — well and good; for the Occult doctrine, jealously guarding its real and correct figures as far as concerns the First, Second, and two-thirds of the Third Root-Race, gives clear information upon one point only — the age of ‘Vaivasvata Manu’s humanity.” *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 693. See Part I of the present Volume: “The Chronology of the Brahmans.” Also cf. “. . . the actual chronology of the First, Second, and Early Third Races being closely veiled by the Initiates. For all that can be said on the subject, the First Root-Race may have been Pre-Secondary, as is, indeed, taught.” *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 714 *fn.*; [drawing a parallel between the evolution of the early Mammalia and pre-mammalia that are shown to merge “from one kind into a higher one, anatomically,” and “the human races in their procreative processes.”]

peared as an entirely new race *physiologically*.<sup>1</sup> It is this “destruction” which is called allegorically the great “Vaivasvata Manu Deluge,” when the account shows Vaivasvata Manu (or “Humanity”) remaining alone on Earth in the Ark of Salvation towed by Vishnu in the shape of a monstrous fish, and the Seven Rishis “with him.” The allegory is very plain:

In the Symbolism of every nation, the “Deluge” stands for Chaotic unsettled matter — Chaos itself: and the Water for the feminine principle — the “Great Deep.” As the Greek Lexicon of Parkhurst gives it:

Archē [Ἀρχή] in this application answers to the Hebrew *Rāsit* or wisdom . . . a word which had the meaning of the emblem of the female generative power, the *Arg* or *Arca*, in which the germ of all nature [and of mankind] was supposed to float or brood on the great abyss [of the waters] during the interval which took place after every mundane [or racial] cycle.<sup>2</sup>

*Archē* [Ἀρχή] or Ark is also the mystic name of the divine spirit of *life* which broods over chaos. Now Vishnu is the divine Spirit, as an abstract principle, and also as the *Preserver* and *Generator*, or *Giver of life* — the third person of the Trimūrti (composed of Brahmā, the Creator, Śiva, the Destroyer, and Vishnu, the Preserver). Vishnu is shown in the allegory as guiding, under the form of *fish*, the Ark of Vaivasvata Manu clean across the waters of the Flood. There is no use in expatiating upon the esoteric meaning of the word *fish*.<sup>3</sup> Its theological meaning is phallic, but the metaphysical, *divine*. Jesus is called the “Fish,” and so were Vishnu and Bacchus: ΙΗΣ, the “Saviour” of mankind, being but the monogram of the god Bacchus called ΙΧΘΥΣ, the fish.<sup>4</sup> As to the Seven Rishis in the Ark, they symbolised the seven principles, which became complete in man only after he had separated, and become a *human*, and no longer a divine creature.



<sup>1</sup> [Cf. “As to the separation of sexes, it did not occur suddenly, as one may think. Nature proceeds slowly in whatever she does.” *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 201.]

<sup>2</sup> John Parkhurst, *A Greek and English Lexicon to the New Testament*, 1769

<sup>3</sup> See Payne Knight, Inman, Gerald Massey, and others.

<sup>4</sup> Says St. Augustin of Jesus: “For he is a *fish* that lives in the midst of waters.” Christians called themselves little fishes — *pisciculi* — in their sacred mysteries. “So many *fishes* bred in the water, and saved by one great *fish*,” says Tertullian [*On Bapt.*, i] of the Christians and Christ and the Church.

## Third Continent, Lemuria.

**Lemuria, a term coined by Sclater,<sup>1</sup> was the land of the first androgynes.**

The third Continent, we propose to call "Lemuria." The name is an invention, or an idea, of P.L. Sclater, who asserted, between 1850 and 1860, on zoological grounds the actual existence, in prehistoric times, of a Continent which he showed to have extended from Madagascar to Ceylon and Sumatra.<sup>2</sup> It included some portions of what is now Africa; but otherwise this gigantic Continent, which stretched from the Indian ocean to Australia, has now wholly disappeared beneath the waters of the Pacific, leaving here and there only some of its highland tops which are now islands. A.R. Wallace, the naturalist, "extends the Australia of tertiary periods to New Guinea and the Solomon Islands, and perhaps to Fiji"; and from its Marsupial types infers "a connection with the Northern Continent during the Secondary period," writes C. Gould.<sup>3</sup> The subject is treated at length elsewhere.<sup>4, 5</sup>

### **And the cradle of the Third Root-Race.**

No confusion need arise as regards the postulation of a Northern "Lemuria." The prolongation of that great continent into the North Atlantic Ocean is in no way subversive of the opinions so widely held as to the site of the lost Atlantis, and one corroborates the other. It must be noted that the Lemuria, which served as the cradle of the Third Root-Race, not only embraced a vast area in the Pacific and Indian Oceans, but extended in the shape of a horse-shoe past Madagascar, round "South Africa" (then a mere fragment in process of formation), through the Atlantic up to Norway. The great *English fresh-water deposit called the Wealden — which every geologist regards as the mouth of a former great river — is the bed of the main stream which drained Northern Lemuria in the Secondary Age.* The former reality of this river is a fact of science — will its votaries acknowledge the necessity of accepting the Secondary-Age Northern Lemuria, which their data demand? Professor Berthold Seeman not only accepted the reality of such a mighty continent, but regarded *Australia and Europe as formerly portions of one continent — thus corroborating the whole "horseshoe" doctrine already enunciated.* No more striking confirmation of our position could be

---

<sup>1</sup> Philip Lutley Sclater (1829–1913), English lawyer and zoologist.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. "By a curious coincidence, when selecting a familiar name for the continent on which the first androgynes, the Third Root-Race, separated, the writer chose, on geographical considerations, that of 'Lemuria,' invented by P.L. Sclater. It is only later, that reading Haeckel's *Pedigree of Man*, it was found that the German 'Animalist' had chosen the name for his late continent. He traces, properly enough, the centre of human evolution to 'Lemuria,' but with a slight scientific variation. Speaking of it as that 'cradle of mankind,' he pictures the gradual transformation of the anthropoid mammal into the primeval savage!!" *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 171

<sup>3</sup> *Mythical Monsters*, p. 47

<sup>4</sup> It is to be remarked, however, that Wallace does not accept Sclater's idea, and even opposes it. Sclater supposes a land or continent formerly uniting Africa, Madagascar, and India (but not Australia and India); and A.R. Wallace shows, in his *Geographical Distribution of Animals* [pp. 59 ff.] and *Island Life*, that the hypothesis of such a land is quite uncalled for on the alleged zoological grounds. But he admits that a much closer proximity of India and Australia did certainly exist, and at a time so very remote that it was "certainly pre-Tertiary," and he adds in a private letter that "no name has been given to this supposed land." Yet the land did exist, and was of course *pre-Tertiary*, for "Lemuria" (accepting this name for the third Continent) had perished before Atlantis had fully developed; and the latter sunk and its chief portions had disappeared before the end of the Miocene period.

<sup>5</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 7-8



given, than the fact that the ELEVATED RIDGE in the Atlantic basin, 9,000 feet in height, which runs for some two or three thousand miles southwards from a point near the British Isles, first slopes towards South America, then *shifts almost at right angles* to proceed in a SOUTH-EASTERLY *line toward the African coast*, whence it runs on southward to Tristan Da Cunha. This ridge is a remnant of an Atlantic continent, and, could it be traced further, would establish the reality of a submarine horseshoe junction with a former continent in the Indian Ocean.<sup>1, 2</sup>

**The Lemurians built huge cities of rare earths and metals. The oldest remains of Cyclopean buildings are the handwork of their last subraces.**

Stanza XI.43. THEY (*the Lemurians*) BUILT HUGE CITIES. OF RARE EARTHS AND METALS THEY BUILT. OUT OF THE FIRES (*lava*) VOMITED. OUT OF THE WHITE STONE OF THE MOUNTAINS (*marble*) AND THE BLACK STONE (OF THE SUBTERRANEAN FIRES) THEY CUT THEIR OWN IMAGES, IN THEIR SIZE AND LIKENESS, AND WORSHIPPED THEM (a).

[The Lemurians were] . . . men and civilized nations, not Palaeolithic savages only; who, under the guidance of their *divine* Rulers, built large cities, cultivated arts and sciences, and knew astronomy, architecture and mathematics to perfection. This primeval civilization did not, as one may think, immediately follow their physiological transformation. Between the final evolution and the first city built, many hundred thousands of years had passed. Yet, we find the Lemurians in their sixth sub-race building their first rock-cities out of stone and lava.<sup>3</sup> One of such great cities of prim-

---

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 333. Cf. the chart adapted from the *Challenger* and *Dolphin* soundings in I. Donnelly's, *Atlantis: The Antediluvian World*, p. 47.

<sup>2</sup> Note 16 by Boris de Zirkoff, *ibid.*, p. 803:

The early investigations conducted by American and British ships were considerably enlarged by similar research in the twentieth century. From maps recently published by the *National Geographic Magazine* (Washington, D.C.), it is evident that the globe-circling nature of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge system is readily apparent. A considerable number of articles and books support and confirm H.P. Blavatsky's assertion of the existence of "a submarine horseshoe junction with a former continent in the Indian Ocean."

Consult the following issues of the *National Geographic Magazine*: September, 1948; November, 1949; January, 1973; May, 1975; and a Report entitled *Understanding the Mid-Atlantic Ridge* issued in 1972 by the Ocean Affairs Board, National Academy of Sciences, Washington, D.C. 20418.

<sup>3</sup> Our best modern novelists, who are neither Theosophists nor Spiritualists, begin to have, nevertheless, very psychological and suggestively Occult dreams: witness Robert Louis Stephenson and his *Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde*, than which no grander psychological essay on Occult lines exists. Has the rising novelist, Rider Haggard, also had a prophetic or rather a retrospective clairvoyant dream before he wrote *She*? His imperial Kōr, the great city of the dead, whose surviving living men sailed northwards after the plague had killed almost a whole nation, seems to step out in its general outlines from the imperishable pages of the old archaic records. Ayesha suggests "that those men who sailed north may have been the fathers of the first Egyptians"; and then seems to attempt a synopsis of certain letters of a MASTER quoted in *Esoteric Buddhism*. For, she says,

"Time after time have nations, aye, and rich and strong nations, learned in the arts, been, and passed away to be forgotten, so that no memory of them remains. This [the nation of Kōr] is but one of several; for Time eats up the works of man unless, indeed, he digs in caves like the people of Kōr, and *then mayhap the sea swallows them, or the earthquake shakes them in*. . . . Yet were not these people utterly destroyed, as I think. Some few remained in the other cities, for their cities were many. But the barbarians . . . came down upon them, and took their women to wife, and the race of the Amahagger that is now is a bastard brood of the mighty sons of Kōr, and behold it dwelleth in the tombs with its fathers' bones." (ch. xvi)

Here the clever novelist seems to repeat the history of all the now degraded and down-fallen races of humanity. The Geologists and Anthropologists would place at the head of humanity as descendants of *Homo primigenius* the ape-man, of which "NO FOSSIL REMAINS ARE AS YET KNOWN TO US," but (which) "were PROBABLY akin to *the gorilla and orang of the present day*." (Hæckel) In answer to whose "probably," occultists point to another and a greater *probability* — the one given in our text. (See above.)

itive structure was built entirely of lava, some thirty miles west from where Easter Island now stretches its narrow piece of sterile ground, and was entirely destroyed by a series of volcanic eruptions. The oldest remains of Cyclopean buildings were all the handwork of the Lemurians of the last sub-races; and an occultist shows, therefore, no wonder on learning, that the stone relics found by Captain Cook on the small piece of land called Easter Island, are “very much like the walls of the Temple of Pachacamac or the Ruins of Tiahuanaco in Peru,”<sup>1</sup> and that they are in the CYCLOPEAN STYLE. The first large cities, however, appeared on that region of the continent which is now known as the island of Madagascar. There were civilized people and savages in those days as there are now. Evolution achieved its work of perfection with the former, and Karma — its work of destruction on the latter. The Australians and their like are the descendants of those, who, instead of vivifying the spark dropped into them by the “Flames,” extinguished it by long generations of bestiality.<sup>2</sup> The Āryan nations could trace their descent through the Atlanteans from the more spiritual races of the Lemurians, in whom the “Sons of Wisdom” had personally incarnated.<sup>3, 4</sup>

### There were Continents and Kings before Atlantis.

The fact that the Atlantes claimed Ouranos for their first king, and that Plato commences his story of Atlantis by the division of the great continent by Neptune, the grandson of Ouranos, shows that there were continents and kings before Atlantis. For Neptune, to whose lot that continent fell, finds on a small island only one human couple made of clay (*i.e.*, the first physical *human* man, whose origin began with the last sub-races of the Third Root-Race). It is their daughter Clito that the god marries, and it is his eldest son *Atlas* who receives for his part the mountain and the continent which was called by his name.<sup>5</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Robert Brown, M.A., PH.D., *The Countries of the World*, Vol. IV, p. 43

<sup>2</sup> See Stanza VII. This would account for the great difference and variation between the intellectual capacities of races, nations, and individual men. While incarnating, and in other cases only informing the human vehicles evolved by the first brainless (*mānasless*) race, the incarnating Powers and Principles had to make their choice between, and take into account, the past Karmas of the *Monads*, between which and their bodies they had to become the connecting link. Besides which, as correctly stated in *Esoteric Buddhism* (p. 30, 5<sup>th</sup> ed.), “the fifth principle, or human [intellectual] soul, in the majority of mankind is not even yet fully developed.”

<sup>3</sup> It is said by Krishna, the *Logos* incarnate, in the *Bhagavad-Gītā*, “The seven great Rishis, the four preceding Manus, partaking of my nature, were born from my mind: from them sprang [emanated or was born] the human race and the world.” (Chapter X, verse 6)

Here, by the seven great Rishis, the seven great *rūpa* hierarchies or classes of Dhyāni-Chohans, are meant. Let us bear in mind that the *Saptarshi* (the seven Rishis) are the regents of the seven stars of the Great Bear, therefore, of the same nature as the angels of the planets, or the seven great Planetary Spirits. They were all reborn, all men on earth in various Kalpas and races. Moreover, “the four preceding Manus” are the four classes of the originally *arūpa* gods — the Kumāras, the Rudras, the Asuras, etc., who are also said to *have incarnated*. They are not the Prajāpatis, as the first are, but their informing principles — some of which have incarnated in men, while others have made other men simply the vehicles of their reflections. As Krishna truly says — the same words being repeated later by another *vehicle* of the LOGOS — “I am the same to all beings. . . . those who worship me [the 6<sup>th</sup> principle or the intellectual *divine* Soul, *Buddhi*, made conscious by its union with the higher faculties of *Manas*] are in me, and I am in them.” (*ibid.*, 29) The Logos, being no personality but the universal principle, is represented by all the divine Powers *born of its mind* — the pure Flames, or, as they are called in Occultism, the “Intellectual Breaths” — those angels who are said to *have made themselves independent*, *i.e.*, passed from the passive and quiescent, into the active state of Self-Consciousness. When this is recognised, the true meaning of Krishna becomes comprehensible. But see Subba Row’s excellent lecture on the *Bhagavad-Gītā*. (*The Theosophist*, April 1887, p. 444)

<sup>4</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 317-18

<sup>5</sup> *ibid.*, II p. 765

**But while their pastoral brethren enjoyed wondrous powers as their birthright, Third Race men could obtain theirs only gradually.**

It is with the advent of the divine Dynasties that the first civilizations were started. And while, in some regions of the Earth, a portion of mankind preferred leading a nomadic and patriarchal life, and in others savage man was hardly learning to build a fire and to protect himself against the Elements, his brothers — more favoured than he by their *Karma*, and helped by the divine intelligence which informed them — built cities, and cultivated arts and sciences. Nevertheless, and civilization notwithstanding, while their pastoral brethren enjoyed wondrous powers as their birthright, they, the builders, could now obtain theirs only gradually; even these being generally used for power over physical nature and selfish and unholy purposes. Civilization has ever developed the physical and the intellectual at the cost of the psychic and spiritual. The command and the guidance over his own psychic nature, which foolish men now associate with the supernatural, were with early Humanity innate and congenital, and came to man as naturally as walking and thinking. “There is no such thing as magic” philosophises *She*, the author forgetting that “magic” in her early day still meant the great SCIENCE of WISDOM, and that Ayesha could not possibly know anything of the modern perversion of thought — “though there is such a thing as knowledge of the Secrets of Nature.”<sup>1</sup> But they have become “secrets” only in our race, and were public property with the Third.

Gradually, mankind went down in stature, for, even before the real advent of the Fourth or Atlantean race, the majority of mankind had fallen into iniquity and sin, save the hierarchy of the “Elect,” the followers and disciples of the “Sons of Will and Yoga” — called later the “Sons of the Fire Mist.”<sup>2</sup>



---

<sup>1</sup> [Rider Haggard, *She*, p. 152]

<sup>2</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 318-19

## Cataclysms mark the end of one race and the beginning of a new one.

As we are assured by Archaic Scientists that all such geological cataclysms — from the upheaval of oceans, deluges, and shifting of continents, down to the present year's cyclones, hurricanes, earthquakes, volcanic eruptions, tidal waves, and even the extraordinary weather and seeming shifting of seasons which perplexes all European and American meteorologists — are due to, and depend on the moon and planets; aye, that even modest and neglected constellations have the greatest influence on the meteorological and cosmical changes, over, and within our earth, let us give one moment's attention to our sidereal despots and rulers of our globe and men. Modern Science denies any such influence; archaic Science affirms it.<sup>1</sup>

**The Third Continent perished 700,000 years before the commencement of what is now called the Tertiary Age (Eocene). It was during this deluge that Vaivasvata Manu saved a portion of the Fourth and Fifth Races before the destruction of the last Atlanteans, the remnants of which perished 850,000 years ago.**

Nor have we many details about the submersion of the continent inhabited by the Second Root-Race. But the history of the Third, "Lemuria," is given, as is that of Atlantis, the others being only alluded to. Lemuria is said to have perished about 700,000 years before the commencement of what is now called the Tertiary age (the Eocene),<sup>2</sup> and it is during this Deluge also — an actual geological deluge this time — that Vaivasvata Manu is again shown as saving mankind (allegorically it is mankind, or a portion of it, the Fourth Race, which is saved); so also he saves the Fifth Race during the destruction of the last Atlanteans, the remnants that perished 850,000 years ago,<sup>3</sup> after which there was no great submersion until the day of Plato's Atlantis, or Poseidonis, known to the Egyptians only because it happened in such relatively recent times.

**The cataclysm that destroyed Lemuria was due to a series of subterranean convulsions and the breaking asunder of the ocean floors. That which put an end to its successor, Atlantis, was brought on by successive disturbances in the axial rotation of the Earth. The former was the result of periodical, geological law; the latter, the curse of Karma.**

It is the submersion of the great Atlantis which is the most interesting. It is of this cataclysm that the old records<sup>4</sup> say that "the ends of the Earth got loose"; and upon which the legends and allegories of Vaivasvata, Xisuthrus, Noah, Deukalion and all the *tutti quanti* of the Elect saved, have been built. Tradition, taking into no account

---

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 699

<sup>2</sup> *Esoteric Buddhism*, p. 65 [p. 106 in 6<sup>th</sup> ed.]

<sup>3</sup> This event, the destruction of the famous island of *Ruta* and the smaller one *Daitya*, which occurred 850,000 years ago in the later Pliocene times, must not be confounded with the submersion of the main continent of Atlantis during the Miocene period. Geologists cannot place the Miocene only so short a way back as 850,000 years; whatever they do, it is several million years ago that the main Atlantis perished.

<sup>4</sup> See the *Book of Enoch*, Sect. II, ch. lxxv, 3.

the difference between sidereal and geological phenomena, calls both indifferently “deluges.” Yet there is a great difference. The cataclysm which destroyed the huge continent of which Australia is the largest relic, was due to a series of subterranean convulsions and the breaking asunder of the ocean floors. That which put an end to its successor — the fourth continent — was brought on by successive disturbances in the axial rotation. It began during the earliest tertiary periods, and, continuing for long ages, carried away successively the last vestige of Atlantis, with the exception, perhaps, of Ceylon and a small portion of what is now Africa. It changed the face of the globe, and no memory of its flourishing continents and isles, of its civilizations and sciences, remained in the annals of history, save in the Sacred records of the East.<sup>1</sup>

**There were dolphins in the trees, disturbing the upper branches and stirring the oak-trees as they brush against them. Wolves swam among the sheep. The sea in unchecked freedom buried the hills, and fresh waves beat against the mountaintops. The waters washed away most living things, and those the sea spares, lacking food, were defeated by slow starvation.**

The sinking and transformation of Lemuria beginning nearly at the Arctic Circle (Norway), the Third Race ended its career in Lankā, or rather on that which became Lankā with the Atlanteans. The small remnant now known as Ceylon is the Northern highland of ancient Lankā, while the enormous island of that name was, in the Lemurian period, the gigantic continent described a few pages back. As a MASTER says:

Why should not your geologists bear in mind that under the continents explored and fathomed by them . . . there may be hidden, deep in the fathomless, or rather unfathomed ocean beds, other and far older continents whose strata have never been geologically explored; and that they may someday upset entirely their present theories? Why not admit that our present continents have, like Lemuria and Atlantis, been several times already submerged, and had the time to reappear again and bear their new groups of mankind and civilisations; and that at the first great geological upheaval at the next cataclysm, in the series of periodical cataclysms that occur from the beginning to the end of every Round, our already autopsized continents will go down. and the Lemurias and Atlantes come up again?<sup>2</sup>

Not the *same* identical continents, of course.<sup>3</sup>

From Ovid's *Metamorphoses*

Jupiter's anger is not satisfied with only his own aerial waters: his brother the sea-god helps him, with the ocean waves. He calls the rivers to council, and when they have entered their ruler's house, says “Now is not the time for long speeches! Exert all your strength. That is what is needed. Throw open your doors, drain the dams, and loose the reins of all your streams!” Those are his

---

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 312-14

<sup>2</sup> *Esoteric Buddhism*, p. 65 (p. 107, 6<sup>th</sup> ed.).

<sup>3</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 332-33

commands. The rivers return and uncurb their fountains' mouths, and race an unbridled course to the sea.

Neptune himself strikes the ground with his trident, so that it trembles, and with that blow opens up channels for the waters. Overflowing, the rivers rush across the open plains, sweeping away at the same time not just orchards, flocks, houses and human beings, but sacred temples and their contents. Any building that has stood firm, surviving the great disaster undamaged, still has its roof drowned by the highest waves, and its towers buried below the flood. And now the land and sea are not distinct, all is the sea, the sea without a shore.<sup>1</sup>

There one man escapes to a hilltop, while another seated in his rowing boat pulls the oars over places where lately he was ploughing. One man sails over his cornfields or over the roof of his drowned farmhouse, while another man fishes in the topmost branches of an elm. Sometimes, by chance, an anchor embeds itself in a green meadow, or the curved boats graze the tops of vineyards. Where lately lean goats browsed shapeless seals play. The Nereids are astonished to see woodlands, houses and whole towns under the water. There are dolphins in the trees: disturbing the upper branches and stirring the oak-trees as they brush against them. Wolves swim among the sheep, and the waves carry tigers and tawny lions. The boar has no use for his powerful tusks, the deer for its quick legs, both are swept away together, and the circling bird, after a long search for a place to land, falls on tired wings into the water. The sea in unchecked freedom has buried the hills, and fresh waves beat against the mountaintops. The waters wash away most living things, and those the sea spares, lacking food, are defeated by slow starvation.<sup>2</sup>

### Three yugas slowly passed away during the time of the Third Root-Race.

According to the Occult teaching, three yugas passed away during the time of the Third Root-Race, *i.e.*, the Satya, the Tretā, and the Dvāpara-yuga, answering to the golden age of its early innocence: to the silver — when it reached its maturity: and to the Bronze age, when, separating into sexes, they became the mighty demi-gods of old.<sup>3</sup>

Happily for the human race the “Elect Race” had already become the vehicle of incarnation of the (intellectually and spiritually) highest Dhyānis before Humanity had become quite material. When the last sub-races — save some lowest — of the Third Race had perished with the great Lemurian Continent, “the seeds of *the Trinity of Wisdom*” had already acquired the secret of immortality on Earth, that gift which allows the same great personality to step *ad libitum* from one worn-out body into another.<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Ovid: *Metamorphoses*, Bk. I, 274-92; (tr. Kline)

<sup>2</sup> *ibid.*, Bk. I, 293-312

<sup>3</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 520 *fn.*; [on Melia, the personification of the ash tree, whence Hesiod says race of the age of Bronze had issued.]

<sup>4</sup> *ibid.*, II p. 276

## **Our globe continues to be subject to periodical changes which go hand-in-hand with the races.**

In the same way that the evolution of the First Race (from the bodies of the *pitaras*) took place on seven distinctly separated regions of the (then) only Earth at the arctic pole — so did the ultimate transformation of the Third occur: it began in those northern regions, which have just been described a few pages back as including Bering's Straits, and what there then was of dry land in Central Asia, when the climate was semi-tropical even in the Arctic regions and most adapted to the primitive wants of nascent physical man. That region, however, has been more than once frigid and tropical in turn since the appearance of man. The *Commentary* tells us that the Third Race was only about the middle point of its development when:

*The axle of the Wheel tilted. The Sun and Moon shone no longer over the heads of that portion of the SWEAT-BORN; people knew snow, ice, and frost, and men, plants, and animals were dwarfed in their growth. Those that did not perish REMAINED AS HALF-GROWN BABES<sup>1</sup> IN SIZE AND INTELLECT. This was the third pralaya of the races.<sup>2</sup>*

Which means again, that our globe is subject to seven periodical *entire* changes which go *pari passu* with the races. For the Secret Doctrine teaches that, during this Round, there must be seven terrestrial *pralayas*, three occasioned by the change in the inclination of the earth's axis. It is a *law* which acts at its appointed time, and not at all blindly, as science may think, but in strict accordance and harmony with *Karmic* law. In Occultism this inexorable law is referred to as "the great ADJUSTER." Science confesses its ignorance of the cause producing climatic vicissitudes and such changes in the axial direction, which are always followed by these vicissitudes; nor does it seem so sure of the axial changes. And being unable to account for them, it is prepared rather to deny the axial phenomena altogether, than admit the intelligent *Karmic* hand and law which alone could reasonably explain such sudden changes and their results. It has tried to account for them by various more or less fantastic speculations; one of which would be the sudden, and as imaginary, collision of our earth with a comet (De Boucheporn's hypothesis), as the cause of all the geological revolutions. But we prefer holding to our esoteric explanation, since FOHAT is as good as any comet, having, in addition, universal intelligence to guide him.

Thus, since Vaivasvata Manu's Humanity appeared on this Earth, there have already been four such axial disturbances; when the old continents — save the first one — were sucked in by the oceans, other lands appeared, and huge mountain chains arose where there had been none before! The face of the Globe was completely changed each time; the *survival of the fittest* nations and races was secured through timely help; and the unfit ones — the failures — were disposed of by being swept off the earth. Such sorting and shifting does not happen between sunset and sunrise, as one may think, but requires several thousands of years before the new house is set in order.

---

<sup>1</sup> "Half-grown babes" in comparison with their giant Brethren on other zones. So would we now [were that to happen to us].

<sup>2</sup> Relates to Lemuria.

The *Sub*-races are subject to the same cleansing process, as also the side-branchlets (the family-Races).<sup>1</sup>



The Deluge <detail> (1508-9) Buonarroti Michelangelo, Cappella Sistina, Vatican

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 329-30



## Duration of humanity in mortal years.

[The bulk of present day humanity is scattered on the face of Planet D, our beautiful Earth, as the Fifth Root-Race in its Fourth Round.]

### Duration of each Planetary Round in this Minor Manvantara

Round 1	154,285,714
Round 2	308,571,428
Round 3	462,857,142
Round 4	617,142,856
Round 5	771,428,570
Round 6	925,714,284
Round 7	1,079,999,998
Total	4,319,999,992 years <sup>1</sup>

### Duration of humanity in this Round, on each Planet

Planet A	11,020,408
Planet B	22,040,816
Planet C	33,061,224
Planet D	44,081,632
Planet E	55,102,040
Planet F	66,122,448
Planet G	77,142,856
Total	308,571,414 years <sup>2</sup>

### Duration of human life-waves in this Round, on Planet Earth

Root-Race 1	1,574,344
Root-Race 2	3,148,688
Root-Race 3	4,723,032
Root-Race 4	6,297,376
Root-Race 5	7,871,720
Root-Race 6	9,446,064
Root-Race 7	11,020,408
Total	44,081,632 years <sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> It will be obvious that for the purpose of having round numbers, we have, in our calculations, omitted fractions. Thus on the whole “day of Brahmā” we have left off a period of eight years. It should also be noted that each “Round” period in the above table signifies both the period of planetary Activity and interplanetary Rest.

<sup>2</sup> For the sake of having round numbers, we are again obliged to leave off fractions and hence there is a slight difference. This figure when doubled, will give 28 years less than the 4<sup>th</sup> Round period mentioned above. Here in the period of activity we have a difference of only fourteen years.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (CYCLES, MANVANTARAS, AND ROUNDS) XIII pp. 303, 304; [full text in the Appendices to “Planetary Rounds of the Divine Monad,” in our Planetary Rounds and Globes Series. — ED. PHIL.]

## Appendix B. Enoch-Enoïchion is Inner Eye and Voice.

*Synonymous terms compiled by ED. PHIL.*

Cyclopean Eye, Deva Eye (Devāksha), Dhyāni-Chohans (generic name for the creative powers of the Hierarchy of Compassion), Eye of Dangma of the stanzas of Dzyan, Eye of Śiva, Hanōkh or Hermes (son of Seth and generic name of early seers), Initiator's Instructor, Inner Eye or Seer,<sup>1</sup> Seth or Agathodaimōn (progenitor of the Third Race), Voice of the Silence.

While Buddhi is wedded to Ātman, man's spiritual energy remains dormant. If galvanized by the essence of Manas, Buddhi awakens and becomes an active, irresistible centre of spiritual force and guidance.

**The prophecies of Enoch extend to the end of our present race but are not his own, they were given by a great Seer.**

The prophecies of the *Book of Enoch* are indeed prophetic, but they were intended for, and cover the records of, the five Races out of the seven — everything relating to the last two being kept secret. Thus the remark made by the Editor of the English translation, that:

Chapter xcii records a series of prophecies extending from Enoch's own time to about one thousand years beyond the present generation,<sup>2</sup>

is faulty. The prophecies extend to the end of our present Race, not merely to a "thousand years" hence. Very true that:

In the system of [Christian] chronology adopted, a day stands [occasionally] for hundred, and a week for seven hundred years.<sup>3</sup>

But this is an arbitrary and fanciful system adopted by Christians to make Biblical chronology fit with facts or theories, and does not represent the original thought. The "days" stand for the undetermined periods of the Side-Races, and the "weeks" for the Sub-Races, the Root-Races being referred to by an expression that is not even found in the English translation. Moreover the sentence at the bottom of page 150:

Subsequently, in the fourth week . . . the visions of the holy and the righteous shall be seen, the order of generation after generation *shall take place*,<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Cf. "In India it is called 'The Eye of Śiva,' but beyond the great range it is known as 'Dangma's opened eye' in esoteric phraseology. . . . Dangma means a purified soul, one who has become a Jivanmukta, the highest adept, or rather a Mahātma so-called. His 'opened eye' is the inner spiritual eye of the seer, and the faculty which manifests through it is not clairvoyance as ordinarily understood, *i.e.*, the power of seeing at a distance, but rather the faculty of spiritual intuition, through which direct and certain knowledge is obtainable. This faculty is intimately connected with the 'third eye,' which mythological tradition ascribes to certain races of men." *Secret Doctrine*, I p. 46 *fn.s.*

<sup>2</sup> *op. cit.*, p. xxiii

<sup>3</sup> *loc. cit.*

<sup>4</sup> Chapter xcii, 9

is quite wrong. It stands in the original: “the order of generation after generation had taken place on the earth,” etc.; that is, after the first human race procreated in the truly human way had sprung up in the Third Root-Races; a change which entirely alters the meaning. Then all that is given in the translation — as very likely also in the Ethiopic text, since the copies have been sorely tampered with — as about things which were to happen in the future, is, we are informed, in the past tense in the original Chaldaean MSS., and is not prophecy, but a narrative of what had already come to pass. When Enoch begins “to speak from a book”<sup>1</sup> he is reading the account given by a great Seer, and the prophecies are not his own, but are from the Seer. Enoch or Enoichion means “internal eye” or Seer. Thus every Prophet and Adept may be called “Enoichion,” without becoming a pseudo-Enoch. But here, the Seer who compiled the present *Book of Enoch* is distinctly shown as reading out from a book:

**The First Root-Race came to an end during the second subrace of the Third.**

I have been born the seventh in the first week [the seventh branch, or Side-Race, of the first Sub-Race, after physical generation had begun, namely, in the third Root-Race] . . . But after me, in the second week [second Sub-Race], great wickedness shall arise [arose, rather] . . . in that week the end of the first shall take place, in which mankind shall be safe. But when the first is completed, iniquity shall grow up . . . <sup>2</sup>

As translated it has no sense. As it stands in the Esoteric text, it simply means that the First Root-Race shall come to an end during the second Sub-Race of the Third Root-Race, in the period of which time mankind will be safe; all this having no reference whatever to the biblical Deluge. Verse 10<sup>th</sup> speaks of the sixth week [sixth Sub-Race of the Third Root-Race] when

. . . all those who are in it shall be darkened, the hearts of all of them shall be forgetful of wisdom [the divine knowledge will be dying out], and in it shall a man ascend.

**But the Elect of humanity have been already led to safety by their First Hierophant at the very close of the Second Race.**

This “man” is taken by the interpreters, for some mysterious reasons of their own, to mean Nebuchadnezzar; he is in reality the first Hierophant of the purely human Race (after the allegorical Fall into generation) selected to perpetuate the dying Wisdom of the Devas (Angels or Elohim). He is the first “Son of Man” — the mysterious appellation given to the divine Initiates of the first human school of the Mānushis (men), at the very close of the Third Root-Race. He is also called the “Saviour,” as it was He, with the other Hierophants, who saved the Elect and the Perfect from the geological conflagration, leaving to perish in the cataclysm of the Close<sup>3</sup> those who forgot the primeval wisdom in sexual sensuality.

---

<sup>1</sup> *op. cit.*, xcii, 4

<sup>2</sup> *op. cit.*, ch. xcii, 4-7

<sup>3</sup> At the close of every Root-Race there comes a cataclysm, in turn by fire or water. Immediately after the “Fall into generation” the dross of the third Root-Race — those who fell into sensuality by falling off from the teaching

And during its completion [of the “sixth week,” or the sixth Sub-Race] he shall burn the house of dominion [the half of the globe or the then inhabited continent] with fire, and all the race of the elect root shall be dispersed.<sup>1</sup>

The above applies to the Elect Initiates, and not at all to the Jews, the supposed chosen people, or to the Babylonian captivity, as interpreted by the Christian theologians. Considering that we find Enoch, or his perpetuator, mentioning the execution of the “decree upon sinners” in several different weeks,<sup>2</sup> saying that “every work of the ungodly shall disappear from the whole earth” during this fourth time (the Fourth Race), it surely can hardly apply to the one solitary Deluge of the Bible, still less to the Captivity.<sup>3</sup>

**The achievements of humanity in arts, sciences, and philosophy from the early Third to the very end of the Fourth Race have been concealed by Enoch in the bowels of the Earth before the Deluge.**

The Secret Doctrine teaches us that the arts, sciences, theology, and especially the philosophy of every nation which preceded the last *universally known*, but not universal Deluge, had been recorded ideographically from the primitive oral records of the Fourth Race, and that these were the inheritance of the latter from the early Third Root-Race before the allegorical Fall. Hence, also, the Egyptian pillars, the tablets, and even the “white Oriental porphyry stone” of the Masonic legend — which Enoch, fearing that the real and precious secrets would be lost, concealed before the Deluge in the bowels of the Earth — were simply the more or less symbolical and allegorical copies from the primitive Records. The *Book of Enoch* is one of such copies and is a Chaldean, now very incomplete compendium. As already said, *Enoichion* means in Greek the “inner eye,” or the Seer;<sup>4</sup> in Hebrew, and with the *help of Masoretic* points it means the initiator and instructor, עֲנוֹךְ. It is a generic title; besides which his legend is that of several other prophets, Jewish and heathen, with changes of made-up details, the root-form being the same. Elijah is also taken up into Heaven *alive*; and the astrologer, at the court of Izdubar, the Chaldean *Hea-bani*, is likewise raised to heaven by the god Hea, who was *his* patron, as Jehovah was of Elijah, (whose name means in Hebrew “God-Yāh,” “God is Jehovah”), and again of *Eliyahu*, which has the same meaning.

---

of the Divine Instructors — were destroyed, after which the Fourth Root-Race originated, at the end of which took place the last Deluge. (See the “Sons of God” mentioned in *Isis Unveiled*, Vol. I, pp. 593 *et seq.*)

<sup>1</sup> *op. cit.*, ch. xcii, 11

<sup>2</sup> *op. cit.*, ch. xcii, 7, 11, 13, 15

<sup>3</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (THE BOOK OF ENOCH, THE ORIGIN AND THE FOUNDATION OF CHRISTIANITY) XIV pp. 80-82

<sup>4</sup> [Cf. “The possession of a physical *third eye*, we are told, was enjoyed by the men of the Third Root-Race down to nearly the middle period of Third SUB-race of the Fourth Root-Race, when the consolidation and perfection of the human frame made it disappear from the outward anatomy of man. Psychically and spiritually, however, its mental and visual perceptions lasted till nearly the end of the Fourth Race, when its functions, owing to the materiality and depraved condition of mankind, died out altogether before the submersion of the bulk of the Atlantean continent.” *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 306]

**Euthanasia then symbolised the death of the physical body of an adept, who continues to live in his astral body here on earth for the benefit of all living men; not the painless suicide of today's common man.**

This kind of easy death, or *euthanasia*, has an esoteric meaning. It symbolises the death of any adept who has reached the power and degree, as also the purification, which enable him to die only in the physical body and *still live and lead a conscious life* in his astral body. The variations on this theme are endless, but the secret meaning is ever the same. The Pauline expression “that he should not see death” — *ut non videret mortem*<sup>1</sup> — has thus an esoteric meaning, but nothing *supernatural* in it. The mangled interpretation given of some Biblical hints to the effect that Enoch, “whose years will equal those of the world,” (of the *Solar* year, 365 days), will share with Christ and the prophet Elijah the honours and bliss of the last advent and of the destruction of Antichrist — signify, *esoterically*, that some of the great adepts will return in the Seventh Race, when all error will be made away with, and the advent of TRUTH will be heralded by those *Sishtas*, the holy “Sons of Light.”<sup>2</sup>

**Enoch stands for the first subrace of the Fifth Root-Race, and as a personification of the two preceding races.**

Esoterically, Enoch is the “Son of man,” the first; and symbolically, the first Sub-Race of the *Fifth* Root-Race.<sup>3</sup> And if his name yields for purposes of numerical and astronomical glyphs the meaning of the solar year, or 365, in conformity to the age assigned to him in *Genesis*, it is because, being the seventh, he is, for Occult purposes, the personified period of the two preceding Races with their fourteen Sub-Races. Therefore, he is shown in the Book as the great grandfather of Noah who, in his turn, is the personification of the mankind of the Fifth, struggling with that of the Fourth Root-Race—the great period of the revealed and profaned Mysteries, when the “sons of God” coming down on Earth took for wives the daughters of men, and taught them the secrets of the Angels; in other words, when the “mind-born” men of the Third Race mixed themselves with those of the Fourth, and the divine Science was gradually brought down by men to Sorcery.<sup>4</sup>

**He is also a symbol of man's dual nature: Solar and Spiritual, esoterically; Lunar and Material, exoterically.**

Interpreted with the help of merely the symbolical key, Enoch is the type of the dual nature of man — spiritual and physical. Hence he occupies the centre of the astronomical cross (given by Éliphas Lévi from a secret work), which is a six-pointed star, “the Adonāi.” In the upper triangle is the Eagle; in the left lower triangle stands the bull; in the right, the lion: while between the bull and the lion, over them and under the eagle, is the face of Enoch or man.<sup>5</sup> Now the figures on the upper triangle repre-

---

<sup>1</sup> *Hebrews* xi, 5

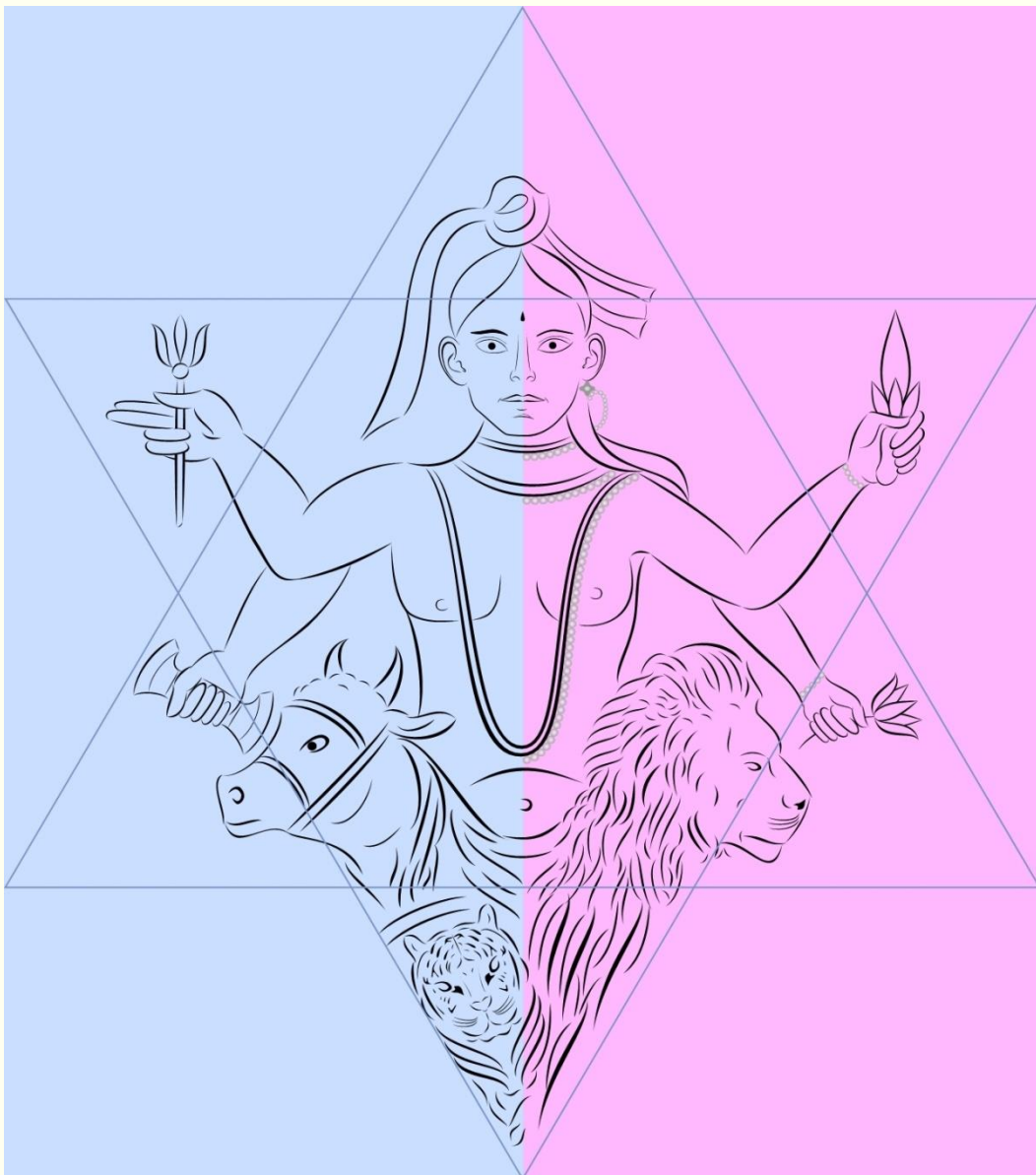
<sup>2</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II, § XXI, pp. 540-31

<sup>3</sup> In the Bible [*Genesis* iv and v] there are three distinct Enochs [Hanōkh] — the son of Cain, the son of Seth, and the son of Jared; but they are all identical, and two of them are mentioned for the purposes of misleading. The years of only the last two are given, the first one being left without further notice.

<sup>4</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (THE BOOK OF ENOCH, THE ORIGIN AND THE FOUNDATION OF CHRISTIANITY) XIV p. 86

<sup>5</sup> See the illustrative diagram in *Isis Unveiled*, Vol. II, p. 452.

sent the Four Races, leaving out the first — the *Chhāyās* or Shadows — and the “Son of Man,” *Enos* or *Enoch*, is in the centre, because he stands between the two (the Fourth and the Fifth) Races, as he represents the Secret Wisdom of both. These are the four animals of *Ezekiel* and of *Revelation*. The double triangle, however, which faces it on page 453, in Vol. II of *Isis Unveiled* — the Hindu *Ardhanārī*<sup>1</sup> — is by far the best. For there, only the three (for us) historical races are symbolized; the third, the androgynous, by *Ardhanārī*; the fourth, symbolized by the strong, powerful lion; and the fifth — the Āryan — by that which is its most sacred symbol to this day, the bull (and the cow).



<sup>1</sup> [Also known as Ammiappan (mother-father), Ardhanaranari (the half man-woman), Ardhanarinateshvara (the Lord of dance who is half-woman), Ardhanarisha (the Lord who is half-woman), Ardhanarishvara (the Lord who is half-woman), Ardhayuvatishvara (the Lord whose half is a young woman), Naranari (man-woman), and by many other names. — Redrawn herein by Philaletheians GR.]

A man of great erudition — a French savant — Silvestre de Sacy, finds several most singular statements in the *Book of Enoch*, “worthy of the most serious examination,” he says. For instance, “the author [Enoch] makes the solar year consist of 364 days, and seems to know periods of three, of five, and of eight years, followed by *four* supplementary days, which, in his system, appear to be those of the equinoxes and solstices.” To which he adds, later on, “I see but one means to palliate them [these “absurdities”]; it is to suppose that the author expounds some *fanciful* system which *may have existed* BEFORE THE ORDER OF NATURE HAD BEEN ALTERED AT THE PERIOD OF THE UNIVERSAL DELUGE.”<sup>1, 2</sup>

### **His Book is a résumé of the main features of the history of the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Races.**

The *Book of Enoch*, in short, is a *résumé*, a compound of the main features of the History of the Third, Fourth and Fifth Races; a very few prophecies from the present age of the world; a long retrospective, introspective and prophetic summary of universal and quite *historical* events — geological, ethnological, astronomical, and psychic — with a touch of Theogony out of the antediluvian records. The Book of this mysterious personage is referred to and quoted copiously in the *Pistis Sophia*, and also in the *Zohar* and its most ancient *Midrashim*. Origen and Clement of Alexandria held it in the highest esteem.<sup>3</sup> To say, therefore, that it is a post-Christian forgery is to utter an absurdity and to become guilty of an anachronism, since Origen, among others, lived in the second century of the Christian era, yet he mentions it as an ancient and venerable work. The secret and sacred name and its potency are well and clearly though allegorically described in the old volume. From the eighteenth to the fiftieth chapter, the Visions of Enoch are all descriptive of the Mysteries of Initiation, one of which is the Burning Valley of the “Fallen Angels.”<sup>4</sup>

### **The Third Eye first opened in the Third Race.**

#### **Even today, the pineal gland, seat of the Third Eye, though withdrawn and atrophied, is far more connected with Soul and Spirit than with the physiological senses of man.**

Had the leading Scientists a glimmer of the *real* processes employed by the Evolutionary Impulse, and the winding *cyclic* course of this great law, they would *know* instead of conjecturing; and feel as certain of the future physical transformations of the human kind by the knowledge of its past forms. Then, would they see the fallacy and all the absurdity of their modern “blind-force” and mechanical processes of nature; realizing, in consequence of such knowledge, that the said pineal gland, for instance, could not but be disabled for *physical* use at this stage of our cycle. If the odd “eye” in man is now atrophied, it is a proof that, as in the lower animal, it has once been active; for nature never creates the smallest, the most insignificant form

---

<sup>1</sup> J.F. Danielo, “Le Livre to la Vision d’Enoch,” *Annales de philosophie chrétienne*, Nouvelle Série, Tome 17, Décembre 1838, p. 393

<sup>2</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II, § XXI, p. 533

<sup>3</sup> [Origen, *De princ.*, IV, i, 35; and *Contra Celsum*, V, liv]

<sup>4</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II, § XXI, p. 535

without some definite purpose and use. It was an *active* organ, we say, at that stage of evolution when the spiritual element in man reigned supreme over the hardly nascent intellectual and psychic elements. And, as the cycle ran down toward that point when the physiological senses were developed by, and went *pari passu* with, the growth and consolidation of the physical man, the interminable and complex vicissitudes and tribulations of zoological development, that median “eye” ended by atrophying along with the early spiritual and purely psychic characteristics in man. The eye is the mirror and also the window of the soul, says popular wisdom, and *Vox populi, Vox Dei*.<sup>1</sup>

**The two front eyes look before them without seeing either past or future. The third, embraces eternity.**<sup>2</sup>

	<b>Within</b>	<b>Without</b>
Race 1	Spiritual	Ethereal
Race 2	Psycho-spiritual	Ethero-physical
Race 3	Psycho-spiritual, but without being interfered by the hardly nascent physiological senses.	Astro-physical

**In man, the Third Eye was (and could be) the organ of internal spiritual sight; in animals, that of objective vision.**

In the beginning, every class and family of living species was hermaphrodite and objectively one-eyed. In the animal, whose form was as ethereal (astrally) as that of man, before the bodies of both began to evolve their coats of skin, viz., to evolve from *within without* the thick coating of physical substance or matter with its internal physiological mechanism — the third eye was primarily, as in man, the only seeing organ. The two physical front eyes developed later on in both brute and man, whose organ of physical sight was, at the commencement of the Third Race, in the same position as that of some of the blind vertebrata, in our day, *i.e.*, beneath an opaque skin. But the stages of the *odd*, or primeval eye, in man and brute, are now inverted, as the former has already passed that animal *non-rational* stage in the Third Round, and is ahead of mere brute creation by a whole plane of consciousness. Therefore, while the “Cyclopean” eye was, and still is, in man the organ of *spiritual* sight, in the animal it was that of objective vision. And this eye, having performed its function, was replaced, in the course of physical evolution from the simple to the complex, by two eyes, and thus was stored and laid aside by nature for further use in *Æons* to come.

This explains why the pineal gland reached its highest development proportionately with the lowest physical development. It is the Vertebrata in which it is the most

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 298

<sup>2</sup> Cf. “Let us remember that the *First Race* is shown in Occult sciences as spiritual within and ethereal without; the *second*, psycho-spiritual mentally, and ethero-physical bodily; the *third*, still bereft of intellect in its beginning, is astro-physical in its body, and lives an inner life, in which the psycho-spiritual element is in no way interfered with as yet by the hardly nascent physiological senses. Its two front eyes look before them without seeing either past or future. But the ‘third eye’ ‘embraces ETERNITY.’” *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 298 *fn.*



prominent and objective, and in man it is most carefully hidden and inaccessible, except to the anatomist. No less light is thrown thereby on the future physical, spiritual, and intellectual state of mankind, in periods corresponding on parallel lines with other past periods, and always on the lines of ascending and descending cyclic evolution and development. Thus, a few centuries before the *Kali-yuga* — the black age which began nearly 5,000 years ago — it was said (paraphrased into comprehensible sentences):

*We [the Fifth Root-Race] in our first half [of duration] onward [on the now ASCENDING arc of the cycle] are on the mid-point of [or between] the First and the Second Races — falling downward [i.e., the races were then on the descending arc of the cycle]. . . . Calculate for thyself, Lanoo, and see. (Commentary, xx)<sup>1</sup>*



Cyclops Polyphemus (1595-1605) Annibale Carracci, Palazzo Farnese, Rome

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 299-300

## Appendix C. Toils of the Eternal Pilgrim.

**Each Cosmic Monad is a self-born Centre of Force, from within which emerges a planetary chain whose radiations become many self-born Manus, each the creator of His own humanity.**

The Manus are the creators of the creators of our First Race — the Spirit of mankind — which does not prevent the *seven* Manus from having been the first “pre-Adamic” men on Earth.

Manu declares himself created by Virāj, or Vaiśvānara, (the Spirit of Humanity),<sup>1</sup> which means that his Monad emanates from the never resting Principle in the beginning of every new Cosmic activity: that *Logos* or UNIVERSAL MONAD (collective Elōhīm) that radiates *from within himself* all those Cosmic Monads that become the centres of activity — progenitors of the numberless Solar systems as well as of the yet undifferentiated *human* monads of planetary chains as well as of every being thereon. Each Cosmic Monad is “Svāyambhuva,” the SELF-BORN, *which becomes the Centre of Force, from within which emerges a planetary chain* (of which chains there are seven in our system), and whose radiations become again so many Manus Svāyambhuva (a generic name, mysterious and meaning far more than appears),<sup>2</sup> each of these becoming, as a *Host*, the Creator of his own Humanity.<sup>3, 4</sup>

Every Spiritual Individuality has a gigantic evolutionary journey to perform, a tremendous gyratory progress to accomplish. First — at the very beginning of the great Mahamanvantaric rotation, from first to last of the man-bearing planets, as on each of them, the monad has to pass through seven successive races of man. From the dumb offshoot of the ape (the latter strongly differentiating from the now known specimens) up to the present *fifth* race, or rather variety, and through two more races, before he has done with this earth only; and then on to the next, higher and higher still.<sup>5</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> See *Manusmriti*, Adhyāya I, śloka 32-33. Vaiśvānara is, in another sense, the living magnetic fire that pervades the manifested solar system. It is the most objective (to us the reverse) and ever present aspect of the ONE LIFE, for it is the Vital Principle. (See *The Theosophist*, Vol. IV, July 1883.) It is also a name of Agni.

<sup>2</sup> [Cf. “Esoteric doctrine teaches that the Dhyāni-Chohans are the collective aggregate of divine Intelligence or primordial *mind*, and that the first Manus — the seven ‘mind-born’ Spiritual Intelligences — are identical with the former. Hence the ‘Kuan-shih-yin’ — ‘the golden Dragon in whom are the seven,’ of Stanza III — is the primordial Logos, or Brahmā, the first manifested creative Power; and the Dhyāni-Energies are the Manus, or *Manu-Svāyambhuva* collectively. The direct connection, moreover, between the ‘Manus’ and ‘Mahat’ is easy to see. *Manu* is from the root *man*, ‘to think’; and thinking proceeds from the mind. It is, in Cosmogony, the pre-nebular period.” *Secret Doctrine*, I p. 452. — ED. PHIL.]

<sup>3</sup> See pp. 307-10

<sup>4</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 311

<sup>5</sup> *Mahatma Letter* 18 (62) pp. 115-16; 3<sup>rd</sup> Combined ed.

**While we have the power to dispel the darkness of ignorance, we are also duty-bound to preserve Sacred Truth from profanation.**

*“First come the SELF-EXISTENT on this Earth. They are the ‘Spiritual Lives’ projected by the absolute WILL and LAW, at the dawn of every rebirth of the worlds. These LIVES are the divine ‘SISHTA,’ [the seed-Manus, or the Prajāpatis and the Pitris].”*

From these proceed

1. *The First Race, the “Self-born,” which are the [astral] shadows of their Progenitors.<sup>1</sup> The body was devoid of all understanding [mind, intelligence, and will]. The inner being [the higher self or Monad], though within the earthly frame, was unconnected with it. The link, the Manas, was not there as yet.*

2. *From the First [race] emanated the second, called the “Sweat-born”<sup>2</sup> and the “Boneless.” This is the Second Root-Race, endowed by the preservers [Rākshasas<sup>3</sup>] and the incarnating gods [Asuras and the Kumāras] with the first*

---

<sup>1</sup> See Stanza IV, Śloka 15, *Commentary* on p. 92.

<sup>2</sup> To speak of *life* as having arisen, and of the human race as having originated, in this *absurdly unscientific* way, in the face of the modern Pedigrees of Man, is to court instantaneous annihilation. The esoteric doctrine risks the danger, nevertheless, and even goes so far as to ask the impartial reader to compare the above hypothesis (if it is one) with Haeckel’s theory — now fast becoming an axiom with science — which is quoted verbatim:

“ . . . ‘How did life, the living world of organisms, arise?’ and, secondly, the special question: ‘How did the human race originate?’ The first of these two inquiries, that as to the first appearance of living beings, can only be decided empirically [!] by proof of the so-called Archēbiosis, or equivocal generation, or the spontaneous production of organisms of the simplest conceivable kind. Such are the Monera (Protophytes, Protamoeba, etc.), exceedingly simple microscopic masses of protoplasm without structure or organisation, which take in nutriment and *reproduce themselves by division*. Such a Moneron as that primordial organism *discovered* by the renowned English zoologist Huxley, and named *Bathybius Haeckelii*, appears as a continuous thick protoplasmic covering at the greatest depths of the ocean, between 3,000 and 30,000 feet. *It is true that the first appearance of such Monera has not up to the present moment been actually observed*; but there is nothing intrinsically improbable in such an Evolution.” (*The Pedigree of Man*, Aveling’s tr., pp. 32-33.)

The Bathybius protoplasm having recently turned out to be no organic substance at all, there remains little to be said. Nor, after reading this, does one need to consume further time in refuting the further assertion that:

“In that case man also has *beyond a doubt* [to the minds of Haeckel and his like] arisen from the lower Mammalia, apes, the earlier simian creatures, the still earlier Marsupialia, Amphibia, Pisces, by progressive transformations,” all produced by “a series of *natural forces working blindly, . . . without aim, without design*” (p. 36).

The above-quoted passage bears its criticism on its own face. Science is made to teach that which, up to the present time, “*has never been actually observed*.” She is made to deny the phenomenon of an *intelligent* nature and a vital force independent of form and matter, and to find it more scientific to teach the miraculous performance of “*natural forces working blindly without aim or design*.” If so, then we are led to think that the *physico-mechanical* forces of the brains of certain eminent Scientists are leading them on as blindly to sacrifice logic and common sense on the altar of mutual admiration. Why should the protoplasmic *Moneron* producing the first living creature through *self-division* be held as a very scientific hypothesis, and an ethereal *pre-human* race generating the primeval men in the same fashion be tabooed as *unscientific* superstition? Or has materialism obtained a sole monopoly in Science?

<sup>3</sup> The *Rākshasas*, regarded in Indian popular theology as demons, are called the “Preservers” beyond the Himālayas. This double and contradictory meaning has its origin in a philosophical allegory, which is variously rendered in the *Purānas*. It is that when Brahmā created the demons, Yakshas (from *yaksh*, to eat) and the Rākshasas, both of which kinds of demons, as soon as born, wished to devour their creator, those among them that called out, “Not so! oh, let him be saved (preserved)” were named Rākshasas (*Vishnu-Purāna*, Bk. I, ch. v). The *Bhāgavata-Purāna* (III, 20, 19-21) renders the allegory differently. Brahmā transformed himself into night (or ignorance) invested with a body, upon which the Yakshas and Rākshasas seized, exclaiming, “Do not spare it; devour it.” Brahmā then cried out, “Do not devour me, spare me.” This has an inner meaning of course. The “body of Night” the darkness of ignorance, and it is the darkness of silence and secrecy. Now the Rākshasas are shown in almost every case to be Yogis, pious Sādhus and Initiates, a rather unusual occupation for *demons*. The meaning then is that while we have power to dispel the darkness of ignorance, “*devour it*,” we have to preserve the sacred truth from profanation. “Brahmā is for the Brahmans alone,” says that proud caste. The moral of the *fable* is evident.

*primitive and weak spark [the germ of intelligence] . . . And from these in turn proceeds:*

3. *The Third Root-Race, the “Two-fold” [Androgynes]. The first Races thereof are shells, till the last is “inhabited” [i.e., informed] by the Dhyānis.*

The Second Race, as stated above, being also sexless, evolved out of itself, at its beginning, the Third Androgyne Race by an analogous, but already more complicated process. As described in the *Commentary*, the very earliest of that race were:

*The “Sons of Passive Yoga.”<sup>1</sup> They issued from the second Mānushyas [human race], and became oviparous. The emanations that came out of their bodies during the seasons of procreation were ovulatory; the small spheroidal nucleus developing into a large soft, egg-like vehicle, gradually hardened, when, after a period of gestation, it broke and the young human animal issued from it unaided, as the fowls do in our race.<sup>2</sup>*

**Man’s spiritual soul has descended from a pure, luminous, incorporeal form to be chained to animal bodies.**

“The Souls [Monads] are pre-existent in the world of Emanations”;<sup>3</sup> and the *Zohar* teaches that in the “Soul” is the *real man*, i.e., the Ego and the conscious I AM: *Manas*.

“They descend from the pure air to be *chained to bodies*,” says Josephus repeating the belief of the Essenes.<sup>4</sup> “The air is full of Souls,” states Philo Judaeus, “*they descend to be tied to mortal bodies, being desirous to live in them*”;<sup>5</sup> because through, and in, the human form they will become *progressive* beings, whereas the nature of the angel is purely *intransitive*, therefore man has in him the potency of transcending the faculties of the Angels. Hence the Initiates in India say that it is the Brahman, the twice-born, who rules the gods or devas; and Paul repeated it *1 Corinthians* vi, 3: “Know ye not that we [the Initiates] shall judge angels”?

Finally, it is shown in every ancient scripture and Cosmogony that man evolved primarily as a *luminous incorporeal form*, over which, like the molten brass round the clay model of the sculptor, the physical frame of his body was built by, through, and from, the lower forms and types of animal terrestrial life. “The Soul and the *Form* when descending on Earth put on an earthly garment,” says the *Zohar*. His protoplasmic body was not formed of that matter of which our mortal frames are fashioned.<sup>6</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The gradual evolution of man in the Secret Doctrine shows that all the later (to the profane the earliest) Races have their *physical* origin in the early Fourth Race. But is the sub-race, which preceded the one that separated sexually, that is to be regarded as the *spiritual* ancestors of our present generations, and especially of the Eastern Āryan Races. Weber’s idea that the Indo-Germanic Race preceded the Āryan *Vedic* Race is, to the Occultist, grotesque to the last degree.

<sup>2</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 164-66

<sup>3</sup> *Wisdom of Solomon*, viii, 20

<sup>4</sup> *History of the Jewish War*, Bk. II, viii, 11

<sup>5</sup> *De gigantibus*, § 2; *De somniis*, I, § 22. Which shows that the Essenes believed in rebirth and many reincarnations on Earth, as Jesus himself did, a fact we can prove from the New Testament itself.

<sup>6</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 111-12

## Man was on earth in this round from the very beginning.

**Having passed through all the kingdoms of nature in the previous three rounds, his physical frame was ready to receive the Divine Pilgrim at the first dawn of human life, 18,000,000 years ago.**

Having been in all the so-called “Seven creations,” allegorizing the seven evolutionary changes, or the *sub-races*, we may call them, *of the First Root-Race of Mankind* — MAN was on earth in this Round from the beginning. Having passed through all the kingdoms of nature in the previous *three* Rounds,<sup>1</sup> his *physical* frame — one adapted to the thermal conditions of those early periods — was ready to receive the *divine Pilgrim* at the first dawn of human life, *i.e.*, 18,000,000 years ago. It is only at mid-point of the Third Root-Race that man was endowed with *Manas*. Once united, the *two* and then the *three* made one; for though the lower animals, from the amoeba to man, received *their* Monads, in which all the higher qualities are potential, all have to remain dormant till each reaches its human form, before which stage *Manas* (mind) has no development in them.<sup>2</sup> In the animals every principle is paralyzed, and in a foetus-like state, save the second (vital) and the third (the astral), and the rudiments of the fourth (*Kāma*, which is desire, instinct), whose intensity and development varies and changes with the species. To the materialist wedded to the Darwinian theory, this will read like a fairy-tale, a mystification; to the believer in the inner, spiritual man, the statement will have nothing unnatural in it.<sup>3</sup>

**Having been nursed by Air or Wind, primordial man becomes perfect later on when, with the development of “Spiritual Fire” or Divine Spirit (noumenon of the “Three in One” within), he gradually acquires from his Inner Self or Instructor, the Wisdom of Self-Consciousness, which he does not possess in the beginning.**

- Fire or the Spiritual Sun stands for Pneuma as Motion Unmanifested, Eternal Breath, “which knows itself not” — our Atman or Divine Spirit.
- Water or Moon stands for the Father-Mother of Pneuma, the Intellectual Virgin-Sophia and Mother of all Things — our Buddhi or Divine Soul.
- Air or Wind stands for Pneuma as Motion Manifested, Periodic Breath, *i.e.*, Heat plus attraction and repulsion or Mind, regulated and sustained by the never-resting Breaths (Dhyāni-Chohans) — our Manas or Human Soul.

---

<sup>1</sup> “Follow the law of analogy” — the Masters teach. *Ātma-Buddhi* is dual and *Manas* is triple; inasmuch as the former has two aspects, and the latter three, *i.e.*, as a principle *per se*, which gravitates, in its higher aspect, to *Ātma-Buddhi*, and follows, in its lower nature, *Kāma*, the seat of terrestrial and animal desires and passions. Now compare the evolution of the Races, the First and the Second of which are of the nature of *Ātma-Buddhi*, their passive Spiritual progeny, and the Third Root-Race shows three distinct divisions or aspects physiologically and psychically: the earliest, sinless; the middle portions awakening to intelligence; and the third and last decidedly *animal*, *i.e.*, *Manas* succumbs to the temptations of *Kāma*.

<sup>2</sup> “Men are made *complete* only during their third, toward the fourth cycle (race). They are made ‘gods’ for good and evil, and responsible only when the two arcs meet [after 3½ Rounds towards the *fifth* Race]. They are made so by the *Nirmānakāya* [spiritual or astral remains] of the Rudra-Kumāras, ‘*cursed* to be reborn on earth again’; meaning — *doomed in their natural turn to reincarnation* in the higher ascending arc of the terrestrial cycle.” (*Commentary*, ix)

<sup>3</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 254-55

On Stanza V.18. THE FIRST (*Race*) WERE THE SONS OF YOGA. THEIR SONS, THE CHILDREN OF THE YELLOW FATHER AND THE WHITE MOTHER.

*Commentary:*

*They were the shadows of the shadows of the Lords (b). They [the shadows] expanded. The Spirits of the Earth clothed them; the solar Lhas warmed them [i.e. preserved the vital fire in the nascent physical forms]. The Breaths had life, but had no understanding. They had no fire nor water of their own (c).*

(b) The [*Commentary*] sentence: “They were the shadows of the shadows of the Lords,” *i.e.*, the progenitors created man out of their own astral bodies, explains an universal belief. The *Devas* are credited in the East with having no shadows of their own. “The devas cast no shadows,” and this is the sure sign of a *good holy Spirit*.

Why had they “no fire or water of their own”?<sup>1</sup> Because:

(c) That which Hydrogen is to the elements and gases on the objective plane, its noumenon is in the world of mental or subjective phenomena; since its trinitarian latent nature is mirrored in its three active emanations from the three higher principles in man, namely, “Spirit, Soul, and Mind,” or *Ātman*, *Buddhi*, and *Manas*. It is the spiritual and also the material human basis. Rudimentary man, having been nursed by the “air” or the “wind,” becomes the perfect man later on; when, with the development of “Spiritual fire,” the *noumenon* of the “Three in One” within his Self, he acquires from his inner Self, or Instructor, the Wisdom of Self-Consciousness, which he does not possess in the beginning. Thus here again divine Spirit is symbolised by the Sun or Fire; divine Soul by Water and the Moon, both standing for the Father and Mother of *Pneuma*, human Soul, or Mind, symbolised by the Wind or air, for *Pneuma*, means “breath.”<sup>2</sup>

**All creatures in the world have each a superior above, whose inner pleasure it is to emanate into them but cannot illumine them until the supreme but latent potentiality concealed in Matter is awakened by Spirit.**

Evolutionary law compelled the lunar “Fathers” to pass, in their monadic condition, through all the forms of life and being on this globe; but at the end of the Third Round, they were already human in their divine nature, and were thus called upon to become the creators of the forms destined to fashion the tabernacles of the less progressed Monads, whose turn it was to incarnate. These “Forms” are called “Sons

---

<sup>1</sup> It is corroborated, however, as we have shown, by the esotericism of *Genesis*. Not only are the animals created therein after the “Adam of Dust,” but vegetation is shown *in* the Earth before “the heavens and the Earth were created.” “Every plant of the field before it [the day that the heavens and the Earth were made – iv, 4] was in the Earth” (ii, 5). Now, unless the Occult interpretation is accepted, which shows that in this 4<sup>th</sup> Round the Globe was covered with vegetation, and the first (*astral*) humanity was produced before almost anything could grow and develop thereon, what can the dead letter mean? Simply that the grass was in the earth of the Globe before that Globe was created? And yet the meaning of verse 6, which says that “there went up a mist from the Earth” and watered the whole face of the earth before it rained, and caused the trees, etc., to grow, is plain enough. It shows also in what geological period it occurred, and further what is meant by “Heaven and Earth.” It meant the firmament and dry *incrustated* land, separated and ridden of its vapours and exhalations. Moreover, the student must bear in mind that, as Adam-Kadmon, “the male and female being” of *Genesis* i, is no physical human being but the host of the Elōhīm, among which was Jehovah himself — so the animals mentioned in that chapter as “created” before man in the dead-letter text, were no animals, but the Zodiacal signs and other sidereal bodies.

<sup>2</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 112-13

of Yoga,” because Yoga (union with Brahmā exoterically) is the supreme condition of the passive infinite deity, since it contains all the divine energies and is the essence of Brahmā, who is said (as Brahmā) to create everything through Yoga power. Brahmā, Vishnu and Śiva are the most powerful energies of God, Brahma, the neuter, says a Purānic text. Yoga here is the same as Dhyāna, which word is again synonymous with Yoga in the Tibetan text, where the “Sons of Yoga” are called “Sons of Dhyāna,” or of that abstract meditation through which the Dhyāni-Buddhas create their celestial sons, the Dhyāni-Bodhisattvas. “All the creatures in the world have each a superior above. This superior, whose inner pleasure it is *to emanate into them*, cannot impart efflux until they have adored” — *i.e.*, meditated as during Yoga.<sup>1, 2</sup>

### **Only few men were destined to become incarnations of the Divine Rebels.**

*The Sons of MAHAT are the quickeners of the human Plant. They are the Waters falling upon the arid soil of latent life, and the Spark that vivifies the human animal. They are the Lords of Spiritual Life eternal. . . . In the beginning [in the Second Race] some [of the Lords] only breathed of their essence into Mānushyas [men]; and some took in man their abode.*

This shows that not all men became incarnations of the “divine Rebels,” but only a few among them. The remainder had their fifth principle simply quickened by the spark thrown into it, which accounts for the great difference between the intellectual capacities of men and races. Had not the “sons of Mahat,” speaking allegorically, skipped the intermediate worlds, in their impulse toward intellectual freedom, the animal man would never have been able to reach upward from this earth, and attain through self-exertion his ultimate goal. The cyclic pilgrimage would have to be performed through all the planes of existence half unconsciously, if not entirely so, as in the case of the animals. It is owing to this rebellion of intellectual life against the morbid inactivity of pure spirit, that we are what we are — self-conscious, thinking men, with the capabilities and attributes of Gods in us, for good as much as for evil. Hence the REBELS are our saviours. Let the philosopher ponder well over this, and more than one mystery will become clear to him. It is only by the attractive force of the contrasts that the two opposites — Spirit and Matter — can be cemented on Earth, and, smelted in the fire of self-conscious experience and suffering, find themselves wedded in Eternity. This will reveal the meaning of many hitherto incomprehensible allegories, foolishly called “fables.”<sup>3, 4</sup>



---

<sup>1</sup> R. Isaac Luria, *Sēpher M'vo She'arim*, tr. Isaac Myer, *Qabbalah*, p. 110

<sup>2</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 115-16

<sup>3</sup> *Vide infra*, pp. 111, 229.

<sup>4</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 103

## Consciousness evolves along triple lines, spiritual, psychic and physical.

From *The Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 109-16.

**For the first 3½ Root-Races, the astral shadows of the Lunar Pitris build and gradually force the evolution of the physical form towards perfection, at the cost of a proportionate loss of Spirituality. Then after, it is the Higher Ego or Incarnating Principle, the Nous or Mind, that begins reigning over the animal ego if not dragged down by the latter. In other words, Spirituality is on its ascending arc, if not impeded by materiality or selfishness. Vice and wickedness are abnormal, unnatural manifestations at this period of our human evolution, at least they ought to be so.**

(18) The Sons of Yoga. (19) The Sexless Second Race. (20) The Sons of the Sons of Twilight. (21) The "Shadow," or the Astral Man, retires within, and man develops a physical body.

Stanza V.18. THE FIRST (*Race*) WERE THE SONS OF YOGA. THEIR SONS, THE CHILDREN OF THE YELLOW FATHER AND THE WHITE MOTHER.

In the later *Commentary*, the sentence is translated:

*The Sons of the Sun and of the Moon, the nursling of ether [or the wind] (a) . . . They were the shadows of the shadows of the Lords (b). They [the shadows] expanded. The Spirits of the Earth clothed them; the solar Lhas warmed them [i.e. preserved the vital fire in the nascent physical forms]. The Breaths had life, but had no understanding. They had no fire nor water of their own (c).*

(a) Remember in this connection the *Tabula Smaragdina* of Hermes, the esoteric meaning of which has seven keys to it. The Astro-Chemical is well known to students, the anthropological may be given now. The "One thing" mentioned in it is MAN. It is said: "The Father of THAT ONE ONLY THING is the Sun; its Mother the Moon; the Wind carries it in his bosom, and its nurse is the Spirituous Earth." In the occult rendering of the same it is added: "and *Spiritual* Fire is its instructor (Guru)."

This fire is the higher Self, the Spiritual Ego, or that which is eternally reincarnating under the influence of its lower personal Selves, changing with every rebirth, full of *Tanhā* or desire to live. It is a strange law of Nature that, on this plane, the higher (Spiritual) Nature should be, so to say, in bondage to the lower. Unless the Ego takes refuge in the Ātman, the ALL-SPIRIT, and merges entirely into the essence thereof, the personal Ego may goad it to the bitter end. This cannot be thoroughly understood unless the student makes himself familiar with the mystery of evolution, which proceeds on triple lines — spiritual, psychic and physical.

That which propels towards, and forces evolution, *i.e.*, compels the growth and development of Man towards perfection, is (a) the MONAD, or that which acts in it unconsciously through a force inherent in itself; and (b) the lower astral body or the *personal* SELF. The former, whether imprisoned in a vegetable or an animal body, is endowed with, is indeed itself, that force. Owing to its identity with the ALL-FORCE, which, as said, is inherent in the Monad, it is all-potent on the *Arūpa*, or formless plane. On our plane, its essence being too pure, it remains all-potential, but individ-



ually becomes inactive: *e.g.*, the rays of the Sun, which contribute to the growth of vegetation, do not select this or that plant to shine upon. Uproot the plant and transfer it to a piece of soil where the sunbeam cannot reach it, and the latter will not follow it. So with the Ātman: unless the higher Self or EGO gravitates towards its Sun — the Monad — the lower *Ego*, or *personal* Self, will have the upper hand in every case. For it is this Ego, with its fierce Selfishness and animal desire to live a senseless life (*Tanhā*), which is “the maker of the tabernacle,” as Buddha calls it in *Dhammapada* (153 and 154). Hence the expression, “the Spirits of the Earth clothed the shadows and expanded them.” To these “Spirits” belong temporarily the human astral selves; and it is they who give, or build, the physical tabernacle of man, for the Monad and its conscious principle, *Manas*, to dwell in. But the “Solar” *Lhas*, Spirits, warm them, the shadows. This is physically and literally true; metaphysically, or on the psychic and spiritual plane, it is equally true that the Ātman alone *warms* the inner man; *i.e.*, it enlightens it with the ray of divine life and alone is able to impart to the inner man, or the reincarnating Ego, its immortality. Thus, as we shall find, for the first three and a half Root-Races, up to the middle or turning point, it is the astral shadows of the “progenitors,” the lunar Pitris, which are the formative powers in the Races, and which build and gradually force the evolution of the physical form towards perfection — this, at the cost of a proportionate loss of spirituality. Then, from the turning point, it is the Higher Ego, or incarnating principle, the *Nous* or *Mind*, which reigns over the animal Ego, and rules it whenever it is not carried down by the latter. In short, Spirituality is on its ascending arc, and the animal or physical impedes it from steadily progressing on the path of its evolution only when the selfishness of the *personality* has so strongly infected the real *inner* man with its lethal *virus*, that the upward attraction has lost all its power on the thinking reasonable man. In sober truth, vice and wickedness are an *abnormal, unnatural* manifestation, at this period of our human evolution — at least they ought to be so. The fact that mankind was never more selfish and vicious than it is now, civilized nations having succeeded in making of the first an ethical characteristic, of the second an art, is an additional proof of the exceptional nature of the phenomenon.<sup>1</sup>

It is, then, the Moon that plays the largest and most important part, as well in the formation of the Earth itself, as in the peopling thereof with human beings. The “Lunar Monads” or Pitris, the ancestors of man, become in reality man himself. They are the “Monads” who enter on the cycle of evolution on Globe A, and who, passing round the chain of planets, evolve the human form as has just been shown. At the beginning of the human stage of the Fourth Round on this Globe, they “ooze out” their astral doubles from the “ape-like” forms which they had evolved in Round III. And it is this subtle, finer form, which serves as the model round which Nature builds physical man. These “Monads” or “divine sparks” are thus the “Lunar” ancestors, the Pitris themselves. For these “Lunar Spirits” have to become “Men” in order that their “Monads” may reach a higher plane of activity and self-consciousness, *i.e.*, the plane of the *Mānasaputras*, those who endow the “senseless” shells, created and informed by the Pitris, with “mind” in the latter part of the Third Root-Race.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 109-10

<sup>2</sup> *ibid.*, I pp. 180-81 [There now follows a drawing from our Planetary Rounds and Globes Series. — ED. PHIL.]



Globe Z

**Duration of each Round**

Round 1	154,285,714
Round 2	308,571,428
Round 3	462,857,142
Round 4	617,142,856
Round 5	771,428,570
Round 6	925,714,284
Round 7	1,079,999,998
Total	4,319,999,992

(BCW XIII 303)

1 2 3 **4** 5 6 7

Globe A

Globe G

Globe B

Globe F

Globe C

Globe E

We are here! On Globe D, Round 4, Root-Race 5, our Beautiful Earth, fulcrum of the Great Kalpa, with its Seven Root-Races.

Globe D

Impulses of Spiritual Consciousness evolve wave-like in a 7-fold pattern along a chain of 7 man-bearing Globes (i.e., Planets or Spheres) plus 5 arupa-loka or unmanifested, re-visiting each one 7 times. A single passage through every Globe is termed Planetary Round or Ring, in the course of which 49 Root-Races of Humanity emerge, each one progressing through 7 Sub-Races (see Diagram 2). Every Round repeats on a higher scale the evolutionary work of the preceding Round. (Cf. SD I 187)

Integrative Theosophical Studies  
**OUR PLANETARY CHAIN OF SEVEN ROUNDS**  
 Diagram cum Emblem  
 After *The Divine Plan*, pp. 218, 342

A Day of Brahmā (Maha Brahmā) equal to 1,000 Maha Yugas, or 4,319,999,992 terrene years, followed by the Night of Brahmā, or Naimittika Maha Pralaya, of an equal duration. For an in-depth analysis of the Caduceus of the Spheres, see "Keys to the Mystery Language" in our Theosophy and Theosophists Series.

[www.philaletheians.co.uk](http://www.philaletheians.co.uk)  
Revision 10.13

## Appendix D.

# The fall of Spirit into Matter and its primal division into self and not-self, altruism and egotism, man and woman.

**The allegory of the “fall” of man and the fire “stolen” by Prometheus is another version of proud Lucifer’s “rebellion.”**

Hurled down to the bottomless pit — *Orcus*. In the religion of the Brahmans, Mahāsura, the Hindu Lucifer, becomes envious of the Creator’s resplendent light, and at the head of a legion of inferior spirits rebels against Brahmā, and declares war against him. Like Hercules, the faithful Titan, who helps Jupiter and restores to him his throne, Śiva, the third person of the Hindu trinity, hurls them all from the celestial abode into Andhera, the region of eternal darkness. But here the fallen angels are made to repent of their evil deed, and in the Hindu doctrine they are all afforded the opportunity to progress. In the Greek fiction, Hercules, the Sun-god, descends to Hades to deliver the victims from their tortures; and the Christian Church also makes her incarnate god descend to the dreary Plutonic regions and overcome the rebellious ex-archangel. In their turn the kabbalists explain the allegory in a semi-scientific way. Adam the second, or the first-created race which Plato calls gods, and the Bible the Elōhīm, was not triple in his nature like the earthly man: *i.e.*, he was not composed of soul, spirit, and body, but was a compound of sublimated astral elements into which the “Father” had breathed an immortal, divine spirit. The latter, by reason of its godlike essence, was ever struggling to liberate itself from the bonds of even that flimsy prison; hence the “sons of God,” in their imprudent efforts, were the first to trace a future model for the cyclic law. But, man must not be “like one of us,” says the Creative Deity, one of the Elōhīm “intrusted with the fabrication of the lower animal.”<sup>1</sup> And thus it was, when the men of the first race had reached the summit of the first cycle, they lost their balance, and their second envelope, the grosser clothing (astral body), dragged them down the opposite arc.<sup>2</sup>

**The sacred fire that Prometheus allegedly stole from Zeus is the flame of conscious intellect, the spark that animates Manas, our fifth principle, and makes us Thinking men; it is also the generating and sexual flame.**

The terrible crime was merely the natural result of the law of evolution: that is the races — hardly solidified at first — of our androgynous and *semi*-ethereal prototypes, materializing themselves little by little, taking on a physical body, then separating in-

---

<sup>1</sup> See Plato, *Timæus*, 41, 42, 69

<sup>2</sup> *Isis Unveiled*, I p. 299

to distinct males and females, finally *procreated* carnally after they had formerly *created* their likenesses by entirely different methods which will be explained someday (if, however, one may express by the word *create* an idea quite contrary to that of engender).

This “audacious revolt” is again an *anthropomorphic* and *personifying* allegory that we owe to the Church, which materialized, in order to disguise them the better, all the ancient ideas — old as the world. It was a philosophic doctrine imbedded in the esoteric meaning of the Promethean legend. The sacred fire which he stole from the Gods is the flame of conscious intellect, the spark which animates the fifth principle, or *Manas*; it is also the generating and sexual flame; that spark is the reflection — if not the very essence — of the Archangels or *Monads*, forced by their *karma* from the preceding *manvantara*, to incarnate in the astral forms of the *third* great pre-Adamite race before its “fall” — the fall of *Spirit into Matter*. That supposed “revolt,” that “theft” of the *creative* fire, is a result of Evolution (of which the Darwinian theory is but the rough exterior husk on the physical or material plane).

**Now, since men had discovered the secret of creation and were creating in their turn and populating the earth, what was the use of god-creators?**

Once endowed with the creative fire, completely evolved mankind had no further need for the help of the Powers or creative Gods, such as the *Elōhīm* of chapter ii of *Genesis*. *Men became creative Gods*, in their turn, able to give life to beings like themselves; whence the Greek allegory of Ouranos mutilated by Saturn-Kronos, who in turn finds himself mutilated by his son Jupiter; the allusion is perfectly transparent; since men had discovered, thanks to Prometheus, the *secret of the various methods of creation*, and were creating in their turn, what was the use of god-creators?

The so-called *theft* of the creative fire is, according to Enoch, the crime which caused the guilt of the *fallen* angels, of whom the Church has made Satan and his Host.<sup>1</sup>

**The descent of man into matter is the downward arc of a Circle of Necessity, where his primordial spirituality becomes increasingly eclipsed by nascent mentality.**

It will be observed that this philosophy of cycles, which was allegorized by the Egyptian Hierophants in the “circle of necessity,” explains at the same time the allegory of the “Fall of man.” According to the Arabian descriptions, each of the seven chambers of the Pyramids — those grandest of all cosmic symbols — was known by the name of a planet. The peculiar architecture of the Pyramids shows in itself the drift of the metaphysical thought of their builders. The apex is lost in the clear blue sky of the land of the Pharaohs, and typifies the primordial point lost in the unseen universe from whence started the first race of the spiritual prototypes of man. Each mummy, from the moment that it was embalmed, lost its physical individuality in one sense; it symbolized the human race. Placed in such a way as was best calculated to aid the

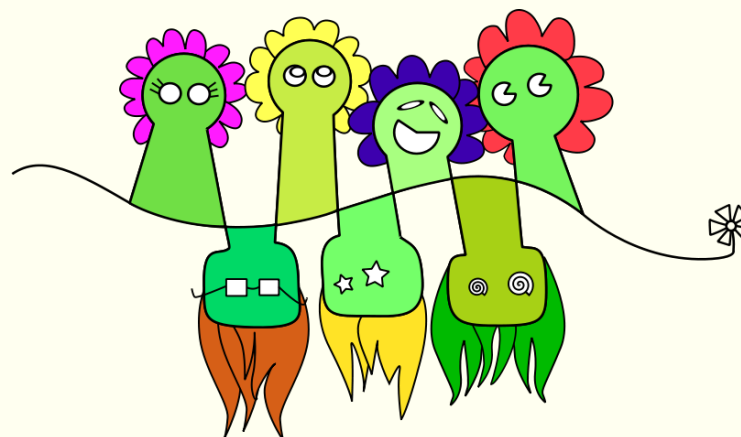
---

<sup>1</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings* (NOTES ON ABBÉ ROCA'S “ESOTERICISM OF CHRISTIAN DOGMA”) VIII pp. 386-87; Cf. “I am ignorant of what the erudite Abbé Roca intends to disclose to the world in his next volume on the subject of the “Fall from Eden” which he regards as a cataclysm, “punishment of a frightful crime, of an audacious revolt”; but I can assure him that the opinion of the “Theosophists-Chelas” upon the subject is already formed in advance.” *ibid.*, p. 386

exit of the “soul,” the latter had to pass through the seven planetary chambers before it made its exit through the symbolical apex. Each chamber typified, at the same time, one of the seven spheres, and one of the seven higher types of physico-spiritual humanity alleged to be above our own. Every 3,000 years, the soul, representative of its race, had to return to its primal point of departure before it underwent another evolution into a more perfected spiritual and physical transformation.<sup>1</sup> We must go deep indeed into the abstruse metaphysics of Oriental mysticism before we can realize fully the infinitude of the subjects that were embraced at one sweep by the majestic thought of its exponents.<sup>2</sup>

**Ādi, and probably Adam, is the First Man or the “Third First Man,” one who belongs to the Third Race.**

Ādi is the generic name in our Doctrine of all the first men, *i.e.*, the first speaking races, in each of the seven zones — hence probably “Ad-am.” And such first men, in every nation, are credited with having been taught the divine mysteries of creation. Thus, the Sabaeans (according to a tradition preserved in the Sūfī works) say that when the “Third First Man” left the country adjacent to India for Babel, a tree<sup>3</sup> was given to him, then another and a third tree, whose leaves recorded the history of all the races; the “Third First Man” meant one who belonged to the Third Root-Race, and yet the Sabaeans call him Adam. The Arabs of Upper Egypt, and the Mohammedans generally, have recorded a tradition that the Angel Azāzēl brings a message from the Wisdom-Word of God to Adam whenever he is reborn; this the Sūfis explain by adding that this book is given to every Seli-Allah (“the chosen one of God”) for his wise men. The story narrated by the Kabbalists — namely, that the book given to Adam before his Fall (a book full of mysteries and signs and events which either had been, were, or were to be) was taken away by the Angel Raziel after Adam’s Fall, but again restored to him lest men might lose its wisdom and instruction; that this book was delivered by Adam to Seth, who passed it to Enoch, and the latter to Abraham, and so on in succession to the most wise of every generation — relates to all nations, and not to the Jews alone.<sup>4</sup>



<sup>1</sup> [Herodotus, *History*, II, § 123]

<sup>2</sup> *Isis Unveiled*, I pp. 296-97

<sup>3</sup> A tree is symbolically a book — as “pillar” is another synonym of the same.

<sup>4</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (EASTERN GUPTA VIDYĀ AND KABBALAH) XIV p. 175

## Man may be made out of stardust but not of clay.

**The idea that the human tabernacle is built by countless lives, just in the same way as the rocky crust of our Earth was, has nothing repulsive in it for the true mystic.**

On Stanza VII.5. THE SPARK HANGS FROM THE FLAME BY THE FINEST THREAD OF FOHAT. IT JOURNEYS THROUGH THE SEVEN WORLDS OF MAYA (a). IT STOPS IN THE FIRST (*Kingdom*), AND IS A METAL AND A STONE; IT PASSES INTO THE SECOND (*Kingdom*), AND BEHOLD — A PLANT; THE PLANT WHIRLS THROUGH SEVEN FORMS AND BECOMES A SACRED ANIMAL; (*the first shadow of the physical man*) (b).

FROM THE COMBINED ATTRIBUTES OF THESE, MANU (*man*), THE THINKER, IS FORMED.

WHO FORMS HIM? THE SEVEN LIVES; AND THE ONE LIFE (c). WHO COMPLETES HIM? THE FIVEFOLD LHA. AND WHO PERFECTS THE LAST BODY? FISH, SIN, AND SOMA (*the moon*) (d).

(c) Science teaches us that the living as well as the dead organism of both man and animal are swarming with bacteria of a hundred various kinds; that from without we are threatened with the invasion of microbes with every breath we draw, and from within by leucomaines, aerobes, anaerobes, and what not. But Science never yet went so far as to assert with the occult doctrine that our bodies, as well as those of animals, plants, and stones, are themselves altogether built up of such beings; which, except larger species, no microscope can detect. So far, as regards the purely animal and material portion of man, Science is on its way to discoveries that will go far towards corroborating this theory. Chemistry and physiology are the two great magicians of the future, who are destined to open the eyes of mankind to the great physical truths. With every day, the identity between the animal and physical man, between the plant and man, and even between the reptile and its nest, the rock, and man — is more and more clearly shown. The physical and chemical constituents of all being[s] found to be identical, chemical science may well say that there is no difference between the matter which composes the ox and that which forms man. But the Occult doctrine is far more explicit. It says: Not only the chemical compounds are the same, but the same infinitesimal *invisible lives* compose the atoms of the bodies of the mountain and the daisy, of man and the ant, of the elephant, and of the tree which shelters him from the sun. Each particle — whether you call it organic or inorganic — *is a life*.

**Every atom in the Universe is both life-giving to form when receiving the transmigrating soul, and death-giving when the latter's hour has struck. It creates and kills. It is self-generating and self-destroying.**

Every atom and molecule in the Universe is both *life-giving* and *death-giving* to that form, inasmuch as it builds by aggregation universes and the ephemeral vehicles ready to receive the transmigrating soul, and as eternally destroys and changes the *forms* and expels those souls from their temporary abodes. It creates and kills; it is self-generating and self-destroying; it brings into being, and annihilates, that mys-

tery of mysteries — the *living body* of man, animal, or plant, every second in time and space; and it generates equally life and death, beauty and ugliness, good and bad, and even the agreeable and disagreeable, the beneficent and maleficent sensations. It is that mysterious LIFE, represented collectively by countless myriads of lives, that follows in its own sporadic way the hitherto incomprehensible law of Atavism; that copies family resemblances as well as those it finds impressed in the aura of the generators of every future human being, a mystery, in short, that will receive fuller attention elsewhere. For the present, one instance may be cited in illustration. Modern science begins to find out that ptomaine (the alkaloid poison generated by decaying matter and corpses — a *life* also), extracted with the help of volatile ether, yields a smell as strong and equal to that of the freshest orange-blossoms; but that free from oxygen, these alkaloids yield either a most sickening, disgusting smell, or the most agreeable aroma, which recalls that of the most delicately scented flowers. And it is suspected that such blossoms owe their agreeable smell to the poisonous ptomaine; the venomous essence of certain mushrooms (fungi) being nearly identical with the venom of the cobra of India, the most deadly of serpents.<sup>1</sup> Thus, having discovered the effects, Science has to find their PRIMARY causes; and this it can never do without the help of the old sciences, of alchemy, occult botany and physics. We are taught that every physiological change, in addition to pathological phenomena, diseases — nay, life itself — or rather the objective phenomena of life, produced by certain conditions and changes in the tissues of the body which allow and force life to act in that body — that all this is due to those unseen CREATORS and DESTROYERS that are called in such a loose and general way, microbes.<sup>2</sup> Such experimenters as Pasteur are the best friends and helpers of the Destroyers and the worst enemies of

---

<sup>1</sup> The French savants Arnaud, Gautier, and Villiers, have found in the saliva of living men the same venomous alkaloid as in that of the toad, the salamander, the cobra, and the trigonocephalus of Portugal. It is proven that venom of the deadliest kind, whether called ptomaine, or leucomaine, or alkaloid, is generated by living men, animals, and plants. The same savant, Gautier, discovered an alkaloid in the fresh meat of an ox and in its brains, and a venom which he calls *xantho-creatinine* similar to the substance extracted from the poisonous saliva of reptiles. It is the muscular tissues, as being the most active organ in the animal economy, that are suspected of being the generators or factors of venoms, having the same importance as carbonic acid and urea in the functions of life, which venoms are the ultimate products of inner combustion. And though it is not yet fully determined whether poisons can be generated by the animal system of living beings, without the participation and interference of microbes, it is ascertained that the animal does produce venomous substances in its physiological or living state.

<sup>2</sup> It might be supposed that these “fiery lives” and the microbes of science are identical. This is not true. The “fiery lives” are the seventh and highest subdivision of the plane of matter, and correspond in the individual with the One Life of the Universe, though only on that plane. The microbes of science are the first and lowest sub-division on the second plane — that of material *prāna* (or life). The physical body of man undergoes a complete change of structure every seven years, and its destruction and preservation are due to the alternate function of the fiery lives as “destroyers” and “builders.” They are “builders” by sacrificing themselves in the form of vitality to restrain the destructive influence of the microbes, and, by supplying the microbes with what is necessary, they compel them under that restraint to build up the material body and its cells. They are “destroyers” also when that restraint is removed and the microbes, unsupplied with vital constructive energy, are left to run riot as destructive *agents*. Thus, during the first half of a man’s life (the first *five* periods of seven years each) the “fiery lives” are indirectly engaged in the process of building up man’s material body; life is on the ascending scale, and the force is used in construction and increase. After this period is passed, the age of retrogression commences, and, the work of the “fiery lives” exhausting their strength, the work of destruction and decrease also commences.

An analogy between cosmic events in the descent of spirit into matter for the first half of a manvantara (planetary as human) and its ascent at the expense of matter in the second half, may here be traced. These considerations have to do solely with the plane of matter, but the restraining influence of the “fiery lives” on the lowest sub-division of the second plane — the microbes — is confirmed by the fact mentioned in the footnote on Pasteur (*vide supra*), that the cells of the organs, when they do not find sufficient oxygen for themselves, adapt themselves to that condition and form *ferments*, which, by absorbing oxygen from substances coming in contact with them, ruin the latter. Thus the process is commenced by one cell robbing its neighbour of the source of its vitality when the supply is insufficient, and the ruin so commenced steadily progresses.

the Creators — if the latter were not at the same time destroyers too. However it may be, one thing is sure in this: The knowledge of these primary causes and of the ultimate essence of every element, of its lives, their functions, properties, and conditions of change — constitutes the basis of MAGIC. Paracelsus was, perhaps, the only Occultist in Europe, during the last centuries since the Christian era, who was versed in this mystery. Had not a criminal hand put an end to his life, years before the time allotted him by Nature, physiological Magic would have fewer secrets for the civilized world than it now has.

(d) But what has the Moon to do in all this, we may be asked? What have “Fish, Sin and Moon” in the apocalyptic saying of the Stanza to do in company with the “Life-microbes”? With the latter nothing, except availing themselves of the tabernacle of clay prepared by them; with divine perfect man everything, since “Fish, Sin and Moon” make conjointly the three symbols of the immortal Being.

This is all that can be given. Nor does the writer pretend to know more of this strange symbol than may be inferred about it from exoteric religions, from the mystery perhaps, which underlies the *Matsya* (fish) *Avatāra* of Vishnu, the Chaldean *Ōannēs* — the Man-Fish, recorded in the imperishable sign of the Zodiac, *Pisces*, and running throughout the two Testaments in the personages of Joshua “Son of the Fish (Nun)” and Jesus; the allegorical “Sin” or Fall of Spirit into matter, and the Moon — in so far as it relates to the “Lunar” ancestors, the Pitris.<sup>1</sup>

**Man, from the First down to the Seventh Root-Race, is composed of one and the same company of actors, who have descended from higher spheres to perform their artistic tour on this, our Planet Earth.**

These worlds are all the earthly duplicates of their heavenly prototypes, the mortal and temporary reflections and shadows of the more durable, if not eternal, races dwelling in other, to us, invisible worlds. The souls of the men of our Fifth Race derive their elements from these four worlds — Root-Races — that preceded ours: namely, our intellect, *Manas*, the fifth principle, our passions and mental and corporeal appetites. A conflict having arisen, called “war in heaven,”<sup>2</sup> among our prototypical worlds, war came to pass, *aīōns* later, between the Atlanteans<sup>3</sup> of *Asiāh*, and those of the third Root-Race, the *Bnēy ha-Elōhīm* or the “Sons of God,”<sup>4</sup> and then evil and wickedness were intensified. Mankind (in the last sub-race of the third Root-Race) having

. . . sinned in their first parent [a physiological allegory, truly!], from whose soul every human soul is an emanation,

says the *Zohar*, men were “exiled” into more material bodies to

. . . expiate the sin and become proficient in goodness.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, I pp. 260-64

<sup>2</sup> [See “Seven Wars in Heaven and on Earth,” in our Secret Doctrine’s Third Proposition Series. — ED. PHIL.]

<sup>3</sup> See *Esoteric Buddhism*, by A.P. Sinnett, Fifth Edition, 1885. [Reprinted by Wizards Bookshelf, in 1973 & 1981, with index.]

<sup>4</sup> See *Isis Unveiled*, Vol. I, pp. 589-95. The “Sons of God” and their war with the giants and magicians.



To accomplish the cycle of necessity, rather, explains the doctrine; to progress on their task of evolution, from which task none of us can be freed, neither by death nor suicide, for each of us have to pass through the “Valley of Thorns” before he emerges into the plains of divine light and rest. And thus men will continue to be born in new bodies

. . . till they become sufficiently pure to enter a higher form of existence.

This means only that Mankind, from the First down to the last, or Seventh Race, is composed of one and the same company of actors, who have descended from higher spheres to perform their artistic tour on this our planet, Earth. Starting as pure spirits on our downward journey around the world (verily!) with the knowledge of truth — now feebly echoed in the Occult Doctrines — inherent in us, cyclic law brings us down to the reversed apex of matter, which is lost down here on earth and the bottom of which we have already struck; and then, the same law of spiritual gravity will make us slowly ascend to still higher, still purer spheres than those we started from.<sup>1</sup>

**If the student can understand how Spirit falls into Matter and the self-sacrifice of Cain and Abel, i.e., the loss of spiritual potency of the Second Race that transformed Humanity into the physical men of the Third, he will also solve the riddle of the Divine Hermaphrodite.**

Of course to our grossly material minds even the sublime symbolism of Kosmos conceived in the matrix of Space after the divine Unit had entered into and fructified it with Its holy fiat, will no doubt suggest materiality. Not so with primitive mankind. The initiatory rite in the Mysteries of the self-sacrificing Victim that dies a spiritual death to save the world from destruction — really from depopulation — was established during the Fourth Race, to commemorate an event, which, physiologically, has now become the Mystery of Mysteries among the world-problems. In the Jewish script it is Cain and the female Abel who are the sacrificed and sacrificing couple — both immolating themselves (as permutations of Adam and Eve, or the dual Jehovah) and shedding their blood “of separation and union,” for the sake of and to save mankind by inaugurating a new physiological race. Later still, when the neophyte, as already mentioned, in order to be reborn once more into his lost spiritual state, had to pass through the entrails (the womb) of a *virgin* heifer<sup>2</sup> killed at the moment of the rite, it involved again a mystery and one as great, for it referred to the process of birth, or rather the first entrance of man onto this earth, through Vāch — “the melodious cow who milks forth sustenance and water” — and who is the female Logos. It had also reference to the same self-sacrifice of the “divine Hermaphrodite” — of the third Root-Race — the transformation of Humanity into truly physical men, after the loss of spiritual potency. When, the fruit of evil having been tasted along with the fruit of good, there was as a result the gradual atrophy of spirituality and a strengthening of the materiality in man, then he was doomed to be born thenceforth through the present process. This is the Mystery of the Hermaphrodite, which the Ancients

---

<sup>1</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (POST-CHRISTIAN SUCCESSORS TO MYSTERIES) XIV pp. 302-3

<sup>2</sup> The Āryans replaced the living cow by one made of gold, silver or any other metal, and the rite is preserved to this day, when one desires to become a Brahman, a twice-born, in India.

kept so secret and veiled. It was neither the absence of moral feeling, nor the presence of gross sensuality in them that made them imagine their Deities under a dual aspect; but rather their knowledge of the mysteries and processes of primitive Nature. The Science of Physiology was better known to them than it is to us now. It is in this that lies buried the key to the Symbolism of old, the true focus of national thought, and the strange dual-sexed images of nearly every God and Goddess in both pagan and monotheistic Pantheons.<sup>1</sup>

**Jehovah is merely a composite name for membrum virile and womb, and nothing more. In one sense Jehovah is Noah or, literally translated, the British Inch!**<sup>2</sup>

The Jewish "Deity name J'hovah, is a compound of two words, viz., of *Jāh* [or *Yāh*] (y, i, or j, *Yōd*, the tenth letter of the alphabet) and *hovah* (Havāh, or Eve)," says a Kabbalistic authority, J. Ralston Skinner of Cincinnati, U.S.A. And again, "The word Jehovah, or *Jāh-Eve*, has the primary meaning of existence or being as male female." It means Kabbalistically the latter, indeed, and nothing more; and as repeatedly shown is entirely phallic. Thus, verse 26 in the IV<sup>th</sup> chapter of *Genesis*, reads in its disfigured translation . . . "then began men to call upon the name of the Lord," whereas it ought to read correctly . . . "then began men to call themselves by the name of *Jāh-hovah*" or males and females, which they had become after the separation of sexes. In fact the latter is described in the same chapter, when Cain (the male or *Jāh*) "rose up against Abel, his (*sister*, not) brother and slew him" (*spilt his blood*, in the original). Chapter IV of *Genesis* contains in truth, the allegorical narrative of that period of anthropological and physiological evolution which is described in the *Secret Doctrine* when treating of the third Root-Race of mankind. It is followed by Chapter V *as a blind*; but ought to be succeeded by Chapter VI, where the Sons of God took as their wives the daughters of men or of the giants. For this is an allegory hinting at the mystery of the *Divine Egos* incarnating in mankind, after which the hitherto *senseless* races "became mighty men, . . . men of renown" (v. 4), having acquired minds (*manas*) which they had not before.<sup>3</sup>



---

<sup>1</sup> *Blavatsky Collected Writings*, (TRACES OF THE MYSTERIES) XIV pp. 290-91

<sup>2</sup> For further analysis, see "The Origin of Good and Evil" and "The Original Sin is a Jewish invention," in our Black versus White Magic Series. — ED. PHIL.

<sup>3</sup> *Theosophical Glossary*: Jehovah

## Appendix E.

# On the Divine Instructors of our Fifth Race and Their degradation by the Churches.

From *The Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 351-54.

(47) The remnants of the first two races disappear for ever. Groups of the various Atlantean races saved from the Deluge along with the Forefathers of the Fifth. (48) The origins of our present Race, the Fifth. The first divine Dynasties. (49) The earliest glimmerings in History, now pinned to the allegorical chronology of the Bible, and “universal” History slavishly following it. — The nature of the first instructors and civilizers of mankind.

47. FEW (*men*) REMAINED. SOME YELLOW, SOME BROWN AND BLACK, AND SOME RED, REMAINED. THE MOON-COLOURED (*of the primitive Divine Stock*) WERE GONE FOR EVER (*a*) . . .

48. THE FIFTH RACE PRODUCED FROM THE HOLY STOCK (*remained*). IT WAS RULED BY HER FIRST DIVINE KINGS.

49. THE “SERPENTS” WHO RE-DESCENDED; WHO MADE PEACE WITH THE FIFTH (*Race*), WHO TAUGHT AND INSTRUCTED IT (*b*) . . .

**What is called history does not go further back than the origin of our fifth subrace or so far back as the Lemurian Deluge, that Great Dragon whose tail sweeps whole nations out of existence in the twinkling of an eye.**

(*a*) This śloka relates to the Fifth Race. History does not begin with it, but living and ever-recurring tradition does. History — or what is called history — does not go further back than the fantastic origins of our fifth sub-race, a “few thousands” of years. It is the sub-divisions of this first sub-race of the Fifth Root-Race which are referred to in the sentence, “Some yellow, some brown and black, and some red, remained.” The “moon coloured” (*i.e.*, the First and the Second Races) were gone for ever — aye, without leaving any traces whatever; and that, so far back as the third “Deluge” of the Third Lemurian race, that “Great Dragon,” whose tail sweeps whole nations out of existence in the twinkling of an eye. And this is the true meaning of the Verse in the *Commentary* which says:

*The GREAT DRAGON has respect but for the “SERPENTS” of WISDOM, the Serpents whose holes are now under the triangular stones, i.e., “the Pyramids, at the four corners of the world.”*

**The Adepts of the first three Root-Races lived in subterranean habitats and pyramids.**

(*b*) This tells us clearly that which is mentioned more than once elsewhere in the *Commentaries*; namely, that the Adepts or “Wise” men of the three Races (the Third, Fourth and the Fifth) dwelt in subterranean habitats, generally under some kind of pyramidal structure, if not actually under a pyramid. For such “pyramids” existed in

the four corners of the world and were never the monopoly of the land of the Pharaohs, though until found scattered all over the two Americas, under and over ground, beneath and amidst virgin forests, as in plain and vale, they were supposed to be the exclusive property of Egypt. If the true geometrically correct pyramids are no longer found in European regions, many of the supposed early *Neolithic* caves, of the colossal triangular, pyramidal and conical *menhirs* in the Morbihan, and Brittany generally; many of the Danish tumuli and even of the “giant tombs” of Sardinia with their inseparable companions, the *nuraghe*, are so many more or less clumsy copies of the pyramids. Most of these are the works of the first settlers on the newly-born continent and isles of Europe, the “some yellow, some brown and black, and some red” races that remained after the submersion of the last Atlantean continents and islands (850,000 years ago), with the exception of Plato’s Atlantean island, and before the arrival of the great Aryan races; while others were built by the earliest immigrants from the East. . . .

**Much confusion is caused by the foolishness of the Arcadians who claimed that they were older than the Moon, and the self-glorification of the Atticans who boasted that they had existed before the Sun appeared in heaven!**

It is the foolish self-glorification of the Arcadians who styled themselves *προσέληνοι* — older than the moon — and of the people of Attica, who claimed that they had existed before the sun appeared in heaven, that we may disparage, not their undeniable antiquity. Nor can we laugh at the universal belief that we had giant ancestors. The fact that the bones of the mammoth and mastodon, and, in one case, those of a gigantic salamander, have been mistaken for human bones, does not make away with the difficulty that, of all the mammalians, man is the only one whom science will not allow to have dwarfed down, like all other animal frames, from the giant *Homo diluvii* to the creature between 5 and 6 feet that he is now.

**Yet, Man and Stars are bound together indissolubly.**

But the “Serpents of Wisdom” have preserved their records well, and the history of the human evolution is traced in heaven as it is traced on underground walls. Humanity and the *stars* are bound together indissolubly, because of the *intelligences* that rule the latter.

Modern symbologists may scoff at this and call it “fancy,” but as Staniland Wake writes:

It is unquestionable that the Deluge has [ever] been associated in the legends of some Eastern peoples not only with the Pyramids, but also with the constellations.<sup>1</sup>

The “Old Dragon” is identical with the “great Flood.” says Proctor:

We know that in the past the constellation of the Dragon was at the pole, or boss, of the celestial sphere. In stellar temples . . . the Dragon would be the uppermost or ruling constellation . . . It is singular how closely the constellations

---

<sup>1</sup> *The Origin and Significance of the Great Pyramid*, p. 83

. . . correspond in sequence and in range of right ascension with the events recorded respecting the [Biblical] Flood.<sup>1</sup>

**Several deluges are mixed up in the memories of the peoples of our Fifth Race: the first, was astronomical and cosmical; the subsequent ones, terrestrial. The astronomical records of Universal History begun in the third subrace of the Atlantean Race.**

The reasons for this *singularity* have been made clear in this work. But it shows only that there were *several* Deluges mixed up in the memories and traditions of the sub-races of the Fifth Race. The first great "Flood" was astronomical and cosmical, while several others were *terrestrial*. Yet, this did not prevent our very learned friend Gerald Massey — an *Initiate* truly in the mysteries of the British Museum, still only a *Self-initiate* — from declaring and insisting that the *Atlantean* submersion and Deluge were only the anthropomorphized fancies of ignorant people; and that Atlantis was no better than an *astronomical allegory*.<sup>2</sup> Nevertheless, the great Zodiacal allegory is based upon historical events, and one can hardly interfere with the other; and it stands also to reason that every student of Occultism knows what that astronomical and zodiacal allegory means. Smith shows in the Nimrod Epic of the Assyrian tablets the real meaning of it. Its "*twelve cantos* . . . refer to the annual course of the Sun through the twelve months of the year. Each tablet answers to a special month, and contains a distinct reference to the animal forms in the signs of the Zodiac"; the eleventh canto being "consecrated to Rimmon, the God of storms and rain, and harmonizes with the eleventh sign of the Zodiac — Aquarius, or the Waterman."<sup>3</sup> But even this is preceded in the old records by the *pre-astronomical* Cosmic FLOOD, which became allegorized and symbolized in the above Zodiacal or Noah's Flood. But this has nothing to do with Atlantis. The Pyramids are closely connected with the ideas of both the Great Dragon (the constellation), the "Dragons of Wisdom," or the great Initiates of the Third and Fourth Races, and the Floods of the Nile, regarded as a divine reminder of the great Atlantic Flood. The astronomical records of Universal History, however, are said to have had their beginnings with the third sub-race of the Fourth Root-Race or the Atlanteans. When was it? Occult data show that even since the time of the regular establishment of the Zodiacal calculations in Egypt, *the poles have been thrice inverted*.

We will presently return once more to this statement. Such symbols as are represented by the Signs of the Zodiac — a fact which offers a handle to materialists upon which to hang their one-sided theories and opinions — have too profound a signification, and their bearing upon our Humanity is too important to suffer dismissal in a few words. Meanwhile, we have to consider the meaning of that other statement which mentions (śloka 48) the first *divine Kings*, who are said to have "redescended," guided and *instructed* our Fifth Race after the last deluge! We shall consider this last claim historically in the sections that follow, but must end with a few more details on the subject of "Serpents."

---

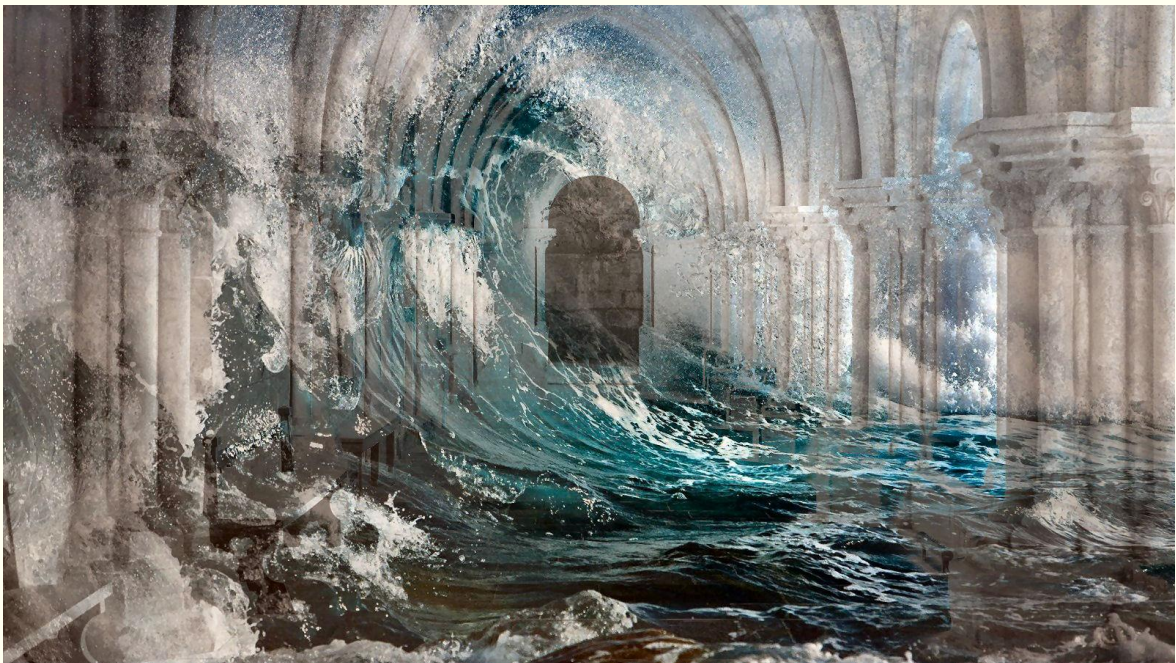
<sup>1</sup> *Knowledge*, Vol. I p. 243, as quoted in S. Wake, *op. cit.*, pp. 81, 82-83

<sup>2</sup> [*Natural Genesis*, Vol. I p. 229]

<sup>3</sup> *The Nineteenth Century*, 1882, p. 236

**The only ones that Satan will ever haunt are the Church and its followers.**

The rough *Commentaries* on the Archaic Stanzas have to end here. Further elucidation requires proofs obtained from ancient, mediæval, and modern works that have treated of these subjects. All such evidence has now to be gathered in, collated and brought together in better order, so as to compel the attention of the reader to this wealth of historical proofs. And as the manifold meaning of the weird symbol — so often referred to and suggestive of the “tempter of man” in the orthodox light of the church — can never be too strongly insisted upon, it seems more advisable to exhaust the subject by every available proof at this juncture, even at the risk of repetition. The Titans and Kabeiroi have been invariably made out by our theologians and some pious symbologists as indissolubly connected with the grotesque personage called *devil*, and every proof to the contrary has been hitherto as invariably rejected and ignored; therefore, the occultist must neglect nothing which may tend to defeat this conspiracy of slander. It is proposed to divide the subjects involved in these three last ślokas into several groups, and examine them in this final chapter as carefully and as fully as space permits. A few more details may thus be added to the general evidences of antiquity, on the most disputed tenets of Occultism and the Esoteric Doctrine — the bulk of which will be found in Part II on Symbology.<sup>1</sup>



**The Hierarchy of Compassion (Drawing).**

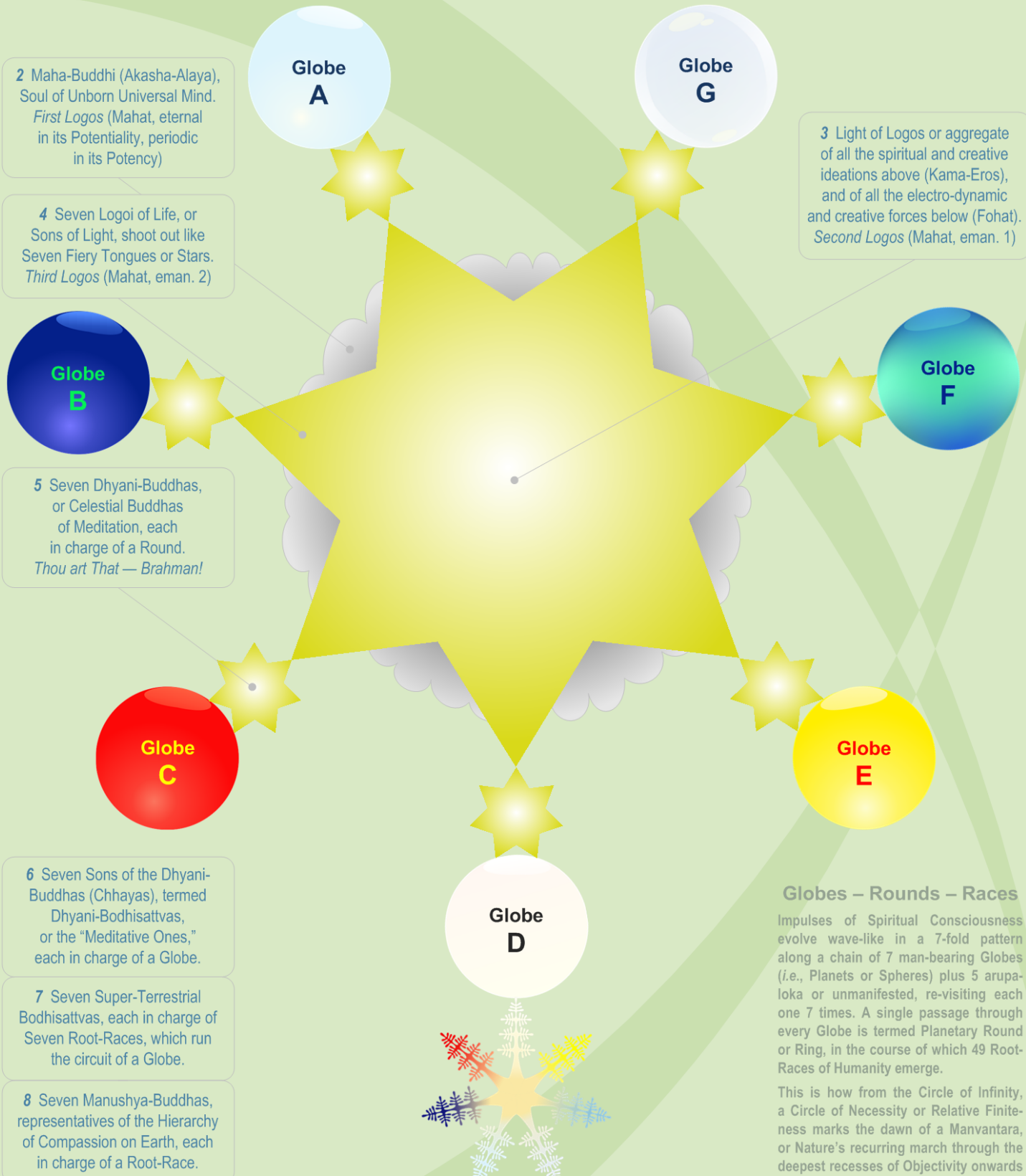
There now follows a drawing from our Masque of Love Series. — ED. PHIL

---

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 351-54

# UNKNOWABLE FIRST CAUSE

1 Adi-Buddhi or Primeval Universal Mind and Wisdom



2 Maha-Buddhi (Akasha-Alaya), Soul of Unborn Universal Mind. *First Logos* (Mahat, eternal in its Potentiality, periodic in its Potency)

4 Seven Logoi of Life, or Sons of Light, shoot out like Seven Fiery Tongues or Stars. *Third Logos* (Mahat, eman. 2)

5 Seven Dhyani-Buddhas, or Celestial Buddhas of Meditation, each in charge of a Round. *Thou art That — Brahman!*

6 Seven Sons of the Dhyani-Buddhas (Chhayas), termed Dhyani-Bodhisattvas, or the "Meditative Ones," each in charge of a Globe.

7 Seven Super-Terrestrial Bodhisattvas, each in charge of Seven Root-Races, which run the circuit of a Globe.

8 Seven Manushya-Buddhas, representatives of the Hierarchy of Compassion on Earth, each in charge of a Root-Race.

3 Light of Logos or aggregate of all the spiritual and creative ideations above (Kama-Eros), and of all the electro-dynamic and creative forces below (Fohat). *Second Logos* (Mahat, eman. 1)

## Globes – Rounds – Races

Impulses of Spiritual Consciousness evolve wave-like in a 7-fold pattern along a chain of 7 man-bearing Globes (i.e., Planets or Spheres) plus 5 arupa-loka or unmanifested, re-visiting each one 7 times. A single passage through every Globe is termed Planetary Round or Ring, in the course of which 49 Root-Races of Humanity emerge.

This is how from the Circle of Infinity, a Circle of Necessity or Relative Finiteness marks the dawn of a Manvantara, or Nature's recurring march through the deepest recesses of Objectivity onwards and upwards to ever-higher realms of Subjectivity.

Our development is heightened during the 4th Round, in the course of which 7 Root-Races emerge, each one evolving through 7 sub-races. "The term Root-Race applies to one of the seven great Races [e.g., Lemurian, Atlantean, Aryan, etc.], sub-Race to one of its great Branches, and Family-Race to one of the sub-divisions, which include nations and large tribes." (SD II, 198 fn)

Integrative Theosophical Studies

**HIERARCHY OF COMPASSION**

After *The Secret Doctrine* I, pp. 571-2

For an in-depth analysis, see "The Masque of Love" in the homonymous series.

[www.philaletheians.co.uk](http://www.philaletheians.co.uk)  
Revision 07.18



## Serpents and Dragons under different symbolisms.

From *The Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 354-56.

The name of the Dragon in Chaldea was not written phonetically, but was represented by two monograms, *probably* meaning, according to the Orientalists, “the scaly one.” “This description,” very pertinently remarks G. Smith, of course might apply either to a fabulous dragon, a serpent, or a fish,”<sup>1</sup> and we may add: It applies in one case to *Makara*, the tenth Zodiacal sign, meaning in Sanskrit a non-descript amphibious animal, generally called Crocodile, and really signifying something else.<sup>2</sup> This, then, is a virtual admission that the Assyriologists, at all events, know nothing certain as to the status of the “Dragon” in ancient Chaldea, whence the Hebrews got *their* symbolism, only to be afterwards robbed of it by the Christians, who made of the “scaly one,” a living entity and a maleficent power.



3

**Having plagiarised the ancient rites of initiation to construct the new dogma, profane clergy made a habit of cursing the same rites in order to cover their tracks.**

A specimen of Dragons, “winged and scaled,” may be seen in the British Museum. Representing the events of the Fall according to the same authority, there are also two figures sitting on each side of a tree, and holding out their hands to the “apple,” while at the back of the “tree” is the Dragon-Serpent. Esoterically, the two figures are two “Chaldees” ready for initiation, the Serpent symbolising the “Initiator”; while the jealous gods, who curse the three, are the exoteric profane clergy. Not much of the literal “Biblical event” there, as any occultist can see.

“The Great Dragon has respect but for the Serpents of Wisdom,” says the Stanza; thus proving the correctness of our explanation of the two figures and the “Serpent.”

<sup>1</sup> [*Chaldean Account of Genesis*, p. 90]

<sup>2</sup> See Part II, Section XXV, “The Mysteries of the Hebdomad.”

<sup>3</sup> The Forbidden Fruit (1509) Buonarroto Michelangelo, Cappella Sistina



“*The Serpents who redescended . . . who taught and instructed*” the Fifth Race. What sane man is capable of believing in our day that *real* serpents are hereby meant? Hence the rough guess, now become almost an axiom with the men of science, that those who wrote in antiquity upon various sacred Dragons and Serpents either were superstitious and credulous people, or were bent upon deceiving those more ignorant than themselves. Yet, from Homer downwards, the term implied something hidden from the profane.

“Terrible are the gods when they manifest themselves”<sup>1</sup> — those *gods* whom men call *Dragons*. And Ælianus, treating of these Ophidian symbols, makes certain remarks which show that he understood well the nature of this most ancient of symbols. Thus he most pertinently explains with regard to the above Homeric verse

For the Dragon, while sacred and to be worshipped, *has within himself something still more of the divine nature* of which it is better [for others?] to remain in ignorance.<sup>2</sup>

This “Dragon” having a septenary meaning, the highest and the lowest may be given. The former is identical with the “Self-born,” the Logos (the Hindu *Aja*). He was the second person of the Trinity, the SON, with the Christian Gnostics called the Naasenians, or Serpent-Worshippers. His symbol was the constellation of the Dragon.<sup>3</sup> Its seven “stars” are the seven stars held in the hand of the “Alpha and Omega” in *Revelation*. In its most terrestrial meaning, the term “Dragon” was applied to the *Wise* men.

This portion of the religious symbolism of antiquity is very abstruse and mysterious, and may remain incomprehensible to the profane. In our modern day it so jars on the Christian ear that it can hardly escape, all civilization notwithstanding, being regarded as a direct denunciation of the most cherished Christian dogmas, the subject of which required, to do it justice, the pen and genius of Milton, whose poetical fiction has now taken root in the Church as a revealed dogma.

Did the allegory of the Dragon and his supposed conqueror in Heaven originate with St. John, and in his *Revelation*? Emphatically we answer — No. His “Dragon” is Neptune, the symbol of Atlantean magic.

To demonstrate the negation the reader is asked to examine the symbolism of the Serpent or the Dragon under its several aspects.<sup>4</sup>



---

<sup>1</sup> [Homer, *Iliad* xx, 131]

<sup>2</sup> *De natura animalium*, Bk. XI, § 17

<sup>3</sup> As shown by H. Lizeray in the *Trinité Chrétienne Devoilée* — placed between the immutable Father (the Pole, a fixed Point) and mutable matter, the Dragon transmits to the latter the influences received by him from the Pole, whence his name — the *Verbum*.

<sup>4</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 354-56

## Sidereal and Cosmic glyphs explained.

From *The Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 356-65.

Every astronomer — besides Occultists and Astrologers — knows that, figuratively, the astral light, the Milky Way, and also the path of the Sun to the tropics of Cancer and Capricorn, as well as the circles of the Sidereal or Tropical year, were always called “Serpents” in the allegorical and mystic phraseology of the adepts.

This, cosmically, as well as metaphorically. Poseidon is a “Dragon”: “*Chorzar*, called by the profane Neptune” (Peratæ Gnostics); the “Good and Perfect Serpent,” the Messiah of the Naaseni, whose symbol in Heaven is *Draco*.

### Zoroastrian Esotericism is identical with that of the Secret Doctrine.

But one ought to discriminate between the characters of this symbol. For instance: Zoroastrian Esotericism is identical with that of the Secret Doctrine; and when, as an example, we read in the *Vendīdād* complaints uttered against the “Serpent,” whose bites have transformed the beautiful, eternal spring of Airyana-Vaējah, changing it into winter, generating disease and death, at the same time as mental and psychic consumption, every occultist knows that the Serpent alluded to is the north pole, as also the pole of the heavens.<sup>1</sup> The latter produces the seasons according to the angle at which it penetrates the centre of the earth. The two axes were *no more parallel*; hence the eternal spring of Airyana-Vaējah by the good river Daitya had disappeared, and “the Āryan Magi had to emigrate to Sagdiana” — say the exoteric accounts. But the esoteric teaching states that the pole had passed through the equator, and that the “land of bliss” of the Fourth Race, its inheritance from the Third, had now become the region of desolation and woe. This alone ought to be an incontrovertible proof of the great antiquity of the Zoroastrian Scriptures. The Neo-Āryans of the post-diluvian age could, of course, hardly recognise the mountains, on the summits of which their forefathers had met *before the Flood*, and conversed with the pure “Yazatas” (celestial Spirits of the Elements), whose life and *food* they had once shared. As shown by Eckstein,<sup>2</sup> “the *Vendīdād* seems to point out a great change in the atmosphere of central Asia; strong volcanic eruptions and the collapse of a whole range of mountains in the neighbourhood of the Kara-Korum chain.”

The Egyptians, according to Eusebius, who for once (and for a wonder) wrote the truth, symbolised Kosmos by a large fiery circle, representing a serpent with a hawk’s head lying across its diameter.

Here we see the pole of the earth within the plane of the ecliptic, attended with all the fiery consequences that must arise from such a state of the heavens: when the whole Zodiac in 25,000 [odd] years, must have “reddened with the solar blaze”; and *each sign must have been vertical* to the polar region.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Symbolized by the Egyptians under the form of a Serpent with a hawk’s head.

<sup>2</sup> “Questions relatives aux antiquités des peuple sémitiques, etc.,” in *Revue Archéologique*, Vol. XII, Part II, October 1885 to March 1856.

<sup>3</sup> S.A. Mackey, *The Mythological Astronomy*, etc., p. 42

**Esoterically, the North Pole or Mount Meru is the heavenly abode of gods; the South Pole or Patala is the earthly hell.**

Meru — the abode of the gods — was placed, as before explained, in the North Pole, while *Pātāla*, the nether region, was supposed to lie in the South. As each symbol in esoteric philosophy has *seven keys*, geographically, *Meru* and *Pātāla* have one significance and represent localities; while astronomically, they have another, and mean “the two poles,” which meaning ended by their being often rendered in *exoteric* sectarianism — the “Mountain” and the “Pit,” or Heaven and Hell. If we hold at present only to the astronomical and geographical significance, it may be found that the ancients knew the topography and nature of the Arctic and Antarctic regions better than any of our modern astronomers; they had reasons, and good ones for naming one the “*Mountain*” and the other the “*Pit*.”

**Helion and Acheron meant nearly the same.**

As the author just quoted half explains, *Hēlion* and *Acherōn* meant nearly the same: “*Hēli-on is the Sun in the highest*” (*Hēlios*, *Hēli-on*, the “most high”); and *Acherōn* is 32 degrees above the pole, and 32 below it, the allegorical river being thus supposed to touch the northern horizon in the latitude of 32 degrees. The vast concave, that is for ever hidden from our sight and which surrounded the southern pole, being therefore called the *PIT*, while observing, toward the Northern pole that a certain circuit in the heavens always appeared above the horizon — they called it the *Mountain*. As *Meru* is the high abode of the Gods, these were said to *ascend* and *descend* periodically; by which (astronomically) the *Zodiacal* gods were meant, the passing of the original North Pole of the Earth to the South Pole of the heaven.

In that age, at noon, the ecliptic would be parallel with the meridian, and part of the *Zodiac* would descend from the North Pole to the north horizon; crossing the *eight coils of the Serpent* [eight sidereal years, or over 200,000 solar years], which would seem like an imaginary *ladder* with *eight staves* reaching from the earth up to the pole, *i.e.*, the throne of *Jove*. Up this ladder, then, the Gods, *i.e.*, the signs of the *Zodiac*, ascended and descended. [Jacob’s ladder and the angels] . . . It is more than 400,000 years since the *Zodiac* formed the *sides* of this ladder.<sup>1</sup>

This is an ingenious explanation, even if it is not altogether free from occult heresy. Yet it is nearer the truth than many of a more scientific and especially theological character. As just said, the Christian trinity was purely astronomical from its beginning, which made *Rutilius* say — of those who euhemerized it — “*Judæa gens, radix stultitiæ.*”<sup>2</sup>

But the profane, and especially the Christian fanatics, ever in search of scientific corroboration for their *dead-letter* texts, will persist in seeing in the celestial pole the true *Serpent of Genesis*, *Satan*, the *Enemy of mankind*, instead of what it is — a cosmic metaphor. *When the gods are said to forsake the earth*, it does not only mean the *gods*, protectors and instructors, but also the *minor gods* — the regents of the

---

<sup>1</sup> S.A. Mackey, *The Mythological Astronomy*, etc., pp. 44, 47

<sup>2</sup> *Rutilius Claudius Namatianus, De Reditu Suo*, Bk. I, lines 383, 389; [*i.e.*, Jewish nation, root of stupidity.]

Zodiacal signs. Yet, the former, as actual and existing Entities which gave birth to, nursed, and instructed mankind in its early youth, appear in every Scripture, in that of the Zoroastrians as much as in the Hindu Gospels. Ormazd, or Ahura-Mazdhā, the “Lord of Wisdom,” is the synthesis of the Amshāspends (or *Amesha-Spentas* — “Immortal Benefactors”),<sup>1</sup> the “Word,” however, or the *Logos* and its six highest aspects in Mazdeanism. These “Immortal Benefactors” are described in *Zamyād Yasht* as

. . . the Amesha-Spentas, the shining, having efficacious eyes, great, helpful . . . imperishable and pure . . . which are all seven of like mind, like speech, all seven doing alike . . . which are *the creators and destroyers of the creatures* of Ahura-Mazdhā, their creators and overseers, their protectors and rulers. . . .<sup>2</sup>

**Our Dhyani-Chohans or Serpents of Wisdom are the Star-Yazatas of the Zoroastrians, the Star Angels of the Christians, the Seven Planets of every religion. They are our Divine Progenitors, “Builders,” and “Watchers.”**

These few lines alone indicate the dual and even the triple character of the Amshāspends, our Dhyāni-Chohans or the “Serpents of Wisdom.” They are identical with, and yet separate from Ormazd (Ahura-Mazdhā). They are also the Angels of the Stars of the Christians — the Star-Yazatas of the Zoroastrians — or again the seven planets (including the sun) of every religion.<sup>3</sup> The epithet — “the shining having efficacious eyes” — proves it. This on the physical and sidereal planes. On the spiritual, they are the divine powers of Ahura-Mazdhā; but on the astral or psychic plane again, they are the “Builders,” the “watchers,” the *Pitris* (fathers), and the first Preceptors of mankind.

**When we become sufficiently spiritualised, there will be no more need of learning about the Ancient Wisdom from books, we will then simply know.**

When mortals shall have become sufficiently spiritualised, there will be no more need of *forcing* them into a correct comprehension of ancient Wisdom. Men will *know* then, that there never yet was a great World-reformer, whose name has passed into our generation, who (a) was not a direct emanation of the LOGOS (under whatever name known to us), *i.e.*, an *essential* incarnation of one of the “seven,” of the “divine Spirit who is sevenfold”; and (b) who had not appeared before, during the past Cycles. They will recognise, then, the cause which produces in history and chronology certain riddles of the ages; the reason why, for instance, it is impossible *for them* to assign any reliable date to Zoroaster, who is found multiplied by twelve and fourteen in the *Dabistān*; why the Rishis and Manus are so mixed up in their numbers and individualities; why Krishna and Buddha speak of themselves as *re-incarnations*, *i.e.*, Krishna is identified with the Rishi Nārāyana, and Gautama gives a series of his previous births; and why the former, especially, being “the *very supreme* Brahmā,” is yet

<sup>1</sup> Also translated as “blissful Immortals” by Dr. W. Geiger; but the first is more correct.

<sup>2</sup> *Zamyād Yasht*, III, 15-18

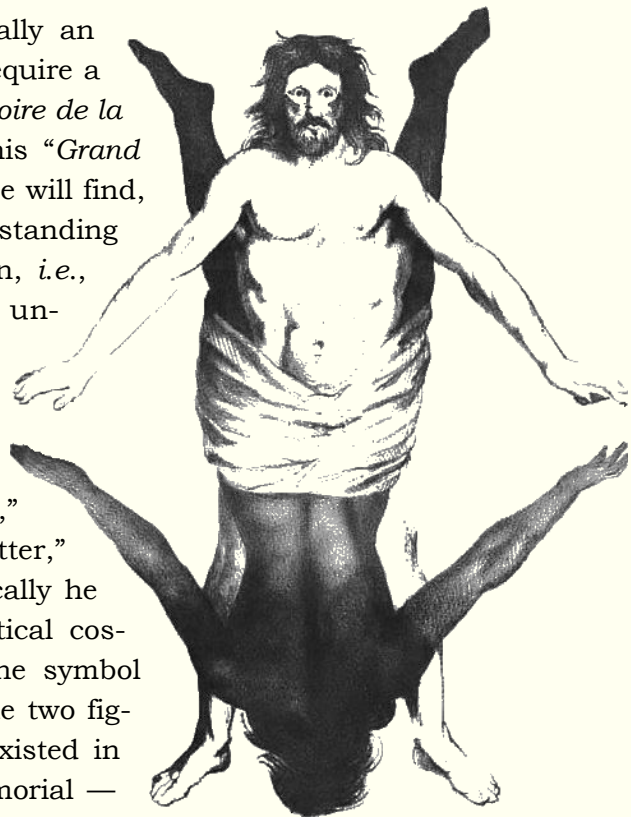
<sup>3</sup> These “seven” became the eight, the *Ogdoad*, of the later *materialized* religions, the seventh, or the highest principle, being no longer the pervading Spirit, the Synthesis, but becoming an anthropomorphic number, or additional unit.

called *Amśāmśāvatāra* — “a part of a part” only of the Supreme on Earth. Finally, why Osiris is a great God, and at the same time a “prince on Earth,” who reappears in Thoth-Hermes, and why Jesus (in Hebrew, Joshua) of Nazareth is recognised, Kabbalistically, in Joshua, the Son of Nun, as well as in other personages. The esoteric doctrine explains it by saying that each of these (as many others) had first appeared on earth as one of the seven powers of the LOGOS, individualized as a God or “Angel” (messenger); then, mixed with matter, they had re-appeared in turn as great sages and instructors who “taught the Fifth Race,” after having instructed the two preceding races, had ruled during the Divine Dynasties, and had finally sacrificed themselves, to be reborn under various circumstances for the good of mankind, and for its salvation at certain critical periods; until in their last incarnations they had become truly only “the parts of a part” on earth, though *de facto* the One Supreme in Nature.

This is the metaphysics of Theogony. And, as every “Power” among the SEVEN has (once individualized) in his charge one of the elements of creation, and rules over it,<sup>1</sup> hence the many meanings in every symbol, which, unless interpreted according to the esoteric methods, generally lead to an inextricable confusion.

**The Kabeiroi represent the earth’s poles as they are now, or inverted as they have been in the past and shall be in future, displacing the oceans, submerging the polar lands, and rearranging the continents.**

Does the Western Kabbalist — generally an opponent of the Eastern Occultist — require a proof? Let him open Éliphas Lévi’s *Histoire de la Magie*, p. 53, and carefully examine his “*Grand Symbole Kabbalistique*” of the *Zohar*. He will find, on the engraving given, a *white* man standing erect and a *black* woman upside down, *i.e.*, standing on her head, her legs passing under the extended arms of the male figure, and protruding behind his shoulders, while their hands join at an angle on each side. Éliphas Lévi makes of it, God and Nature; or God, “light,” mirrored inversely in “Nature and Matter,” darkness. Kabbalistically and symbolically he is right; but only so far as emblematical cosmogony goes. Nor has he invented the symbol any more than the Kabbalists have: the two figures in white and black stone have existed in the temples of Egypt from time immemorial — agreeably to tradition; and historically — ever since the day of King Cambyses, who personally saw them. Therefore the symbol



<sup>1</sup> These elements are: The cosmic, the terrene, the mineral, the vegetable, the animal, the aqueous, and finally the human — in their physical, spiritual, and psychic aspects.

must have been in existence since nearly 2,500 years ago. This, at the very least, for that Persian sovereign, who was a son of Cyrus the Great, succeeded his father in the year 529 B.C. These figures were the two *Kabeiroi personifying the opposite poles*. Herodotus<sup>1</sup> tells posterity that when Cambyses entered the temple of the Kabirim, he went into an inextinguishable fit of laughter, on perceiving what he thought [was] a man erect and a woman standing on the top of her head before him. These were the poles, however, whose symbol was intended to commemorate “the passing of the original North Pole of the Earth to the South Pole of the Heaven,” as perceived by Mackey.<sup>2</sup> But they represented also the poles *inverted*, in consequence of the great inclination of the axis, bringing each time as a result the displacement of the Oceans, the submersion of the polar lands, and the consequent *upheaval* of new continents in the equatorial regions, and *vice versa*. These Kabirim were the “Deluge” gods.

**Our Dhyani-Chohans appear under many different names: Agathodaimon, Aletae, Anakes, Corybantes, Curetes, Dii Magni, Dioscuri, Enoch, Hermes, Idæi Dactyli, Kabeiroi, Lares, Manes, Penates, Seth, Titans.**

This may help us to get at the key of the seemingly hopeless confusion among the numbers of names and titles given to one and the same gods, and classes of gods. Faber showed already, at the beginning of this century, the identity of the Corybantes, Curètes, Dioscuri, Anakes, Dii Magni, Idæi Dactyli, Lares, Penates, Manes,<sup>3</sup> Titans, and Alētæ with the KABEIROI. And we have shown that the latter were the same as the Manus, the Rishis and our Dhyāni-Chohans, who incarnated in the Elect of the Third and Fourth Races. Thus, while in Theogony the Kabeiroi-Titans were seven great gods: cosmically and astronomically the Titans were called Atlantes, because, perhaps, as Faber says, they were connected (a) with *At-al-as* “the divine Sun,” and (b) with *tit* “the deluge.” But this, if true, is only the exoteric version. Esoterically, the meaning of their symbols depends on the appellation, or title, used. The seven mysterious, awe-inspiring great gods — the *Dioscuri*,<sup>4</sup> the deities surrounded with the darkness of occult nature — become the *Idæi Dactyli*, or Idæic “Fingers,” with the adept-healer by metals. The true etymology of the name *lares* (now signifying “ghosts”) must be sought in the Etruscan word “*lars*,” “conductor,” “leader.” Sanchoiathon translates the word *Alētæ* as fire worshippers, and Tabor believes it derived

---

<sup>1</sup> *History*, III (*Thalia*), § 37

<sup>2</sup> Who adds that “the Egyptians had various ways of representing the angles of the Poles. In Perry’s *View of the Levant* there is a figure representing the *South Pole* of the Earth in the constellation of the *Harp*, in which the poles appear like two *straight rods* surmounted with hawks’ wings to distinguish the north from the south. But the symbols of poles . . . are, sometimes, in the form of serpents, with the heads of the hawks to distinguish the north from the south end.” (*op. cit.*, p. 41)

<sup>3</sup> Faber and Bishop Cumberland would make them all the later pagan personifications, as the former writer has it, of “the Noetic Ark . . . and no other than the Patriarch [Noah] and his family” (!) (See his *Dissertation on the Mysteries of the Kabiri*, Vol. I p. 136; Because, we are told, after the Deluge in commemoration of the event, the pious Noachidæ had established a religious festival, which was, later on, corrupted by their *impious* descendants; demons or hero-gods; and “at length unblushing obscenity usurped the name and garb of religion” (*op. cit.*, p. 10). Now this is indeed putting an extinguisher upon the human reasoning powers, not only of antiquity, but even of our present generations. Reverse the statement, and explain after the words “Noah and his family” that what is meant by that patriarch and family is simply the Jewish version of a Samothracian mystery, of *Saturn*, or *Kronos-Tsaddik and his Sons*, and then we may say *Amen*.

<sup>4</sup> Who became later on, with the Greeks, limited only to Castor and Pollux. But in the days of Lemuria, the *Dioscuri*, the “Egg-born,” were the Seven Dhyāni-Chohans (Agnishvāta-Kumāras) who incarnated in the Seven Elect of the Third Race.

from *Al-Ait*, “the god of fire.” Both are right, as in both cases it is a reference to the Sun (the highest God), toward whom the planetary gods “gravitate” (astronomically and allegorically) and whom they worship. As *Lares*, they are truly the Solar Deities, though Faber’s etymology, who says that “*lar*” is a contraction of “*El-Ar*,” the solar deity, is not very correct. They are the “*lares*,” the conductors and leaders of men. As *Alētæ*, they were the seven planets — astronomically; and as *Lares*, the regents of the same, our protectors and rulers — mystically. For purposes of exoteric or phallic worship, as also cosmically, they were the Kabeiroi, their attributes being recognised in these two capacities by the name of the temples to which they respectively belonged, and those of their priests. They all belonged, however, to the Septenary creative and informing groups of Dhyāni-Chohans. The Sabæans, who worshipped the “regents of the Seven planets” as the Hindus do their Rishis, held Seth and his son Hermes (Enoch or *Enos*) as the highest among the planetary gods. Seth and Enos were borrowed from the Sabæans and then disfigured by the Jews (exoterically); but the truth can still be traced about them even in *Genesis*.<sup>1</sup> Seth is the “progenitor” of those early men of the Third Race in whom the “Planetary” angels had incarnated — a Dhyāni-Chohan himself, who belonged to the *informing* gods; and Enos (Hanoach or Enoch) or Hermes, was said to be *his son* — because it was a generic name for all the early *Seers* (“Enoichion”). Thence the worship. The Arabic writer Suyūti says that the earliest records mention Seth, or *Set*, as the founder of Sabæanism; and therefore that the pyramids which embody the planetary system were regarded as the place of sepulchre of both Seth and *Idrus* (Hermes or Enoch);<sup>2</sup> that thither Sabæans proceeded on pilgrimage, and *chanted prayers seven times a day, turning to the North* (the Mount Meru, Kaph, Olympus, etc., etc.).<sup>3</sup> Abd Allatif says curious things about the Sabæans and their books. So does Eddin Ahmed Ben Yahya, who wrote 200 years later. While the latter maintains “that each pyramid was consecrated *to a star*” (a star *regent* rather), Abd Allatif assures us “that he had read in Sabæan books that one pyramid was the tomb of Agathodaimōn, and the other of Hermes.”<sup>4</sup> “Agathodaimōn was none other than Seth, and, according to some writers, Hermes was his son,” adds Staniland Wake.<sup>5</sup>

**While in Samothrace and the oldest Egyptian temples these great Cosmic Gods were the Seven and the Forty-nine Sacred Fires, in the Grecian fanes they became mostly phallic deities and therefore obscene and offensive.**

In the latter case they were 3 and 4, or 7 — the male and female principles — the *crux ansata*; this division showing why some classical writers held that they were only three, while others named four. And these were — the Kabeiroi — Axieros (in his

---

<sup>1</sup> Clement of Alexandria recognized the astronomical significance of chapter xxv *et seq.* of Exodus. According to the Mosaic doctrine, he says that the seven planets help in the generation of terrestrial things. [*Strom.*, V, vi] The two cherubs standing on the two sides of the sacred tetragrammaton represent the Ursa Major and Ursa Minor.

<sup>2</sup> Col. Howard Vyse, *Operations carried on at the Pyramids of Ghizeh in 1837*, etc. (London, 1840-42), Vol. I p. 358

<sup>3</sup> Wm. G. Palgrave, *Narrative*, etc., Vol. II p. 264, as quoted in Wake, *op. cit.*, pp. 57-58

<sup>4</sup> Vyse, *op. cit.*, Vol. II, p. 342; [ref. to *Historiæ Ægypti Compendium*, by Abd al-Latif ibn Yūsuf al-Baghdādī.]

<sup>5</sup> Wake, *op. cit.*, p. 57

female aspect, Demeter); Axiokersa (Persephone);<sup>1</sup> Axiokersos (Pluto or Hadēs); and Kadmos or Kadmilos (Hermes — not the ithyphallic Hermes mentioned by Herodotus<sup>2</sup> — but “he of the sacred legend,” explained only during the Samothracian mysteries). This identification, due, according to the Scholiast on Apollonius Rhodius, to an indiscretion of Mnaseas, is none at all, as names alone do not reveal much.<sup>3</sup>

**It is said that there were only two Kabeiroi, the Dioscuri (Castor and Pollux), esoterically; and Jupiter and Bacchus, exoterically.**

**The twins stand for:**

- 1. The earth's poles, geodesically;**
- 2. The terrestrial and celestial poles, astronomically; and**
- 3. The dual constitution of man (lunar and solar), physically and spiritually.**

There were still others again who maintained, being as right in their way, that there were only two Kabeiroi. These were, esoterically, the two Dioscuri, Castor and Pollux, and exoterically, Jupiter and Bacchus. The two personified the terrestrial poles, geodesically; the terrestrial, and the pole of the heavens — astronomically, as also the physical and the spiritual man. The story of Semelē and Jupiter and the birth of Bacchus, the *Bimatrix*, with all the circumstances attending it, needs only to be read esoterically to understand the allegory. The parts played in the event by the fire, water, earth, etc., in the many versions, will show how “the father of the gods” and the “merry God of the wine” were also made to personify the two terrestrial Poles. The telluric, metalline, magnetic, electric and the fiery elements are all so many allusions and references to the cosmic and astronomic character of the diluvian tragedy. In astronomy, the poles are indeed the “heavenly measure” (*vide note supra*); and so are the Kabeiroi *Dioscuri*, as will be shown, and the Kabeiroi-Titans, to whom Diodorus ascribes the *invention of fire*<sup>4</sup> and the art of manufacturing iron. Moreover, Pausanias shows that the original Kabeiric deity was Prometheus.<sup>5</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> It is a curious idea — yet one not very far from the truth, perhaps — that speculation of Mackey, the self-made Adept of Norwich, found in his *Mythological Astronomy* (pp. 38-39). He says that the Kabeiroi named Axiokersos and Axiokersa derived their names (a) from *kab* or *cab*, a measure, and from *ūrīm*, the heavens; the Kabirim being thus “a measure of the heavens”; and (b) that their distinctive names, implying the *principle of generation*, referred to the sexes. For, “the word *sex* was formerly understood by *ax*; which . . . has, in our time, settled into *sex*.” And he refers to *Encyclopædia Londiniensis*, the word “aspiration.” “Now, if we give the aspirated sound to Axieros, it would be *sax*, or *Sexieros*; and the other pole would be *Sexikersa*. The two poles would thus become the generators of the other powers of nature — they would be the *parents* of the other powers; therefore the most powerful” gods.

<sup>2</sup> *History*, II, 51

<sup>3</sup> *Scholia in Apollonium Rhodium*, I, 917 (ed. Brunck). Cf. Decharme, *Mythologie*, etc., p. 270; also Mnaseas of Patrai, *Fragmenta Historicorum Græcorum* (Coll. C. Müller, Paris 1885), iii, 154, frag. 27.

<sup>4</sup> The word *guebra* comes from Kabiri, *Gabri*, and means Persian ancient fire-worshippers, or Parsis. Kabiri became Gabri and then remained as an appellation of the Zoroastrians in Persia. (See T. Hyde, *Historia religionis veterum Persarum*, ch. 29, p. 360)

<sup>5</sup> *Itinerary*, Bk. IX, xxii, 5; xxv, 5-6



**Kabeiroi meant “mighty through fire.” As their temples were built in volcanic localities and were worshiped as Chthonian divinities, Christianity made of them “infernal” gods.**

But the fact that, astronomically, the Titans-Kabirim were also the generators and regulators of the seasons, and cosmically the great volcanic Energies, the gods presiding over all the metals and terrestrial works, does not prevent them from being, in their original divine characters, the beneficent Entities who, symbolized in Prometheus, brought light to the world, and endowed humanity with intellect and reason. They are pre-eminently in every theogony — especially in the Hindu — the sacred divine fires, 3, 7, or 49, according as the allegory demands it. Their very names prove it, as they are the *Agni-putra* (Sons of the Fire) in India, and the genii of the fire under numerous names in Greece and elsewhere. Welcker, Maury, and now Decharme, show the name Kabeiroi meaning “the powerful through fire,” from the Greek word *καίω*, “to burn.” The Semitic *Kabirim*, “the powerful, the mighty, and the great,” answering to the Greek *θεοί, μεγάλοι, δυνατοί*, are later epithets. They were universally worshipped, and their origin is lost in the night of time. Yet whether propitiated in Phrygia, Phoenicia, the Troad, Thrace, Egypt, Lemnos or Sicily, their cult was always connected with fire; their temples ever built in the most volcanic localities, and in exoteric worship they belonged to Chthonian divinities. Therefore Christianity has made of them *infernal* gods.

**Hermes, Orpheus, Cadmus, Asclepius, and all those who incarnated on earth to guide and teach nascent humanity, are all generic names.**

They are truly “the great, beneficent and powerful Gods,” as Cassius Hemina calls them.<sup>1</sup> At Thebes, Korē and Demeter, the *Kabirim*, had a sanctuary,<sup>2</sup> and at Memphis, the Kabeiroi had a temple so sacred, that none, excepting the priests, were suffered to enter their holy precincts.<sup>3</sup> But we must not lose sight, at the same time, of the fact that the title of Kabeiroi was a generic one; that the Kabeiroi (the *mighty* gods as well as mortals), were of both sexes, as also terrestrial, celestial and kosmic. That, while in their later capacity of the Rulers of sidereal and terrestrial powers, a purely geological phenomenon (as it is now regarded) was symbolized in the persons of those rulers, they were also, in the beginning of times, the rulers of mankind. When incarnated as Kings of the “divine Dynasties,” they gave the first impulse to civilizations, and directed the mind with which they had endued men to the invention and perfection of all the arts and sciences. Thus the Kabeiroi are said to have appeared as the benefactors of men, and as such they lived for ages in the memory of nations. To them — the Kabeiroi or Titans — is ascribed the invention of letters (the *Devanāgarī*, or the alphabet and language of the gods), of laws and legislature; of architecture, as of the various modes of magic, so-called; and of the medical use of plants. Hermes, Orpheus, Cadmus, Asclepius, all those demi-gods and heroes, to whom is ascribed the revelation of sciences to men, and in whom Bryant, Faber, Bishop Cumberland, and so many other Christian writers — too zealous for plain

---

<sup>1</sup> Macrobius, *Saturnalia*, III, iv, 9

<sup>2</sup> Pausanias, *Itinerary*, Bk. IX, xxii, 5

<sup>3</sup> Herodotus, *History*, Bk. III, 37

truth — would force posterity to see only pagan copies of one and sole prototype, named Noah — are all generic names.

It is the Kabeiroi who are credited with having revealed, by *producing* corn or wheat, the great boon of agriculture. What *Isis-Osiris*, the once living Kabiria, has done in Egypt, that Ceres is said to have done in Sicily; they all belong to one class.

**Serpents were revered by every people of antiquity with two notable exceptions, that of the Greeks, who transformed Jupiter and other gods into snakes in order to seduce goddesses, and of the Christians who chose to forget the brazen Serpent of Moses.**

That the Serpents were ever the emblems of wisdom and prudence is again shown by the caduceus of Mercury, one with Thoth, the god of wisdom, with Hermes, and so on. The two serpents, entwined around the rod, are phallic symbols of Jupiter and other gods who transformed themselves into snakes for purposes of seducing goddesses — but only in the unclean fancies of profane symbologists. The serpent has ever been the symbol of the adept, and of his powers of immortality and divine knowledge. Mercury in his psychopompic character, conducting and guiding with the caduceus the souls of the dead to Hadēs and even raising the dead to life with it, is simply a very transparent allegory. It shows the dual power of the Secret Wisdom: the black and the white magic. It shows this personified Wisdom guiding the Soul after death, and its power to call to life that which is dead — a very deep metaphor if one thinks over its meaning. Every people of antiquity revered this symbol, with the exception of Christians, who chose to forget the brazen Serpent of Moses, and even the implied acknowledgment of the great wisdom and prudence of the Serpent by Jesus himself, “Be ye *wise* as serpents and harmless as doves.”<sup>1</sup> The Chinese, one of the oldest nations of our Fifth Race, made of it the emblem of their Emperors, who are thus the degenerate successors of the “Serpents” or Initiates, who ruled the early races of the Fifth Humanity. The Emperor’s throne is the “Dragon’s Seat,” and his dresses of State are embroidered with the likeness of the Dragon. The aphorisms in the oldest books of China, moreover, say plainly that the “Dragon” is a human, albeit *divine*, Being. Speaking of the “Yellow Dragon,” the chief of the others, the *Tuan-yin t’u*, says:

His wisdom and virtue are unfathomable . . . [he] does not go in company and does not live in herds [he is an ascetic]. He wanders in the wilds beyond the heavens. He goes and comes, fulfilling the decree [Karma]; at the proper seasons if there is perfection he comes forth, if not he remains [invisible]. . . . And *Kung Fu-tsu* is made to say by *Lü-lan*:

“The Dragon feeds in the pure water [of Wisdom] and sports in the clear waters [of Life].”<sup>2, 3</sup>



---

<sup>1</sup> [Matthew x, 16]

<sup>2</sup> Charles Gould, *Mythical Monsters*, p. 399

<sup>3</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 356-65

## Our Divine Instructors are the Dhyani-Chohans of the Secret Doctrine.

From *The Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 365-78.

**Our races have sprung from divine races, our Dhyani-Chohans, and by whatever name they are now called. They reigned on earth, teaching all the great sciences that have come down to us.**

Now Atlantis and the Phlegyan isle are not the only record that is left of the deluge. China has also her tradition and the story of an island or continent, which it calls Ma-li-ga-si-ma, and which Kaempfer and Faber spell “Maurigosima,” for some mysterious phonetic reasons of their own. Kaempfer gives the tradition: The island, owing to the iniquity of its giants, sinks to the bottom of the ocean, and Peiruun, the king, the Chinese Noah, escapes alone with his family owing to a warning of the gods through two idols. It is that pious prince and his descendants who have peopled China. The Chinese traditions speak of the divine dynasties of Kings as much as those of any other nations.<sup>1</sup>

At the same time there is not an old fragment but shows belief in a multiform and even multigeneric evolution — spiritual, psychic, intellectual and physical — of human beings, just as given in the present work. A few of these claims have now to be considered.

Our races — they all show — have sprung from divine races, by whatever name they are called. Whether we deal with the Indian Rishis or Pitris; with the Chinese *Jen-nang* and *Chan-chi* — their “divine man” and demi-gods; with the Akkadian *Dingir* and *Mu-lu-lil* — the creative god and the “Gods of the ghost-world”; with the Egyptian Isis-Osiris and Thoth; with the Hebrew Elōhīm, or again with Manco Capac and his Peruvian progeny — the story varies nowhere. Every nation has either the *seven* and *ten* Rishis-Manus and Prajāpatis; the *seven* and *ten* Chi-yi; or *ten* and *seven* Amshāspends<sup>2</sup> (six exoterically), *ten* and *seven* Chaldean Anedots, *ten* and *seven* Sēphirōth, etc., etc. One and all have been derived from the primitive Dhyāni-Chohans of the Esoteric doctrine, or the “Builders” of the Stanzas (Volume I). From Manu, Thoth-Hermes, Ōannēs-Dāgōn, and Edris-Enoch, down to Plato and Panodorus, all tell us of *seven* *divine* Dynasties, of *seven* Lemurian, and *seven* Atlantean divisions of the Earth; of the *seven* primitive and dual gods who descend from their celestial abode<sup>3</sup> and reign on Earth, teaching mankind Astronomy, Architecture, and all the other sciences that have come down to us. These Beings appear first as “gods” and Creators; then they merge in nascent man, to finally emerge as “divine-Kings and Rulers.” But this fact has been gradually forgotten. As Basnage shows, the Egyptians themselves confessed that science flourished in their country only since Isis-Osiris,

---

<sup>1</sup> E. Kaempfer, *The History of Japan*, Bk. V, Appendix in Vol. II, p. 13, quoted by Faber, *op. cit.*, Vol. II, pp. 289 et seq.

<sup>2</sup> The Amshāspends are six — if Ormazd, their chief and Logos, is excluded. But in the secret doctrine he is the seventh and highest, just as Ptah is the seventh Kabir among the Kabiri.

<sup>3</sup> In the *Purānas* it is identified with Vishnu’s or Brahmā’s Śveta-Dvīpa of Mount Meru.

whom they continue to adore as gods, “though they had become Princes in human form.” And he adds of Osiris-Isis (the divine androgyne):

It is said that this Prince [Isis-Osiris] built cities in Egypt, stopped the overflowing of the Nile; invented agriculture, the use of the vine, music, astronomy, and geometry.

**Enoch, the “divine giant,” is identified with Hermes.<sup>1</sup> There were five Hermeses, or rather one in several different characters, always credited with having transferred all sciences from latency to potency to Egypt and Greece before the days of Magna Græcia, when Greeks were not even Hellenes.**

When Abul-Feda says in his *Historia Anteislamitica*<sup>2</sup> that the Sabæan language was established by Seth and Edris (Enoch) — he means by “Sabæan language” astronomy. In the *Melelwa Nahil*<sup>3</sup> Hermes is called the disciple of Agathodaimōn. And in another account,<sup>4</sup> Agathodaimōn is mentioned as a “*King of Egypt*.” Celepas Geraldinus gives curious traditions about Henoch. He calls him the “divine giant.” In the “*Book of the various names of the Nile*,” the same author (the historian Ahmad Ibn Yūsuf al-Taifāshī) tells us of the belief among the Semitic Arabs that Seth (become later the Egyptian Typhon, Set), had been one of the seven angels (or Patriarchs in the Bible): then he became a mortal and Adam’s son, after which he communicated the gift of prophecy and astronomical science to Jared, who passed it to his son Henoch. But Henoch (Idrus) “the author of thirty books, was Sabæan by origin” (*i.e.*, belonging to the *Tsābā*, “a Host”); “having established the rites and ceremonies of primitive worship, he went to the East, where he constructed 140 cities, of which Edessa was the least important, then returned to Egypt where he became its King.”<sup>5</sup> Thus, he is identified with Hermes. But there were five Hermes — or rather one, who appeared — as some Manus and Rishis did — in several different characters. In the *Borham Quattiu* he is mentioned as “Hormig,” a name of the planet Mercury or Budha; and Wednesday was sacred both to Hermes and Thoth. The Hermes of Oriental tradition, worshipped at Phineatæ and said to have fled after the death of Argus into Egypt, civilized it under the name of Thoth. But under whichever of these characters, he is always credited with having transferred all the sciences from *latent to active potency*, *i.e.*, with having been the first to teach magic to Egypt and to Greece, *before the days of Magna Græcia*, and when the Greeks were not even Hellenes.

---

<sup>1</sup> [A generic name]

<sup>2</sup> Edited by H.O. Fleischer, 1831, p. 16. Cf. S. Wake, *op. cit.*, p. 94

<sup>3</sup> MS. 47 in *Nicoll's Catalogue*

<sup>4</sup> Col. Vyse, *op. cit.*, Vol. II, 364, who refers to MS. 785, *Uri's Catalogue*.

<sup>5</sup> De Mirville, *Des Esprits*, etc., Vol. III, pp. 27-28

## The Pyramid was one grand symbol of this magnificent Hierarchy of Spirits.

Not only Herodotus<sup>1</sup> — the “father of History” — tells us of the marvellous dynasties of gods that preceded the reign of mortals, followed by the dynasties of demi-gods, heroes, and finally men, but the whole series of classics support him; Diodorus, Eratosthenes, Plato, Manetho, etc., etc., repeat the same, and never vary the order given. As Creuzer shows:

It is from the spheres of the stars wherein dwell the gods of light that wisdom descends to the inferior spheres. . . . In the system of the ancient priests [Hierophants and Adepts] all things without exception, gods, the genii, *manes* (souls), the whole world, are conjointly developed in Space and duration. The pyramid may be considered as the symbol of this magnificent hierarchy of Spirits. . . .<sup>2</sup>

There were more efforts made by the modern historians (French Academicians, like Renan, chiefly) to suppress truth by ignoring the ancient annals of *divine* Kings, than is strictly consistent with honesty. But Renan could never be more unwilling than was Eratosthenes 260 years B.C. to accept the unpalatable fact; and yet the latter found himself obliged to recognise its truth. For this, the great astronomer is treated with great contempt by his colleagues 2,000 years later. Manetho became with them “a superstitious priest born and bred in the atmosphere of other lying priests of Heliopolis.” “All those historians and priests,” justly remarks the demonologist, de Mirville, “so *veracious* when repeating stories of *human* kings and men, suddenly become *extremely suspicious* no sooner do they go back to *their gods*.”<sup>3</sup> . . . But there is the synchronistic table of Abydos, which, thanks to the genius of Champollion, has now vindicated the good faith of the priests of Egypt (Manetho’s above all), and that of Ptolemy. In the Turin papyrus, the most remarkable of all, in the words of the Egyptologist, de Rougé:

. . . Champollion, struck with amazement, found that he had under his own eyes the whole truth. . . . It was the remains of a list of dynasties embracing the furthest mythic times, or the REIGN OF THE GODS AND HEROES. . . . At the very outset of this curious papyrus we have to arrive at the conviction that so far back already as the period of Ramses, those mythic and heroic traditions were just as Manetho had transmitted them to us; we see figuring in them, as Kings of Egypt, the gods Seb, Osiris, Horus, Thoth-Hermes, and the goddess Ma, a long period of centuries being assigned to the reign of each of these.<sup>4</sup>

The synchronistic tables of Manetho, besides the fact that they were disfigured by Eusebius for dishonest purposes, had never gone beyond Manetho. The chronology of the divine Kings and Dynasties, like that of the age of humanity, has ever been in the hands of the priests, and was kept secret from the profane multitudes.

---

<sup>1</sup> *History*, II, 143

<sup>2</sup> Cf. J.D. Guignaut, *Religions de l'Antiquité*, Paris, 1825, “Religions de l'Égypte,” livre III, pp. 441ff

<sup>3</sup> De Mirville, *Des Esprits*, etc., Vol. III, p. 16

<sup>4</sup> J. de Rougé, “Examen de l'ouvrage de Bunsen, etc.,” in *Annales de Philosophie Chrétienne*, tome 13, No. 78, June 1846, p. 442

**Africa appeared before Europe but later than Lemuria and even the earliest Atlantis. What is now Egypt and the deserts was once upon a time an ocean. Delta was the first country occupied by immigrants who came with their gods from the Northeast. The poles have since been three times within the plane of the Ecliptic.**

Africa, as a continent, it is said, appeared before Europe did; nevertheless it appeared later than Lemuria and even the earliest Atlantis. That the whole region of what is now Egypt and the deserts was once upon a time covered with the sea, was known firstly, through Herodotus, Strabo, Pliny, and all the Greeks; and, secondly, through geology. Abyssinia was once upon a time an island; and the Delta was the first country occupied by the pioneer emigrants who came with their gods from the Northeast.

When was it? History is silent upon the subject. Fortunately we have the Dendera Zodiac, the planisphere on the ceiling of one of the oldest Egyptian temples, which records the fact. This Zodiac, with its mysterious three *Virgos* between the *Lion* and *Libra*, has found its Œdipus, who understood the riddle of these signs, and justified the truthfulness of those priests who told Herodotus that: (a) The poles of the Earth and of the Ecliptic had formerly coincided; and (b) that even since their first Zodiacal records were commenced, the Poles have been three times within the plane of the Ecliptic, as the Initiates taught.

Bailly had not sufficient words at his command to express his surprise at the *same-ness* of all such traditions about the *divine* races, and exclaims:

What are finally all those reigns of Indian *Devas* and Persian *Peris*? . . . Or, those reigns and dynasties of the Chinese legends; those *T'ien huang*, or *Kings of Heaven*, quite distinct from the *Ti-huang*, or *Kings of Earth*, and the *Jen-huang* or *Kings of men*, a distinction which is in perfect accord with that other one made by the Greeks and the Egyptians, in enumerating *their dynasties of Gods, of demi-gods, and of mortals*.<sup>1</sup>

“Now,” says Panodorus,<sup>2</sup> “it is before that time [Menes], that *the reign of the seven gods who rule the world took place*. It was during that period that those benefactors of humanity *descended* on Earth and taught men to calculate the course of the sun and moon by the twelve signs of the Ecliptic.”

**Divine Kings-Initiates had been born on earth one from the other (without the intervention of woman) well before the era of Menes, the first human King of Egypt,<sup>3</sup> and taught us Astronomy, Architecture, and Anatomy.**

Nearly five hundred years before the actual era, Herodotus was shown by the priests of Egypt the statues of their human Kings and Pontiffs-*Pirōmis* (the arch-prophets or Mahā-Chohans of the temples), *born one from the other* (without the intervention of woman) who had reigned before Menes, their first *human* King. These statues, he

---

<sup>1</sup> *Traité de l'Astronomie Indienne et Orientale*, (Paris, 1787), Discours préliminaire, p. cx

<sup>2</sup> [Quoted by de Mirville, *Des Esprits*, etc., Vol. III, p. 41]

<sup>3</sup> Bunsen gives as the first year of Menes, 3645; and Manetho, as 3892 B.C. Cf. *Egypt's Place in Universal History*, Vol. V, pp. 33-34. (*Isis Unveiled*, I p. 589 fn.)

says, were enormous colossi in wood, three hundred and forty-five in number, *each of which had his name, his history and his annals*. And they assured Herodotus<sup>1</sup> (unless the most truthful of historians, the “Father of History,” is now accused of fibbing, *just in this instance*) that no historian could ever understand or write an account of these superhuman Kings, unless he had studied and learned the *history of the three dynasties* that preceded the human — namely, the DYNASTIES OF THE GODS, that of demi-gods, and of the heroes, or giants. These “three dynasties” are the three Races.

**Happy are those who are born in Bharata-Varsha, exclaim the incarnated gods themselves!**

Translated into the language of the Esoteric doctrine, these three dynasties would also be those of the Devas, of Kimpurushas, and of Dānavas and Daityas — otherwise gods, celestial spirits, and giants or Titans. “Happy are those who are born, even from the condition of gods, as men, in Bhārata-Varsha!” exclaim the incarnated gods themselves, during the Third Root-Race. Bhārata is India, but in this case it symbolized the chosen land in those days, and was considered the best of the divisions of Jambu-dvīpa, as it was the land of active (spiritual) works *par excellence*; the land of initiation and of divine knowledge.<sup>2</sup>

**The natural good sense and upright judgment of the ancient peoples was quite foreign to our entirely materialistic ideas upon celestial mechanics and physical sciences. In stars the ancients saw living bodies animated by spirits, as they saw the same in every kingdom of nature.**

Can one fail to recognise in Creuzer great powers of intuition, when, being almost unacquainted with the Āryan Hindu philosophies, little known in his day, he wrote:

We modern Europeans feel surprised when hearing talk of the Spirits of the Sun, Moon, etc. . . . But we repeat again . . . the *natural good sense and the upright judgment* of the ancient peoples, quite foreign to our *entirely material* ideas upon celestial mechanics and physical sciences . . . could not see in the stars and planets only that which we see, namely, simple masses of light, or opaque bodies moving in circuits in sidereal space, merely according to the laws of attraction or repulsion; but they saw in them *living bodies, animated by spirits* as they saw the same in every kingdom of nature. . . . *This doctrine of spirits, so consistent and conformable to nature*, from which it was derived, formed a grand and unique conception wherein the physical, the moral, and the political aspects were all blended together . . .<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *History*, II, 143. See also de Mirville, *Des Esprits*, etc., Vol. II, pp. 16-17, for a mass of evidence.

<sup>2</sup> In *Vishnu-Purāna*, Bk. II, ch. 3, 4, *et seq.*, may be found many corroborations of the same if one reads carefully. The reigns of gods, lower gods, and men are all enumerated in the descriptions of the seven Islands, seven seas, seven mountains, etc., etc., ruled by Kings. Each king is said invariably to have *seven* sons, an allusion to the seven sub-races. One instance will do. The King of *Kuśa-dvīpa* had seven sons (follow names) . . . “after whom the seven portions (Varshas) of the island were called. *There reside mankind along with Daityas and Dānavas, as well as with spirits of heaven (Gandharvas, Yakshas, Kimpurushas, etc.) and gods.*” (Bk. II, ch. iv; Wilson, Vol. II, p. 195) There is but one exception in the case of King Priyavrata, the son of the first Manu, Svāyambhuva — who had ten sons. But of these, three — Medha, Agnibāhu, and Putra — became ascetics, and refused their portions. Thus Priyavrata divided the earth again into *seven* continents.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. J.D. Guigniaut, *Religions de l'Antiquité* (Paris 1825), Bk. III, ch. v, pp. 452, 453, 454

It is such a conception only that can lead man to form a correct conclusion about his origin and the genesis of everything in the universe — of Heaven and Earth, between which he is a living link. Without such a psychological link, and the feeling of its presence, no science can ever progress, and the realm of knowledge must be limited to the analysis of physical matter only.

**Materialists live on this earth, just as in the world of insects and even fishes some creatures live surrounded by myriads of their own kind, without seeing or sensing them. They live among numberless hosts of spirits, immeasurably superior to the human race, higher and holier than the highest Saint on Earth, and yet they may never give them a single thought.**

Occultists believe in “spirits,” because they *feel* (and some see) themselves surrounded on every side by them.<sup>1</sup> Materialists do not. They live on this earth, just as, in the world of insects and even of fishes, some creatures live surrounded by myriads of their own *genus*, without seeing, or so much as sensing them.<sup>2</sup>

Plato is the first sage among the classics who speaks at length of the divine Dynasties, and locates them on a vast continent which he calls Atlantis. Bailly was not the first nor last to believe the same, and he had been preceded and anticipated in this theory by Father Kircher. This learned Jesuit writes:

I confess, for a long time I had regarded all this [dynasties and the Atlantis] as pure fables (*meras nugas*) to the day when, better instructed in Oriental languages, I judged that all those legends must be, after all, only the development of a great truth.<sup>3</sup>

As de Rougemont shows, Theopompus, in his *Meropis*, made the priests of Phrygia and Asia Minor speak exactly as the priests of Sais did when they revealed to Solon the history and fate of Atlantis. According to Theopompus, it was a unique continent of an indefinite size, and containing two countries inhabited by *two races* — a

---

<sup>1</sup> As a general rule, *now* that the very nature of the *inner* man has become as blind as his physical nature, man is situated on this globe as the *Amphioxus* is in the Ocean. Surrounded by shoals and millions of various other fishes and creatures that see it, the *Amphioxus* species — having neither brain nor any of the senses possessed by the other classes — sees them not. Who knows whether, on the Darwinian theory, these “Branchiostoma” are not the direct ancestors of our Materialists.

<sup>2</sup> The Occultists have been accused of worshipping *gods* or devils. We deny this. Among the numberless hosts of spirits — *men* that were, and those who will be men — there are those immeasurably superior to the human race, higher and holier than the highest Saint on Earth, and wiser than any mortal without exception. And there are those again who are no better than we are, as some are far worse and inferior to the lowest savage. It is the latter classes that command the readiest communication with our earth, who perceive and sense us, as the clairvoyants perceive and sense them. The close proximity of our respective abodes and planes of perception are in favour of such inter-communication unfortunately, as they are ever ready to interfere with our affairs for weal or woe. If we are asked how it is that none but sensitive hysterical natures, neuro- and psychopathic persons see and occasionally talk with “Spirits,” we answer the question by several other queries. We ask: “Do you know the nature of hallucination, and can you define its psychic process? How can you tell that all such visions are due merely to physical hallucinations? What makes you feel so sure that mental and nervous diseases, while drawing a veil over our *normal* senses (so-called) *do not* reveal at the same time vistas unknown to the healthy man, by throwing open doors usually closed against your scientific perceptions (?): or that a psychospiritual faculty *does not* forthwith replace the loss, or the temporary atrophy, of a purely physical sense? It is disease, or the exuberance of nervous fluid which produces mediumship and visions — hallucinations, as you call them. But what *does* Science know even of mediumship?” Truly were the modern Charcots to pay attention to the *delirium* of their patients from a more psychic standpoint, Science, and physiology especially, might be more benefited than they are now, and truth have a wider field of fact in its knowledge.

<sup>3</sup> *Œdipus Ægyptiacus*, Vol. I, p. 70



fighting, warrior race, and a pious, meditative race,<sup>1</sup> which Theopompus symbolizes by two cities.<sup>2</sup> The pious “city” was *continually visited by the gods*; the belligerent “city” was inhabited by various beings *invulnerable* to iron, liable to be *mortally wounded* only by stone and wood.<sup>3</sup> De Rougemont treats this as a pure *fiction* of Theopompus and even sees a fraud (*superchérie*) in the assertion of the Saitic priests.<sup>4</sup> This was denounced by the “Demonologists” as illogical. In the words of De Mirville:

A *superchérie* which was based on a belief, the product of faith of the whole antiquity; a *supposition* which yet gave its name to a whole mountain chain (the Atlas); which specified with the greatest precision a topographical region (by placing some of its lands at a small distance from Cadiz and the strait of Calpe-tus), which prophesied, 2,000 years before Columbus, *the great trans-oceanic land* situated beyond that Atlantis and which “is reached” it said — “by the *islands* not of the blessed, but of the good spirits” *ευδαιμονια* (our “*Iles Fortunées*”) — such a supposition can never be an universal chimera. . . .<sup>5</sup>

**The Third Continent, home of the Third Root-Race, consisted of two physically and morally distinct classes, ruled by Divine Kings. It perished some 850,000 years ago.**

It is certain that, whether “chimera” or reality, the priests of the whole world had it from one and the same source: the universal tradition about the third great continent which perished some 850,000 years ago.<sup>6</sup> A continent inhabited by two distinct races; distinct physically and especially morally; both deeply versed in primeval wisdom and the secrets of nature; mutually antagonistic in their struggle, during the course and progress of their double evolution. Whence even the Chinese teachings upon the subject, if it is but a *fiction*? Have they not recorded the existence once upon a time of a *holy* island beyond the sun (*Chou*), and beyond which were situated the lands of *the immortal men*?<sup>7</sup> Do they not still believe that the remnants of those *immortal* men — who survived when the *holy* island had become black with sin and perished — have found refuge in the great desert of Gobi, where they still reside invisible to all, and defended from approach by hosts of Spirits?

---

<sup>1</sup> These were the early Āryans and the bulk of the Fourth Root-Race — the former pious and meditative (*yoga*-contemplation), the latter — a fighting race of sorcerers, who were rapidly degenerating owing to their uncontrolled passions.

<sup>2</sup> The Northern and Southern Divisions of Lemuria-Atlantis. The Hyperborean and the Equatorial lands of the two continents. [See Vol. II, pp. 323-24 & 333-34.]

<sup>3</sup> This is Occult and refers to the property of iron which, attracted by magnetic elements, is repelled by others, which are made, by an occult process, as impervious to it as water to a blow.

<sup>4</sup> De Rougemont, *Le Peuple Primitif*, Vol. III, p. 157. See excerpt from Theopompus preserved in Ælian's *Varia Historia*; shown in Felix Jacoby's Fragment 75.

<sup>5</sup> De Mirville, *op. cit.*, Vol. III, p. 29

<sup>6</sup> The first continent, or island, if so preferred, “the cap of the North Pole,” has never perished; nor will it to the end of the Seven Races.

<sup>7</sup> De Rougemont, *op. cit.*

**It is difficult to obtain clear and precise ideas on royalty, its origin and power, without knowledge of the first principles of history and tradition, says Plato.**

As the very unbelieving Boulanger writes:

If one has to lend ear to traditions, the latter place before the reign of Kings, that of the Heroes and demi-gods; and still earlier and beyond they place the marvellous reign of the gods and all the fables of the golden age. . . . One feels surprised that annals so interesting should have been rejected by almost all our historians. And yet the ideas communicated by them were once universally admitted and revered by all the peoples; not a few revere them still, making them the basis of their daily life. Such considerations seem to necessitate a less hurried judgment. . . . The ancients, from whom we hold these traditions, which *we accept no longer because we do not understand them now*, must have had motives for believing in them furnished by their greater proximity to the first ages, and which the distance that separates us from them refuses to us . . . Plato in his fourth book of *Laws*, says that, long before the construction of the first cities, Saturn had established on earth a *certain* form of government under which man was very happy. As it is the golden age he refers to, or to that reign of gods so celebrated in ancient fables . . . let us see the ideas he had of that happy age, and what was the occasion he had to introduce this *fable* into a treatise on politics. According to Plato, in order to obtain clear and precise ideas on royalty, its origin and power, one has to turn back to the first principles of history and tradition. Great changes, he says, have occurred in days of old, *in heaven and on earth*, and the present state of things is one of the results [*Karma*]. Our traditions tell us of many marvels, of changes that have taken place in the course of the Sun, of Saturn's reign, and of a thousand other matters that remained scattered about in human memory; but *one never hears anything of the EVIL which has produced those revolutions, nor of the evil which directly followed them*. Yet . . . that Evil is the principle one has to talk about, to be able to treat of royalty and the origin of power.<sup>1</sup>

**Saturn, knowing that man could not rule man without injustice filling forthwith the universe through his whims and vanity, would not allow any mortal to obtain power over his fellow creatures.**

That *evil*, Plato seems to see in the sameness or consubstantiality of the natures of the rulers and the ruled, for he says that long before man built his cities, in the golden age, there was naught but happiness on earth, for there were no needs. Why? Because:

Saturn, knowing that man could not rule man, without injustice filling forthwith the universe through his whims and vanity, would not allow any mortal to obtain power over his fellow creatures. To do this the god used the same means we use ourselves with regard to our flocks. We do not place a bullock or a ram over our bullocks and rams, but give them a leader, a shepherd, *i.e., a being of a species quite different from their own and of a superior nature*. It is just what

---

<sup>1</sup> N.A. Boulanger, *Règne des Dieux*, Introd. Cf. de Mirville, *op. cit.*, Vol. III, pp. 32-33

Saturn did. He loved mankind and placed to rule over it no mortal King or prince but — Spirits and genii (*δαίμόνια*) of a divine nature more excellent than that of man.<sup>1</sup>

**When the world had ceased to be so governed, and the gods retired, “ferocious beasts devoured a portion of mankind.” Divine Instructors then incarnated successively and “discovered” fire, wheat, and wine. And public gratitude deified them.**

It was god, the Logos (the synthesis of the Host), who thus presiding over the genii, became the first shepherd and leader of men. When the world had ceased to be so governed and the gods retired, “ferocious beasts devoured a portion of mankind.” “Left to their own resources and industry, inventors then appeared among them successively and discovered fire, wheat, wine; and public gratitude deified them.”<sup>2</sup>

And mankind was right, as fire by friction was the first mystery of nature, the first and chief property of matter that was revealed to man.

As said in the *Commentaries*:

*Fruits and grain, unknown to Earth to that day, were brought by the ‘Lords of Wisdom’ for the benefit of those they ruled — front other lokas [spheres].*

Now:

The earliest inventions [?] of Mankind are the most wonderful that the race has ever made. . . . The *first use of fire*, and the discovery of the methods by which it can be kindled; the domestication of wild animals; and, above all, *the processes by which the various cereals were first developed* out of some wild Grasses [?] — these are all *discoveries with which in ingenuity and in importance, no subsequent discoveries may compare*. They are all unknown to history — all lost in the light of an EFFULGENT DAWN.<sup>3</sup>

**Wheat has never been found in the wild state for it is not a product of the earth. It is a symbol of man’s inner principles, that is why it was so sacred with the Egyptian priests.**

This will be doubted and denied in our proud generation. But if it is asserted that there are no grains and fruits *unknown to earth*, then we may remind the reader *that wheat has never been found in the wild state: it is not a product of the earth*. All the other cereals have been traced to their primogenital forms in various species of wild grasses, but wheat has hitherto defied the efforts of botanists to trace it to its origin. And let us bear in mind, in this connection, how sacred was that cereal with the Egyptian priests; wheat being placed even with their mummies, and found thou-

---

<sup>1</sup> De Mirville, *ibid.*, pp. 33-34

<sup>2</sup> Plato, *De Legibus*, Bk. IV, 713a *et seq.* The Secret Doctrine explains and expounds that which Plato says, for it teaches that those “inventors” were gods and demi-gods (Devas and Rishis) who had become — some deliberately, some forced to by Karma — incarnated in man.

<sup>3</sup> The Duke of Argyll (George Campbell), *The Unity of Nature*, 1884, pp. 521-22

sands of years later in their coffins. Remember how the servants of Horus glean the wheat in the field of Aaru, wheat *seven cubits high*.<sup>1</sup>



Says the Egyptian Isis:

I am the Queen of these regions; I was the first to reveal to mortals the mysteries of wheat and corn. . . . I am she who rises in the constellation of the Dog . . . Rejoice, Oh Egypt! thou who wert my nurse.<sup>2</sup>

**One of our Divine Instructors is Sirius, the double of Mercury or Budha before all other Buddhas.**

Sirius was called the *Dog-star*. It was the star of Mercury or Budha, called the great instructor of mankind, before other Buddhas.

The book of the Chinese *I-Ching*, attributes the discovery of agriculture to “the instruction given to men by celestial genii.”

---

<sup>1</sup> *Book of the Dead*, xcix, 33; clvi, 4. The reader is referred to Stanza VII, śloka 3, in Volume I, wherein this verse is explained in another of its meanings, and also to the *Book of the Dead*, cix, lines 4 & 5.

This is a direct reference to the esoteric division of man’s principles symbolised by the divine wheat. The legend which inscribes the third Registrar of the papyrus (*Book of the Dead*, ch. cx) states: “This is the region of the *Manes* [disembodied men] *seven cubits high*” — to wit: those just translated and supposed to be still sevenfold with all their principles, even the body represented *astrally* in the *Kāma-loka* or *Hadēs*, before their separation; “and there is wheat *three cubits high* for mummies in a *state of perfection*,” *i.e.*, those already separated, whose *three* higher principles are in *Devachan*, “who are permitted to glean it.” This region (*Devachan*) is called “the land of the re-birth of gods,” and shown to be inhabited by *Shu*, *Tefnut*, and *Keb*. The “region for the *Manes seven cubits high*” (for the yet imperfect mummies), and the region for those “*in a state of perfection*” who “glean wheat *three cubits high*,” is as clear as possible. The Egyptians had the same esoteric philosophy which is now taught by the *cis-Himālayan adepts*, who, when buried, have corn and wheat placed over them.

<sup>2</sup> *Diodorus, Bibliotheca*, Bk. I, § 27. There are Egyptologists who have tried to identify *Osiris* with *Menes*, which is quite erroneous. *Bunsen* assigns to *Menes* an antiquity of 5867 years B.C., and is denounced for it by *Christians*. But “*Isis-Osiris*” reigned in *Egypt* before the *Dendera Zodiac* was painted on the ceiling of that temple, and that is over 75,000 years ago!

Woe, woe to the men who know nought, observe nought, nor will they see. . . . They are all blind,<sup>1</sup> since they remain ignorant how much the world is full of various and invisible creatures which crowd even in the most sacred places.<sup>2</sup>

The “Sons of God” *have* existed and *do* exist. From the Hindu *Brahmaputras* and *Mānasaputras* (Sons of Brahmā and Mind-born sons), down to the *Bnēy ha-Elōhīm* of the Jewish Bible, the faith of the centuries and *universal* tradition force reason to yield to such evidence. Of what value is *independent criticism* so called, or “internal evidence” (based usually on the respective hobbies of the critics), in the face of the universal testimony, which never varied throughout the historical cycles? Read esoterically the sixth chapter of *Genesis*, which repeats the statements of the Secret Doctrine, only changing slightly its form, and drawing a different conclusion which clashes even with the *Zohar*. “There were giants in the earth in those days; and *also after that* when ‘the Sons of God’ (*Bnēy ha-Elōhīm*) came in unto the daughters of men, and they bare children to them, the same became *mighty men* which were of old, men of renown” (or giants).<sup>3</sup>

What does this sentence “and also after that” signify unless it means when explained: There were giants in the earth BEFORE, *i.e.*, before the sinless sons of the Third Race; and *also after that* when other sons of God, lower in nature, inaugurated sexual connection on earth (as Daksha did, when he saw that his *Mānasaputras* would not people the earth)? And then comes a long break in this chapter vi. of *Genesis*, between verses 4 and 5. For surely, it was not in or through the wickedness of the “mighty men. . . . men of renown,” among whom is placed Nimrod the “mighty hunter before the Lord,” that “God saw that the wickedness of man *was* great,” nor in the builders of Babel, for this was *after* the Deluge; but in the progeny of the giants who produced *monstra quædam . . . de genere giganteo*, monsters from whence sprang the lower races of men, now represented on earth by a few miserable dying-out tribes and the huge anthropoid apes.

**The amount of malicious fancy and fiction bestowed on mankind’s Benefactors and Instructors by various fanatical writers is quite extraordinary. The scriptures are riddled with contradiction and confusion.**

And if we are taken to task by theologians, whether Protestant or Roman Catholic, we have only to refer them to their own literal texts. The above quoted verse was ever a dilemma, not alone for the men of science and Biblical scholars, but also for priests. For, as the Rev. Father Perrone puts it:

Either they [*Bnēy ha-Elōhīm*] were good angels, and in such case how could they fall? Or they were bad [angels] and in this case could not be called *Bnēy ha-Elōhīm*, the “sons of God.”<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> In the text, “corked up” or “screwed up.”

<sup>2</sup> *Zohar*, Part I, col. 177

<sup>3</sup> *Genesis* vi, 4

<sup>4</sup> Giovanni Perrone, *Prælectiones Theologicæ*, ch. ii

This Biblical riddle — “the real sense of which no author has ever understood,” as candidly confessed by Fourmont<sup>1</sup> — can only be explained by the Occult doctrine, through the *Zohar* to the Western, and the *Book of Dzyan* to the Eastern. What the latter says we have seen; what the *Zohar* tells us is this: *Bnēy ha-Elōhīm* was a name common to the *Malaākhīm* (the good Messengers) and to the *Ishins* (“the lower angels”).<sup>2</sup>

We may add for the benefit of the demonologists that their Satan, “the adversary,” is included in *Job* among the sons of God or *Bnēy ha-Elōhīm* who visit their father.<sup>3</sup> But of this later on.

Now the *Zohar* says that the *Ishins*, the beautiful *Bnēy ha-Elōhīm*, were *not* guilty, but mixed *themselves with mortal men because they were sent on earth to do so*.<sup>4</sup> Elsewhere the same volume shows these *Bnēy ha-Elōhīm* belonging to the tenth subdivision of the “Thrones.”<sup>5</sup> It also explains that the *Ishins*, “men-spirits,” *virī spirituales*, now that men can see them no longer, help magicians to produce, through their science, *homunculi* which are not *small men* but “men *smaller* (in the sense of *inferiority*) than men.” Both show themselves under the form that the *Ishins* had then, *i.e.*, gaseous and ethereal. Their chief is Azāzēl.

But Azāzēl, whom the Church dogma will associate with Satan, is nothing of the kind. Azāzēl is a *mystery*, as explained elsewhere, and it is so expressed in Maimonides.<sup>6</sup> “There is an impenetrable mystery in the narrative concerning Azāzēl.” And so there is, as Lanci, a librarian to the Vatican and one who ought to know, says — we have quoted him before — that “this venerable divine name (*nome divino e venerabile*) has become through the pen of Biblical scholars, a *devil*, a wilderness, a mountain, and a he-goat.”<sup>7</sup> Therefore it seems foolish to derive the name as Spencer does, from *Azal* (separated) and *El* (god), hence “one separated from God,” the DEVIL. In the *Zohar*, Azāzēl is rather the sacrificial victim than the “formal adversary of Jehovah,” as Spencer would have it.<sup>8</sup>

The amount of malicious fancy and fiction bestowed on that “Host” by various fanatical writers is quite extraordinary. Azāzēl and his “host” are simply the Hebrew “Prometheus,” and ought to be viewed from the same standpoint. The *Zohar* shows the *Ishins* chained on the mountain in the desert, allegorically; thus simply alluding to those “spirits” as being chained to the earth during the cycle of incarnation. Azāzēl (or Azāziēl) is one of the chiefs of the “transgressing” angels in *Enoch*, who descending upon Ardis, the top of Mount Armon [Hermon], bound themselves by swearing loyalty to each other. It is said that Azāzēl taught men to make swords, knives,

---

<sup>1</sup> Étienne Fourmont, *Reflexions sur l'origine, l'histoire et la succession des anciens peuples*, etc., 1747

<sup>2</sup> *Parha Rabba*

<sup>3</sup> *Job* i, 6

<sup>4</sup> *Book of Ruth and Schadash*, fol. 63, col. 3; Amsterdam edition

<sup>5</sup> *Zohar*, part ii, col. 73

<sup>6</sup> *More Nebūkhīm*, ch. xxvi, p. 8

<sup>7</sup> *La Sacra Scrittura*

<sup>8</sup> [Joannes Spencer, *De Legibus Hebræorum*, etc., lib. II, p. 993; Cambridge, 1865, fol. ed.]

shields, to fabricate mirrors (?) to make *one see what is behind him* (*viz.*, “magic mirrors”). Amazarak taught all the sorcerers and dividers of roots; Amers taught the solution of magic; Barkayal, astrology; Akibeel, the meaning of portents and signs; Tamial, astronomy; and Asaradel taught the motion of the moon. “These seven were the first instructors of the Fourth man” (*i.e.*, of the *Fourth Race*). But why should allegory be always understood as meaning all that its dead-letter expresses?

**Angels aspire to become men, for the perfect man is above angel, says Éliphas Lévi, only if he could realise his divine ancestry and stellar destiny.**

It is the symbolical representation of the great struggle between divine wisdom, *Nous*, and its earthly reflection, *Psychē*, or between Spirit and Soul, in Heaven and on Earth. In Heaven — because the divine MONAD had voluntarily exiled itself therefrom, to descend, for incarnating purposes, to a lower plane and thus transform the animal of clay *into an immortal god*. For, as Éliphas Lévi tells us, “the angels aspire to become men; for the perfect man, the man-god, is above even angels.” On Earth — because no sooner had Spirit descended than it was strangled in the coils of matter.

**Occult symbolism unlocks the mystery of the terrestrial archangel of the Christians and the Celestial Dragon/Serpent of the Archaic Wisdom-Religion by reversing the characters. Theological symbolics conceal them even more.**

Strange to say, the Occult teaching reverses the characters; it is the anthropomorphic archangel with the Christians, and the man-like God with the Hindus, which represent matter in this case; and the Dragon, or Serpent, Spirit. Occult symbolism furnishes the key to the mystery; theological symbolics conceal it still more. For the former explains many a saying in the Bible and even in the New Testament which have hitherto remained incomprehensible; while the latter, owing to its dogma of Satan and his rebellion, has belittled the character and nature of its would-be infinite, absolutely perfect god, and created the greatest evil and curse on earth — belief in a personal Devil. This mystery is opened with the key to its metaphysical symbolism now restored; while that of theological interpretation shows the gods and the archangels standing as symbols for the dead letter or dogmatic religions, and as arrayed against the pure truths of Spirit, naked and unadorned with fancy.

**Thus the Latin Church calls itself the bride of Christ and the trustee of Peter, to whom the rebuke of the Master, “get thee behind me Satan,” was justly addressed.<sup>1</sup> The Protestant Church replaces the New Dispensation by the old “Law of Moses,” which Christ openly repudiated: both Churches are fighting against Divine Truth when spurning and slandering the Dragon of Inner Wisdom.**

Many were the hints thrown out in this direction in *Isis Unveiled*, and a still greater number of references to this mystery may be found scattered throughout these volumes. To make the point clear once for all: that which the clergy of every dogmatic religion — pre-eminently the Christian — points out as Satan, the enemy of God, is in reality, the highest divine Spirit — occult Wisdom on Earth — in its naturally an-

---

<sup>1</sup> Look up “Paul an Initiate and founder of Christianity” and “Peter not an Initiate and the enemy of Paul,” in our Buddhas and Initiates Series. — ED. PHIL.

tagonistic character to every worldly, evanescent illusion, dogmatic or ecclesiastical religions included. Thus, the Latin Church, intolerant, bigoted and cruel to all who do not choose to be its slaves; the Church which calls itself the bride of Christ, and the trustee at the same time of Peter, to whom the rebuke of the Master “get thee behind me Satan” was justly addressed; and again the Protestant Church which, while calling itself Christian, paradoxically replaces the New Dispensation by the old “Law of Moses” which Christ openly repudiated: both these Churches are fighting against divine Truth, when repudiating and slandering the Dragon of esoteric (because *divine*) Wisdom. Whenever anathematizing the Gnostic Solar Chnouphis — the Agathodaimōn-Christos, or the theosophical Serpent of Eternity, or even the Serpent of *Genesis* — they are moved by the same Spirit of dark fanaticism that moved the Pharisees to curse Jesus by saying to him “Say we not well thou hast a devil?”

Read the account about Indra (Vāyu) in the *Rig-Veda*, the occult volume *par excellence* of Āryanism, and then compare it with the same in the *Purānas* — the exoteric version thereof, and the purposely garbled account of the true Wisdom religion. In the *Rig-Veda* Indra is the highest and greatest of the Gods, and his Soma-drinking is allegorical of his highly spiritual nature. In the *Purānas*, Indra becomes a profligate, and a regular drunkard on the Soma juice, in the terrestrial way. He is the conqueror of all the “enemies of the gods” — the Daityas, Nāgas (Serpents), Asuras, all the *Serpent-gods*, and of Vritra, the Cosmic Serpent. Indra is the St. Michael of the Hindu Pantheon — the chief of the *militant* Host. Turning to the Bible, we find Satan, one of the “Sons of God,”<sup>1</sup> becoming in exoteric interpretation the Devil, and the Dragon in its infernal, evil sense. But in the *Kabbalah*,<sup>2</sup> Sammāēl, who is Satan, is shown to be identical with St. Michael, the *slayer of the Dragon*. How is this? For it is said that Tzelem (the image) reflects alike Michael and Sammāēl *who are one*. Both proceed, it is taught, from *Rūach* (Spirit), *Neshāmāh* (Soul) and *Nephesh* (life). In the *Chaldean Book of Numbers*, Sammāēl is the concealed (occult) Wisdom, and Michael the higher *terrestrial* Wisdom, both emanating from the same source but diverging after their issue from the *mundane soul*, which on Earth is *Mahat* (intellectual understanding), or *Manas* (the seat of Intellect). They diverge, because one (Michael) is *influenced* by *Neshāmāh*, while the other (Sammāēl) remains *uninfluenced*. This tenet was perverted by the dogmatic spirit of the Church; which, loathing independent Spirit, uninfluenced by the external form (hence by dogma), forthwith made of Sammāēl-Satan (the most wise and spiritual spirit of all) — the adversary of its anthropomorphic God and sensual physical man, the DEVIL!<sup>3</sup>



---

<sup>1</sup> Job i, 6

<sup>2</sup> The *Chaldean Book of Numbers*

<sup>3</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 365-78



## Origin of the Satanic Myth.

From *The Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 378-90.

Let us then fathom this creation of the Patristic fancy still deeper, and find its prototype with the Pagans. The origin of the new *Satanic* myth is easy to trace. The tradition of the Dragon and the Sun is echoed in every part of the world, both in its civilized and semi-savage regions. It took rise in the whisperings about secret initiations among the profane, and was established universally through the once universal heliolatrous religion. There was a time when the four parts of the world were covered with the temples sacred to the Sun and the Dragon; but the cult is now preserved mostly in China and the Buddhist countries. "Bel and the Dragon being uniformly coupled together, and the priest of the Ophite religion as uniformly assumed the name of his God."<sup>1</sup> In the religions of the past, it is in Egypt we have to seek for its Western origin. The Ophites adopted their rites from Hermes Trismegistus, and heliolatrous worship crossed over with its Sun-gods into the land of the Pharaohs from India. In the gods of Stonehenge we recognise the divinities of Delphi and Babylon, and in those of the latter the devas of the Vedic nations. Bel and the Dragon, Apollo and Python, Krishna and Kāliya, Osiris and Typhon are all one under many names — the latest of which are Michael and the Red Dragon, and St. George and his Dragon. As Michael is "one as God," or his "Double," for terrestrial purposes, and is one of the Elōhim, the fighting angel, he is thus simply a permutation of Jehovah. Whatever the Cosmic or astronomical event that first gave rise to the allegory of the "War of Heaven," its earthly origin has to be sought in the temples of Initiation and archaic crypts. The following are the proofs:

We find (a) the priests assuming the name of the gods they served; (b) the "Dragons" held throughout all antiquity as the symbols of Immortality and Wisdom, of secret Knowledge and of Eternity; and (c) the hierophants of Egypt, of Babylon, and India, styling themselves generally the "Sons of the Dragon" and "Serpents"; thus the teachings of the Secret Doctrine are thereby corroborated.

. . . there were numerous catacombs in Egypt and Chaldea, some of them of a very vast extent. The most renowned of them were the subterranean crypts of Thebes and Memphis. The former, beginning on the western side of the Nile, extended towards the Libyan desert, and were known as the *Serpent's* catacombs or passages. It was there that were performed the sacred mysteries of the *kyklos anagkēs*, [κύκλος ἀνάγκης] the "Unavoidable Cycle," more generally known as "the circle of necessity"; the inexorable doom imposed upon every soul after the bodily death, and when it has been judged in the Amenthian region.

In de Bourbourg's book, Votan, the Mexican demi-god, in narrating his expedition, describes a subterranean passage which ran underground, and terminated at the root of the heavens, adding that this passage was a snake's hole, "*un*

---

<sup>1</sup> *Archæologia*, London 1834, Vol. XXV, p. 220: "Observations on Dracontia," by the Rev. John Bathurst Deane.

*agujero de culebra*”; and that he was admitted to it because he was himself “a son of the snakes,” or a serpent.<sup>1</sup>

This is, indeed, very suggestive; for his description of the *snake's hole* is that of the ancient Egyptian crypt, as above mentioned. The hierophants, moreover, of Egypt, as of Babylon, generally styled themselves the “Sons of the Serpent-god,” or “Sons of the Dragon,” [during the mysteries] . . . “The Assyrian priest bore always the name of his god,” says Movers.<sup>2</sup> The Druids of the Celto-Britannic regions also called themselves snakes. “I am a Serpent, I am a Druid,” says Taliesin.<sup>3</sup> The Egyptian Karnak is twin brother to the Carnac of Brittany, the latter Carnac meaning the serpent's mound. The Dracontia once covered the surface of the globe, and these temples were sacred to the Dragon, only because it was the symbol of the sun, which, in its turn, was the symbol of the highest god — the Phœnician Ēlon or Elyōn, whom Abraham recognised as Ēl Elyōn.<sup>4</sup> Besides the surname of serpents, they were called the “builders,” the “architects”; for the immense grandeur of their temples and monuments was such that even now the pulverised remains of them frighten the mathematical calculations of our modern engineers.

De Bourbourg hints that the chiefs of the name of Votan, the *Quetzal-cohuatl*, or Serpent deity of the Mexicans, are the descendants of Ham and Canaan. “I am Hivim,” they say. “Being a Hivim, I am of the great race of the Dragon (snake). I am a snake myself, for I am a Hivim.”<sup>5</sup>

**One of several “Wars in Heaven” is a terrestrial one: it refers to those terrible struggles in store for the candidate for adeptship, between his Heavenly Self and his earthly passions that he strives to master, that is, to slay the dragon of his lower nature and, having cast off his old skin, to become a Son of Serpent, a Son of Wisdom.**<sup>6</sup>

Furthermore, the “War in Heaven” is shown, in one of its significations, to have meant and referred to those terrible struggles in store for the candidate for adeptship, between himself and his (by magic) personified human passions, when the *inner* enlightened man had to either slay them or fail. In the former case he became the “Dragon-Slayer,” as having happily overcome all the temptations; and a “Son of the Serpent” and a Serpent himself, having cast off his old skin and being born in a *new* body, becoming a Son of Wisdom and Immortality in Eternity.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Cartas*, etc., IV, p. 56; *Popol-Vuh*, Introduction, p. lxxxix

<sup>2</sup> *Die Phönizier*, Vol. I, p. 70

<sup>3</sup> *Archæologia*, Vol. XXV, p. 220. [See Editor's Note 68 in Vol. I of *Isis Unveiled*, 1972.]

<sup>4</sup> Cory, *Ancient Fragments*, 1832, p. 9; Eusebius, *Præp. evang.*, lib. I, cap. x (36); also, *Genesis* xiv.

<sup>5</sup> *Cartas*, etc., pp. 49 *fn.* 15, and 51 *et seq.* [Quoting *Isis Unveiled*, I pp. 553-54.]

<sup>6</sup> Look up “Seven Wars in Heaven and on Earth,” in our Secret Doctrine's Third Propositions Series. — ED. PHIL.

**Another “War in Heaven” is astronomical, referring to the Solar and Lunar eclipses that are connected with the circulations of Cosmos, the movement of electromagnetic forces between planetary bodies. Eclipses are especially related to the transference of life-energy from one celestial body to another and stand in direct relationship to human initiations.<sup>1</sup>**

Seth, the reputed forefather of Israel, is only a Jewish travesty of Hermes, the God of Wisdom, called also Thoth, Tat, Seth, Set, and Satan. He is also Typhon — the same as Apophis, the Dragon slain by Horus; for Typhon was also called Set. He is simply the *dark side* of Osiris, his brother, as Angra Mainyu is the black shadow of Ahura-Mazdhā. Terrestrially, all these allegories were connected with the trials of adeptship and initiation. Astronomically, they referred to the Solar and Lunar eclipses, the mythical explanations of which we find to this day in India and Ceylon, where anyone can study the allegorical narratives and traditions which have remained unchanged for many thousands of years.

Rāhu, mythologically is a *Daitya* — a giant, a Demi-god, the lower part of whose body ended in a Dragon or Serpent's tail. During the churning of the Ocean, when the gods produced *Amrita* — the water of Immortality — he stole some of it, and drinking, became immortal. The Sun and Moon, who had detected him in his theft, denounced him to Vishnu, who placed him in the stellar spheres, the upper portion of his body representing the Dragon's head and the lower (*Ketu*) the Dragon's tail; the two being the ascending and descending nodes. Since then, Rāhu wreaks his vengeance on the Sun and Moon by occasionally swallowing them. But this fable had another mystic meaning, since *Rāhu*, the Dragon's head, played a prominent part in the mysteries of the Sun's (*Vikartana's*) initiation, when the candidate and the Dragon had a supreme fight.

The caves of the Rishis, the abodes of Teiresias and the Greek seers, were modelled on those of the *Nāgas* — the Hindu *King-Snakes*, who dwelled in cavities of the rocks under the ground. From *Śesha*, the thousand-headed Serpent, on which Vishnu rests, down to Python, the dragon *serpent-oracle*, all point to the secret meaning of the myth. In India we find the fact mentioned in the earliest *Purānas*. The children of Surasā are the “mighty Dragons.” The *Vāyu-Purāna* replacing “Surasā” (of *Vishnu-Purāna*) by the *Dānavas* — the descendants of Danu by the sage Kāśyapa — and those *Dānavas* being the giants (or Titans) who warred against the gods, they are thus shown identical with the “Dragons” and “Serpents” of Wisdom.

**The Sun-gods of the old Aryan, ancient Greek, and modern Christian schemes have been copied from each other.**

By simply comparing the Sun-gods of every country, one may find their allegories agreeing perfectly with one another; and the more the allegorical symbol is occult the more its corresponding symbol in other systems agrees with it. Thus, if from three systems widely differing from each other in appearance — the old Aryan, the ancient Greek, and the modern Christian schemes — we select several Sun-gods and dragons at random, these will be found copied from each other.

---

<sup>1</sup> Cf. W. Emmett Small. (*Comp. & Ed.*) *The Dream That Never Dies: Boris de Zirkoff speaks out on Theosophy*. San Diego: Point Loma Publications, Inc., 1983; [FAREWELL TO MATTER, “A Day to Remember,” p. 202]

Let us take Agni the fire-god, Indra the firmament, and Kārtikeya from the Hindus; the Greek Apollo; and *Mickael*, the “Angel of the Sun,” the first of the Æōns, called by the Gnostics “the saviour” — and proceed in order.

- 1 Agni — the fire-god — is called in the Rig-Veda Vaiśvānara. Now Vaiśvānara is a Dānava — a giant-demon,<sup>1</sup> whose daughters Pulomā and Kālākā are the mothers of numberless Dānavas (30 millions), by Kāśyapa,<sup>2</sup> and live in *Hiranyapura*, “the golden city, floating in the air.” Therefore, Indra is, in a fashion, the step-son of these two as a son of Kāśyapa; and Kāśyapa is, in this sense, identical with Agni, the fire-god, or Sun (Kāśyapa-Āditya). To this same group belongs Skanda or Kārtikeya (god of War, the *six-faced* planet Mars astronomically), a Kumāra, or virgin-youth, born of Agni,<sup>3</sup> for the purpose of destroying Tāraka, the Dānava Demon, the grandson of Kāśyapa by Hiranyāksha, his son,<sup>4</sup> whose (Tāraka’s) yogi austerities were so extraordinary that they became formidable to the gods, who feared such a rival in power.<sup>5</sup> While Indra, the bright god of the Firmament, kills Vritra (or Ahī), the Serpent-Demon — for which feat he is called *Vritra-Han*, “the destroyer of Vritra”; he also leads the hosts of *Devas* (Angels or gods) against other gods who rebel against Brahmā, for which he is entitled *Jishnu*, “leader of the celestial Host.” Kārtikeya is found bearing the same titles. For killing Tāraka, the Dānava, he is Tāraka-Jit, “Vanquisher of Tāraka,”<sup>6</sup> “*Kumāra Guha*,” “the mysterious Virgin-youth,” “*Siddha-Senā*” — “the leader of the Siddhas”; and *Śaktidhara* — “Spear-holder.”
- 2 Now take Apollo, the Grecian sun-god, and by comparing the mythical accounts given of him, see whether he does not answer both to Indra, Kārtikeya, and even Kāśyapa-Āditya, and at the same time to Michael (as the Angelic form of Jehovah) the “angel of the Sun,” who is “like,” and “one with, God.” Later ingenious interpretations for monotheistic purposes, elevated though they be into

---

<sup>1</sup> He is thus named and included in the list of the Dānavas in *Vāyu-Purāna*: the Commentator of *Bhāgavata-Purāna* calls him a son of Danu, but the name means also “Spirit of Humanity.”

<sup>2</sup> Kāśyapa is called the Son of Brahmā, and is the “Self-Born” to whom a great part of the work of creation is attributed. He is one of the seven Rishis; *exoterically* the son of Marīchi, the son of Brahmā; while *Atharva-veda* says, “The Self-born Kāśyapa sprang from Time”; and *esoterically* — Time and Space are forms of the One *incognizable* Deity. As an *Āditya*, Indra is son of Kāśyapa, as also Vaivasvata Manu, our progenitor. In the instance given in the text, he is Kāśyapa-Āditya, *the Sun and the Sun-god, from whom all* the “Cosmic” Demons, Dragons (nāgas), Serpent-, or Snake-gods, and Dānavas, the giants, are born. The meaning of the allegories given above is purely astronomical and cosmical, but will serve to prove the identity of all.

<sup>3</sup> All such stories differ in the *exoteric* texts. In the Mahābhārata, Kārtikeya, “the six-faced Mars,” is the son of Rudra or Śiva, Self-born *without a mother* from the seed of Śiva cast into the fire. But Kārtikeya is generally called *Agnibhū*, “fire born.”

<sup>4</sup> Hiranyāksha is the ruler or king of the *fifth* region of Pātāla, a Snake-god.

<sup>5</sup> The *Elōhim* also feared the knowledge of Good and Evil for Adam, and therefore are shown as expelling him from Eden or killing him *spiritually*.

<sup>6</sup> The story told is, that Tāraka (called also Kālanābha), owing to his extraordinary Yoga-powers, had obtained all the divine knowledge of yoga-vidyā and occult powers of the gods, who conspired against him. Here we see the “obedient” Host of *Archangels* or minor gods conspiring against the (future) *Fallen* angels, whom Enoch accuses of the great crime of disclosing to the world all “the *secret things* done in heaven.” It is Michael, Gabriel, Raphael, Surgal and Ūriēl who denounced to the Lord God those of their Brethren who were said *to have pried into the divine mysteries* and taught them to men; by this means they themselves escaped a like punishment. Michael was commissioned to fight the Dragon, and so was Kārtikeya, and under the same circumstances. Both are “leaders of the Celestial Host,” both Virgins, both “leaders of Saints,” “Spear-holders” (*Śaktidhara*), etc., etc. Kārtikeya is the original of Michael and St. George, as surely as Indra is the prototype of Kārtikeya.

not-to-be-questioned Church dogmas, prove nothing, except the abuse of human authority and power, perhaps.

**One way to unriddle the Bible is through Hermes, Bel, and Homer, as the way to these is through the Hindu and Chaldean religious symbols.**

Apollo is *Helios* (the Sun), Phœbus-Apollo (“the light of life and of the World”)<sup>1</sup> who arises out of the golden-winged cup (the sun); hence he is the sun-god *par excellence*. At the moment of his birth he asks for his bow to kill Python, the Demon Dragon, who attacked his mother before his birth,<sup>2</sup> and whom he is divinely commissioned to destroy — like Kārtikeya, who is born for the purpose of killing Tāraka, *the too holy and wise demon*. Apollo is born on a sidereal island called *Asteria* — “the floating star island,” the “earth which floats in the air,” which is the Hindu golden *Hiranyapura*; “he is called the pure, (αγνός, *Agnus Dei*, the Indian *Agni*) [as Dr. Keanealy thinks]; in the primal mythos he is exempt from all sensual love.”<sup>3</sup> He is, therefore, a *Kumāra*, like Kārtikeya, and as Indra was in his earlier life and biographies. Python, moreover, the “red Dragon,” connects Apollo with Michael, who fights the Apocalyptic Dragon, who wants to attack the woman in childbirth, as Python attacks Apollo’s mother. Can anyone fail to see the identity? Had the Rt. Hon. W.E. Gladstone, who prides himself on his Greek scholarship and understanding of the spirit of Homer’s allegories, ever had a real inkling of the *esoteric* meaning of the *Iliad* and *Odyssey*, he would have understood St. John’s *Revelation*, and even the *Pentateuch*, better than he does. For the way to the Bible lies through Hermes, Bel, and Homer, as the way to these is through the Hindu and Chaldean religious symbols.

(3) The repetition of this archaic tradition is found in ch. xii of St. John’s *Revelation*, and comes from the Babylonian legends without the smallest doubt, though the Babylonian story had its origin in the allegories of the Āryans. The fragment read by the late George Smith is sufficient to disclose the source of chapter xii of the *Apocalypse*. Here it is as given by the eminent Assyriologist:

Our next fragments refer to the creation of *mankind*, called Adam; as [the man] in the Bible; he is made perfect . . . but afterwards he joins with the dragon of the deep, the animal of Tiamāt, the spirit of chaos, and offends against his god, who *curses him*, and calls down on his head all the evils and troubles of humanity.<sup>4</sup>

This is followed by a war between the dragon and the powers of evil, or chaos on one side and the gods on the other. The gods have weapons forged for

---

<sup>1</sup> The “life and the light” of the material *physical* world, the delight of the senses — not of the soul. Apollo is pre-eminently the *human* god, the god of emotional, pomp-loving and theatrical Church ritualism, with lights and music.

<sup>2</sup> See *Revelation* (xii, 3, 4) where we find Apollo’s mother persecuted by that Python, the Red Dragon, who is also *Porphyron*, the scarlet or red Titan.

<sup>3</sup> *The Apocalypse of Adam-Ōannēs*, p. 88

<sup>4</sup> No “god” who *curses* his (supposed) own work, because he has made it imperfect, can be the one infinite absolute wisdom, whether called Bel or Jehovah.

them,<sup>1</sup> and Merodach [the archangel Michael in *Revelation*] undertakes to lead the heavenly host against the dragon. The war, which is described with spirit, ends of course in the triumph of the principles of good. . . .”<sup>2</sup>

This war of gods with the powers of the Deep, refers also, in its last and terrestrial application, to the struggle between the Āryan adepts of the nascent Fifth Race and the Sorcerers of Atlantis, the Demons of the Deep, the Islanders surrounded with water who disappeared in the Deluge.<sup>3</sup>

**In addition to the religious, astronomical, and geological events included in the universal allegory of Dragons and the “Wars in Heaven” already stated, there is a cosmological connection with the Keshvars of the Earth.**

The symbols of the dragons and “War in Heaven” have, as already stated, more than one significance; religious, astronomical and geological events being included in the one common allegory. But it had also a Cosmological meaning. In India the Dragon story is repeated in one of its forms in the battles of Indra with *Vritra*. In the *Vedas* this Ahi-Vritra is referred to as the Demon of Drought, the terrible hot Wind. Indra is shown to be constantly at war with him; and with the help of his thunder and lightning the god compels Ahi-Vritra to pour down in rain on Earth, and then slays him. Hence, Indra is called the *Vritra-Han* or the “slayer of Vritra,” as Michael is called the Conqueror and “Slayer of the Dragon.” Both these “Enemies” are then the “Old Dragon” precipitated into the depths of the Earth, in this one sense.

**Keshvars, in their seven applications, refer equally to the seven spheres of our planetary chain, the seven planets, the seven heavens, etc., according to whether the sense is applied to physical, supra-mundane, or simply a sidereal worlds.**

The Zend-Avestic Amshāspends are a Host with a leader like St. Michael over them, and seem identical with the legions of Heaven, when one reads the *Vendīdād*. Thus in Fargard XIX, ii, 13 (42), Zarathustra is told by Ahura-Mazdhā to “invoke . . . the Amesha-Spentas who rule over the seven *Keshvars* of the Earth”;<sup>4</sup> which *Keshvars* in their seven applications refer equally to the seven spheres of our planetary chain, to the seven planets, the seven heavens, etc., according to whether the sense is applied to a physical, supra-mundane, or simply a sidereal world. In the same Fargard, in his invocation against Angra Mainyu and his Host, Zarathushtra appeals to them in these worlds:

---

<sup>1</sup> In the Indian allegory of *Tārakāmaya*, the war between the gods and the Asuras headed by Soma (the moon, the King of Plants), it is Viśvakarman, the artificer of the gods, who forges, like Vulcan (Tubal-Cain), their weapons for them.

<sup>2</sup> *The Chaldean Account of Genesis*, p. 304. We have said elsewhere that the “woman with child” of *Revelation* (xii, 1, 2) was Aima, the great mother, or Bināh, the third Sēphīrōth, “whose name is Jehovah”; and the “Dragon,” who seeks to devour her coming child (the Universe), is the Dragon of absolute Wisdom — that Wisdom which, recognising the non-separateness of the Universe and everything in it from the Absolute ALL, sees in it no better than the great Illusion, *Mahāmāyā*, hence the cause of misery and suffering.

<sup>3</sup> See the last pages of *Isis Unveiled*, Vol. I.

<sup>4</sup> The “Seven Keshvars of the Earth” — the seven spheres of our planetary chain, the seven worlds — also mentioned in the *Rig-Veda* — are fully referred to elsewhere. There are six *rajāmsi* (worlds) above *prithivī* — the earth, or “this” (*idam*), as opposed to that which is *yonder* (the six globes on the three other planes). See *Rig-Veda*, I, 34; III, 56; VII, 104, 11; and V, 60, 6.

I invoke the seven bright *Sravah* with their sons and their flocks.<sup>1</sup>

The “*Sravah*” — a word which the Orientalists have given up as one “of unknown meaning” — means the same Amshāspends, but in their highest occult meaning. The “*Sravah*” are the noumena of the phenomenal Amshāspends, the souls or spirits of those *manifested* Powers; and “their sons and their flock” refers to the planetary angels and their sidereal flock of stars and constellations. “Amshāspend” is the exoteric term used in terrestrial combinations and affairs only. Zarathushtra addresses Ahura-Mazdhā constantly as “thou, the maker of *the material* world.” Ormazd is the father of our earth (Spenta Ārmaiti), and she is referred to, when personified, as “the fair daughter of Ahura-Mazdhā,”<sup>2</sup> who is also the creator of the Tree (of occult and spiritual knowledge and wisdom) from which the mystic and mysterious *Baresma* is taken. But the occult name of the bright God was never pronounced outside the temple.

**The grotesque connections and connotations of Genesis’ seducing serpent will be now exposed.**

Sammāēl or Satan, the seducing Serpent of *Genesis*, and one of the primeval angels who rebelled, is the name of the “Red Dragon.” He is the Angel of *Death*, the *Talmud* saying that “the Angel of Death and Satan are the same,” and, killed by Michael, he is once more killed by St. George, who also is a Dragon Slayer; but see the transformations of this. Sammāēl is identical with the *Simoom*, the hot wind of the desert, or again with the Vedic demon of drought, as Vritra; “*Simoom* is called *Atabul-os*” or — *Diabolos*, the devil.

Typhon, or the Dragon Apophis — the *Accuser* in the *Book of the Dead* — is worsted by Horus, who pierces his opponent’s head with a spear; and Typhon is the all-destroying wind of the desert, the rebellious element that throws everything into confusion. As *Set* — he is the darkness of night, the murderer of Osiris, who is the light of day and the sun. Archæology demonstrates that Horus is identical with Anubis,<sup>3</sup> whose effigy was discovered upon an Egyptian monument, with a cuirass and a spear, like Michael and St. George. Anubis is also represented as slaying a dragon, that has the head and tail of a serpent.<sup>4</sup>

**Cosmologically speaking, all Dragons and Serpents conquered by their “slayers” are the turbulent, confused principles in Chaos that are brought to order by the Sun-gods or Creative Powers.**

Cosmologically, then, all the Dragons and Serpents conquered by their “Slayers” are, in their origin, the turbulent confused principles in Chaos, brought to order by the Sun-gods or *creative* powers. In the *Book of the Dead* those principles are called “the Sons of Rebellion.”

---

<sup>1</sup> *Vendīdād*, Fargard XIX, 42. [*SBE*, IV (1895), p. 224]

<sup>2</sup> *ibid.*, 13 (42)

<sup>3</sup> *Book of the Dead*, ch. xvii, line 62: Anubis is Horus who melts in him who is eyeless.

<sup>4</sup> See Lenoir, “Du Dragon de Metz,” in *Mémoires de l’Académie Celtique*, I, 11, 12.

In that night, the oppressor, the murderer of Osiris, otherwise called the *deceiving Serpent* . . . calls the Sons of Rebellion in *An*, and when they arrive to the East of Heaven, then there is War in Heaven and in the entire World.<sup>1</sup>

In the Scandinavian *Eddas* the “War” of the *Aesir* with the *Hrimthussars* (frost-giants), and of *Asathor* with the *Jötunns*, the Serpents and Dragons and the “wolf” who comes out of “Darkness” — is the repetition of the same myth. The “evil Spirits,”<sup>2</sup> having begun by being simply the emblems of Chaos, became euhemerized by the superstition of the rabble, until they have finally won the right of citizenship in the most civilized and learned races of this globe — *since its creation* as alleged — and became a dogma with Christians. As George Smith has it:

The evil Spirits [principles], emblems of Chaos [in Chaldea and Assyria, as in Egypt, we see] . . . resist this change and make war on the Moon the eldest son of Bel, drawing over to their side the Sun, Venus and the atmospheric god Vul.<sup>3</sup>

This is only another version of the Hindu “War in Heaven,” between Soma, the moon, and the gods — Indra being the atmospheric Vul; which shows it plainly to be both a Cosmogonical and an astronomical allegory, woven into and drawn from the earliest theogony as taught in the Mysteries.

**It is in the religious doctrines of the Gnostics that the real meaning of the Dragon, the Serpent, the Goat, and all those symbols of Divine Powers (now called “Evil”) can be clearly seen for what they truly are: prototypes for the Saraph of Moses and his great Brazen Serpent, chief of the “fiery serpents.”**

It is in the religious doctrines of the Gnostics that the real meaning of the Dragon, the Serpent, the Goat, and all those symbols of powers now called *Evil*, can be seen the best; as it is they who divulged the esoteric nature of the Jewish Substitute for AIN-SOPH in their teachings; of the true meaning of which, while the Rabbis concealed it, the Christians, with a few exceptions, knew nothing. Surely Jesus of Nazareth would have hardly advised his apostles to show themselves as *wise* as the serpent, had the latter been a symbol of the *Evil one*; nor would the Ophites, the learned Egyptian Gnostics of the “Brotherhood of the Serpent,” have revered a living snake in their ceremonies as the emblem of WISDOM, the divine *Sophia* (and a type of the all-good, not the all-bad), were that reptile so closely connected with Satan. The fact is, that even as a common ophidian it has ever been a dual symbol; and as a Dragon it had never been anything else than a symbol of the manifested Deity in its great Wisdom. The *Draco volans*, the flying Dragon of the early painters, may be an exaggerated picture of the real extinct antediluvian animal; but those who have faith in the Occult teachings believe that in the days of old there were such creatures as flying Dragons, or a kind of Pterodactyl, and that it is those gigantic winged lizards that served as the prototypes for the Sārāph of Moses and his great Brazen Serpent.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Book of the Dead*, ch. xvii, lines 54, 49. See also P.E. Jablonski, *Pantheon Ægyptiorum*, 1750-52.

<sup>2</sup> These “evil Spirits” can by no means be identified with Satan or the Great Dragon. They are the Elementals generated or begotten by ignorance — Cosmic and human passions — or Chaos.

<sup>3</sup> *Assyrian Discoveries*, p. 403

<sup>4</sup> See *Numbers* xxi, 8-9. God orders Moses to build a brazen Serpent “Sārāph”; to *look upon which* heals those bitten by the *fiery serpents*. The latter were the *Serāphim*, each one of which, as *Isaiah* shows (vi, 2), “had six



The Jews had worshipped the latter *idol* themselves, but after the religious reforms brought about by Hezekiah, turned round, and called that symbol of the great or Higher God of every other nation — a Devil, and their own usurper — the “One God.”<sup>1</sup>



2

The appellation Sa'tan, in Hebrew *shātān*, “an adversary” (from the verb *shātana*, “to be adverse,” to persecute) belongs by right to the first and cruellest “*adversary of all the other gods*” — Jehovah, not to the Serpent, which spoke only words of sympathy and wisdom, and is at the worst, even in the dogma, “the adversary of men.” This dogma, based as it is on chapter iii of *Genesis*, is as illogical and unjust as it is paradoxical. For who was the first to *create* that original and henceforward universal tempter of man — the woman? Not the serpent surely, but the “Lord God” himself, who, saying: “It is not good that the man should be alone” — made woman, and “brought her unto the man.”<sup>3</sup> If the unpleasant little incident that followed *was* and is still to be regarded as the “original sin,” then it exhibits the Creator’s divine foresight in a poor light indeed. It would have been far better for the first Adam (of ch. i), to have been left either “male and female,” or “alone.” It is the Lord God, evidently, who was the real cause of all the mischief, the “*agent provocateur*,” and the Serpent

---

*wings*”; they are the symbols of Jehovah, and of all the other Demiourgoi who produce out of themselves six sons or likenesses — Seven with their Creator. Thus, the Brazen Serpent is Jehovah, the chief of the “fiery serpents.” And yet, in *2 Kings* xviii, it is shown that King Hezekiah, who, like as David his father, “did that which was right in the sight of the Lord” — “brake in pieces the brazen serpent that Moses had made . . . and called it *Nehushtān*,” or piece of brass.

<sup>1</sup> “And Satan stood up against Israel and moved David to number Israel.” (*1 Chronicles* xxi, i) “The anger of the Lord [Jehovah] was kindled against Israel,” and he moved David to say: “Go, number Israel.” (*2 Samuel* xxiv, i) The two are then identical.

<sup>2</sup> Scapegoat (1854) William Holman Hunt, Lady Lever Art Gallery, Port Sunlight, Wirral, England

<sup>3</sup> *Genesis* ii, 18, 22

— only a prototype of *Azāzēl*, “the scapegoat for the sin of (the God of) Israel,” the poor *Tragos* having to pay the penalty for his Master’s and Creator’s blunder. This, of course, is addressed only to those who accept the opening events of the drama of humanity in *Genesis* in their dead-letter sense. Those who read them esoterically, are not reduced to fanciful speculations and hypothesis; *they know* how to read the symbolism therein contained, and cannot err.

**Even the name of the “Lord” was profaned by crude and gross application to religious dogmas and personations. Jehovah is a blind created purposely by the Rabbis, a secret preserved by them with ten-fold care after the Christians had despoiled them of this God-name which was their own property.**

There is at present no need to touch upon the mystic and manifold meaning of the name Jehovah in its abstract sense, one independent of the Deity *falsely* called by that name. It was a blind created purposely by the Rabbis, a secret preserved by them with ten-fold care after the Christians had despoiled them of this God-name which was their own property.<sup>1</sup> But the following statement is made. The personage who is named in the first four chapters of *Genesis* variously as “God,” the “Lord God,” and “Lord” simply, is not one and the same person; certainly it is not *Jehovah*. There are three distinct classes or groups of the *Elōhīm* called *Sephīrōth* in the *Kabbalah*, *Jehovah* appearing only in chapter iv, in the first verse of which he is named Cain, and in the last transformed into *mankind* — male and female, *Yāhweh*.<sup>2</sup> The “Serpent,” moreover, is not Satan, but the bright Angel, one of the *Elōhīm* clothed in radiance and glory, who, promising the woman that if they ate of the forbidden fruit “*ye shall not surely die*,” kept his promise, and made man immortal in his *incorruptible nature*. He is the *Iaō* of the Mysteries, the chief of the Androgyne creators of men. Chapter iii contains (esoterically) the withdrawal of the veil of ignorance that closed the perceptions of the Angelic Man, made in the image of the “Boneless” gods, and the opening of his consciousness to his real nature; thus showing the bright Angel (Lucifer) in the light of a giver of Immortality, and as the “Enlightener,” while the real Fall into generation and matter is to be sought in chapter iv. There, *Jehovah-Cain*, the male part of Adam the *dual* man, having separated himself from Eve, creates in her “Abel,” *the first natural woman*,<sup>3</sup> and sheds the *Virgin blood*.

---

<sup>1</sup> Dozens of the most erudite writers have sifted thoroughly the various meanings of the name Jehovah (with, and without the Masoretic points), and shown their multifarious bearings. The best of such works is the *Key to the Hebrew-Egyptian Mystery in the Source of Measures*, etc. [James Ralston Skinner, *Key to the Hebrew-Egyptian mystery: in The Source of Measures originating the British inch and the ancient cubit by which was built the great pyramid of Egypt and the temple of Solomon; and through the possession and use of which, man, assuming to realize the creative law of the deity, set it forth in a mystery, among the Hebrews called kabbala*. Cincinnati: Robert Clarke & Co., 1875; 324pp. A searchable PDF of this masterpiece on the mathematics of the cosmic mind can be downloaded from our Planetary Rounds and Globes Series. For an in-depth analysis of the subject see “The Original Sin is a Jewish invention” and “The Holy of Holies and Its degradation,” in our Black versus White Magic Series. — ED. PHIL.]

<sup>2</sup> In the above-mentioned work (p. 233, Appendix IV), verse 26 of the 4<sup>th</sup> chapter of *Genesis* is correctly translated “then men began to call themselves *Jehovah*,” but less correctly explained, perhaps, as the last word ought to be written *Yāh* (male)-*Havāh* (female), to show that from that time the race of distinctly separate man and woman began.

<sup>3</sup> See for explanation the excellent pages of Appendix VII of the same work.

**Yah-Havah or mankind and Satan, the Serpent of Seduction, are one and the same in every particular. There is no Devil or Evil outside mankind and its religions.**

Now Cain, being shown identical with Jehovah, on the authority of the correct reading of the first verse of chapter iv of *Genesis*, in the original Hebrew text; and the Rabbis teaching that “*Kin* (Cain), the Evil, was the Son of Eve by Sammāēl, the devil who took Adam’s place”; and the *Talmud* adding that “the evil Spirit, Satan, and Sammāēl, the angel of Death, are the same”<sup>1</sup> — it becomes easy to see that Jehovah (*mankind*, or “Yāh-Havāh”) and Satan (therefore the tempting Serpent) are one and the same in every particular. *There is no Devil, no Evil, outside mankind to produce a Devil.* Evil is a necessity in, and one of the supporters, of the manifested universe. It is a necessity for progress and evolution, as Night is necessary for the production of Day, and Death for that of Life — *that man may live for ever.*

**Metaphysically, Satan represents the reverse or polar opposite of everything in nature. Yet the Church has degraded and anathematized the Satanians, the Cainites, and even Judas Iscariotes.**

Satan represents metaphysically simply the *reverse or the polar opposite* of everything in nature.<sup>2</sup> He is the “adversary,” allegorically, the “murderer,” and the great Enemy of *all*, because there is nothing in the whole universe that has not two sides — the reverses of the same medal. But in that case, light, goodness, beauty, etc., may be called Satan with as much propriety as the Devil, since they are the *adversaries* of darkness, badness, and ugliness. And now the philosophy and the *rationale* of certain early Christian sects — called *heretical* and viewed as the abomination of the times — will become more comprehensible. We may understand how it was that the sect of SATANIANS came to be degraded, and were anathematized without any hope of vindication in a future day, since they kept their tenets secret. How, on the same principle, the CAINITES came to be degraded, and even the (Judas) ISCARIOTES; the true character of the *treacherous* apostle having never been correctly presented before the tribunal of Humanity.

**Every Gnostic sect was founded by an Initiate.**

As a direct consequence, the tenets of the Gnostic sects also become clear. Each of these sects was founded by an Initiate, while their tenets were based on the correct knowledge of the symbolism of every nation. Thus it becomes comprehensible why Ialdabaōth was regarded by most of them as the god of Moses, and was held as a proud, ambitious, and impure spirit, who had abused his power by usurping the place of the *highest God*, though he was no better, and in some respects far worse than *his brethren Elōhīm*; the latter representing the all-embracing, manifested deity only in their collectivity, since they were the fashioners of the first differentiations of the primary Cosmic substance for the creation of the phenomenal Universe. Therefore Jehovah was called by the Gnostics the Creator of, and one with Ophiomorphos,

---

<sup>1</sup> *Bāvā Bathrā*, 16a

<sup>2</sup> In Demonology, Satan is the leader of the opposition in Hell, the monarch of which was Beelzebul. He belongs to the fifth kind or class of demons (of which there are nine according to mediæval demonology), and he is at the head of witches and sorcerers. But see in the text the true meaning of Baphomet, the goat-headed Satan, one with Azāzēl, the scape goat of Israel. Nature is the god PAN.

the Serpent, Satan, or EVIL.<sup>1</sup> They taught that Iurbo and Adonāi were “names of Iaō-Jehovah, who is an emanation of Ialdabaōth.”<sup>2</sup> This amounted in their language to saying what the Rabbis expressed in a more veiled way, by stating that “Cain had been generated by Sammāēl or Satan.”

**In every ancient system, the fallen Angels are made the prototypes of fallen men, allegorically, and of those men themselves, esoterically. In Christianity, all combatants, gods and demons, adversaries in both camps, are now transformed into Dragons and Satans, simply in order to connect Evil personified with the Serpent of Genesis, and thus prove the new dogma.**

The fallen Angels are made in every ancient system the prototypes of *fallen* men — allegorically, and, *those men themselves* — esoterically. Thus the Elōhīm of the hour of creation became the “Bnēy ha-Elōhīm,” the sons of God, among whom is Satan — in the Semitic traditions; war in heaven between Thraētaona and Azhi-Dahāka, the destroying Serpent, ends on earth, according to Burnouf, in the battle of pious men against the power of Evil, “of the Iranians with the Āryan Brahmans of India.” And the conflict of the gods with the *Asuras* is repeated in the Great war — the *Mahābhārata*. In the latest religion of all, Christianity, all the combatants, gods and demons, adversaries in both the camps, are now transformed into Dragons and Satans, simply in order to connect EVIL personified with the Serpent of *Genesis*, and thus prove the new dogma.<sup>3, 4</sup>



Spirit ink painting by Wendy Vidlock

<sup>1</sup> *Isis Unveiled*, II p. 184

<sup>2</sup> *Codex Nazaræus*. See Part II, Section XVIII, “On the Myth of the ‘Fallen Angels’”

<sup>3</sup> See further details upon the Satanic myth, Part II on Symbolism, in this Volume.

<sup>4</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 378-90

## Noah was a Kabeiros hence he must have been a Demon.

From *The Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 390-93.

**Noah is either a myth along with the others, or one whose legend was built upon the Kabeirian or Titanic tradition as taught in Samothrace; he has, therefore, no claim to be monopolized by either Jew or Christian.**

It matters little whether it is Isis, or Ceres — the “Kabeiria” — or again the Kabeiroi, who have taught men agriculture; but it is very important to prevent fanatics from monopolising all the facts in history and legend, and from fathering their distortions of truth, history, and legend upon one man. Noah is either a *myth* along with the others, or one whose legend was built upon the Kabeirian or Titanic tradition, as taught in Samothrace; he has, therefore, no claim to be monopolized by either Jew or Christian. If, as Faber tried to demonstrate at such cost of learning and research, Noah is an Atlantean and a Titan, and his family are the Kabeiroi or pious Titans, etc. — then biblical chronology falls by its own weight, and along with it all the patriarchs — the antediluvian and pre-Atlantean Titans. As now discovered and proven, Cain is Mars, the god of *power and generation*, and of the first (sexual) bloodshed.<sup>1</sup> Tubal-Cain is a Kabir, “an instructor of every artificer in brass and iron”; or — if this will please better — he is one with Hēphaistos or Vulcan; Jabal is taken from the Kabeiroi — instructors in agriculture, “such as have cattle,” and Jubal is “the father of all such that handle the harp and organ,”<sup>2</sup> he, or *they* who fabricated the *harpē*, [ἀρπη] for Kronos [Chronos] and the trident for Poseidon.<sup>3</sup>

The history or “fables” about the mysterious Telchines — fables echoing each and all the archaic events of our esoteric teachings — furnish us with a key to the origin of *Cain’s* genealogy;<sup>4</sup> they give the reason why the Roman Catholic Church identifies “the accursed blood” of Cain and Ham with Sorcery, and makes it responsible for the Deluge. Were not the Telchines — it is argued — the mysterious ironworkers of Rhodes; they who were the first to raise statues to the gods, furnish them with weapons, and men with magic arts? And is it not they who were destroyed by a deluge at the command of Zeus, as the *Cainites* were by that of Jehovah?

**Like Samothrace of the Kabeiroi, Rhodes island is connected in the memory of men with the flood legends.**

The Telchines are simply the Kabeiroi and the Titans, in another form. They are the Atlanteans also. “Like Lemnos and Samothrace,” says Decharme, “Rhodes, the birthplace of the Telchines, is an island of volcanic formation.”<sup>5</sup> The island of Rhodes emerged suddenly out of the seas, after having been previously engulfed by the

---

<sup>1</sup> As he is also Vulcan or Vul-cain, the greatest god with the later Egyptians, and the greatest Kabir. The god of *time* was *Khīyūn* in Egypt, or Saturn, or Seth, and *Khīyūn* is the same as Cain. [Look up J.R. Skinner’s *Source of Measures*, p. 278, *op. cit.* — ED. PHIL.]

<sup>2</sup> [Genesis iv, 21]

<sup>3</sup> See *Strabo*, Geography, Bk. XIV, ii, 7, comparing them to the Cyclopes; also Callimachus, *In Delum*, 31, and Stratus P. Pupinius, *Silvarum Libri V*, Bk. IV, 6, 47, and *Thebaidos Libri XII*, Bk. II, 274.

<sup>4</sup> Genesis iv and v

<sup>5</sup> *Mythologie de la Grèce Antique: Génie du Feu — Les Telchines*, p. 271

Ocean, say the traditions. Like Samothrace (of the Kabeiroi) it is connected in the memory of men with the Flood legends. As enough has been said on this subject, however, it may be left for the present.

But we may add a few more words about Noah, the Jewish representative of nearly every pagan God in one or another character. The Homeric songs contain, poetized, all the later fables about the Patriarchs, who are all sidereal, cosmic, and numerical symbols and signs. The attempt to disconnect the two genealogies — those of Seth and Cain<sup>1</sup> — and the further attempt, as futile, to show them *real, historical* men, has only led to more serious inquiries into the history of the Past, and to discoveries which have damaged for ever the supposed *revelation*. For instance, the identity of Noah and Melchizedek being established, the further identity of Melchizedek, or Father Tsaddik, with Kronos-Saturn is proved also.

That it is so may be easily demonstrated. It is not denied by any of the Christian writers. J. Bryant concurs with all those who are of opinion, that Sydic, or Tsaddik was the patriarch Noah (as also Melchizedek); and that the name by which he is called, or Sadic, corresponds to the character given of him in *Genesis*.<sup>2</sup> “He was צַדִּיק, Tsaddik, a just man, and perfect in his generation. All science, and every useful art were attributed to him; and through his sons they were transmitted to posterity.”<sup>3</sup>

**The Kabeiroi are identical with our Dhyani-Chohans, with the corporeal and the incorporeal Pitris, and with all rulers and instructors of the primeval races who are referred to as the Gods and Kings of the divine Dynasties.**

Now it is Sanchoniathon, who informs the world that the Kabeiroi were the Sons of Sydic or Zedek (Melchizedek). True enough, this information, having descended to us through Eusebius,<sup>4</sup> may be regarded with a certain amount of suspicion, as it is more than likely that he dealt with Sanchoniathon's works as he has with Manetho's Synchronistic Tables. But let us suppose that the identification of Sydic, Kronos, or Saturn with Noah and Melchizedek, is based on one of the Eusebian pious hypotheses. Let us accept it as such, along with Noah's characteristic as a *just man*, and his supposed duplicate, the mysterious Melchizedek, King of Salem, and priest of the high god, after “his own order”;<sup>5</sup> and finally, having seen what they all were spiritually, astronomically, psychically and cosmically, let us now see what they became *rabbinically* and KABBALISTICALLY.

---

<sup>1</sup> Nothing could be more awkward and childish, we say, than this fruitless attempt to disconnect the genealogies of Cain and of Seth, or to conceal the identity of names under a different spelling. Thus, Cain has a Son ENOCH, and Seth a Son ENOCH also (Enos, Ch'anoch, Hanoch; — one may do what one likes with Hebrew unvowelled names). In the Cainite line Enoch begets IRAD, Irad MEHUYAEL, the latter METHÜSHÄEL, and Methüshäel, Lamech. In the Sethite line, Enoch begets Cainan, and this one MAHALALEL (a variation on Mehuyaël), who gives birth to JARED (or Irad); Jarad to ENOCH (Number 3), who produces Methüshelah (from Methüshäel), and finally Lamech closes the list. [Cf. *Isis Unveiled*, II pp. 459 *et seq.*; and *Genesis* iv and v] Now all these are symbols (Kabbalistically) of solar and lunar years, of astronomical periods, and of physiological (phallic) functions, just as in any other pagan symbolical creed. This has been proven by a number of writers.

<sup>2</sup> *Genesis* vi, 9

<sup>3</sup> Bryant, *A New System*, etc., 1807, Vol. III, p. 343

<sup>4</sup> *Præparatio Evangelica*, Bk. I, ch. 10; (p. 36)

<sup>5</sup> *Hebrews* v, 6; vii, 1, *et seq.*

Speaking of Adam, Kain, Mars, etc., as *personifications*, we find the author of *The Source of Measures* enunciating our very esoteric teachings in his Kabbalistic researches. Thus he says:

Now Mars was the lord of *birth* and of *death*, of *generation* and of *destruction*, of *ploughing*, of *building*, of *sculpture* or stone-cutting, of *Architecture* . . . in fine, of all . . . ARTS. He was the *primal principle*, disintegrating into the modification of *two opposites for production*. Astronomically, too,<sup>1</sup> he held the birthplace of the day and year, the *place of its increase of strength*, *Aries*, and likewise the place of its death, *Scorpio*. He held the house of *Venus*, and that of the *Scorpion*. He, as *birth*, was *Good*; as *death*, was *Evil*. As *good*, he was *light*; as *bad*, he was *night*. As *good*, he was *man*; as *bad*, he was *woman*. He held the cardinal points, and as *Cain*, or *Vulcan*,<sup>2</sup> or *Pater Sadic*, or *Melchizedek*, he was lord of the *ecliptic*, or *balance*, or *line of adjustment*, and therefore was *The Just One*. The ancients held to there being seven planets, or great gods, growing out of eight, and *Pater Sadik*, *the Just or Right One*, was lord of the eighth, which was *Mater Terra*.<sup>3</sup>

This makes their functions plain enough after they had been degraded, and establishes the identity.

The *Noachian* Deluge, as described in its dead letter and within the period of Biblical chronology, having been shown to have never existed, the pious, but very arbitrary supposition of Bishop Cumberland has but to follow that deluge into the land of fiction. Indeed it seems rather fanciful to any impartial observer to be told that:

. . . there were two distinct races of Kabeiroi, the first consisting of Ham and Mizraim, whom he conceives to be Jupiter and the Dionysus of Mnaseas; the second, of the children of Shem, are the Kabeiroi of Sanchoniathon, while their father Sydyc is consequently the scriptural Shem.<sup>4</sup>

The Kabirim, “the mighty ones,” are identical with our primeval Dhyāni-Chohans, with the corporeal and the incorporeal Pitris, and with all the rulers and instructors of the primeval races, which are referred to as the Gods and Kings of the divine Dynasties.<sup>5</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The Æolian name of Mars was *Αρεως*, and the Greek *Arēs*, *Αρης*, is a name over the etymological significance of which, philologists and Indianists, Greek and Sanskrit scholars have vainly worked to this day. Very strangely, Max Müller connects both the names *Mars* and *Arēs* with the Sanskrit root *mar*, whence he traces their derivation, and from which, he says, the name of *Maruts* (the storm-gods) comes, Welcker, however, offers more correct etymologies. (See *Griech. Götterlehre*, I, 415) However it may be, etymologies of roots and words alone will never yield the esoteric meaning fully, though they may help to useful guesses. [H.P. Blavatsky]

<sup>2</sup> As the same author shows: “The very name *Vulcain* appears in the reading; for in the first words (of *Genesis*, iv, 5) is to be found *V'elcain*, or *V'ulcain*, agreeably to the deepened *u* sound of the letter *vau*. Out of its immediate context, it may be read as “*and the god Cain*,” or *Vulcain*. If, however, anything is wanting to confirm the *Cain-Vulcain* idea, Fürst says: “*קַיִן*, *Cain*, the iron point of a lance, a smith (blacksmith), inventor of sharp iron tools and smith work.” (Skinner, *op. cit.*, p. 278)

<sup>3</sup> *Source of Measures*, p. 186

<sup>4</sup> *Appendix de Cabiris, apud Orig. Gent.*, pp. 357, 364, 376; quoted by Faber, *Dissertation*, etc., Vol. I, p. 8

<sup>5</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 390-93

## Old Persian traditions about polar and submerged continents.

From *The Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 393-402.

Legendary lore could not distort facts so effectually as to reduce them to unrecognisable shape. Between the traditions of Egypt and Greece on the one hand, and Persia on the other — a country ever at war with the former — there is too great a similarity of figures and numbers to allow such coincidence to be due to simple chance. This was well proven by Bailly. Let us pause for a moment to examine these traditions from every available source, to compare the better those of the Magi with the so-called Grecian “fables.”

**Before the creation of (Genesis' third) Adam, two races succeeded each other on earth: the gigantic Daevas,<sup>1</sup> strong and wicked; and the Peris, smaller in stature but wiser and kinder.**

Those legends have now passed into popular tales, the folklore of Persia, as many a real fiction has found its way into our universal history. The stories of King Arthur and his Knights of the Round Table are also fairy tales to all appearance; yet they are based on facts, and pertain to the History of England. Why should not the folklore of Iran be part and parcel of the history and the pre-historic events of Atlantis? That folklore says as follows:

Before the creation of *Adam*, two races lived and succeeded each other on Earth; the Daēvas who reigned 7,000 years, and the Peris (the Izeds) who reigned but 2,000, during the existence of the former. The Daēvas were giants, strong and wicked; the Peris were smaller in stature, but wiser and kinder.

Here we recognize the Atlantean giants and the Āryans, or the Rākshasas of the *Rāmāyana* and the children of Bhārata-Varsha, or India; the ante- and the post-diluvians of the Bible.

Gyan (or rather Jñāna, true or occult Wisdom and knowledge), also called *Gian-ben-Gian* (or Wisdom, son of Wisdom), was the king of the Peris.<sup>2</sup> He had a shield as famous as that of Achilles, only instead of serving against an enemy in war, it served as a protection against black magic, the *sorcery* of the Daēvas. Gian-ben-Gian had reigned 2,000 years when *Iblīs*, the devil, was permitted by God to defeat the Daēvas and scatter them to the other end of the world. Even the magic shield, which, produced on the principles of astrology, destroyed charms, enchantments, and bad spells, could not prevail against *Iblīs*, who was an agent of Fate (or Karma).<sup>3</sup> They count ten kings in their last metropolis called Khanoom, and make the tenth,

---

<sup>1</sup> [Devils]

<sup>2</sup> Some derive the word from *Paras* which produced Pars, Persia, *Pars*; but it may be equally derived from Pitaras or Pitris, the Hindu progenitors of the Fifth Race — the Fathers of Wisdom or the Sons of “Will and Yoga” — who were called Pitaras, as were the divine Pitars of the First Race.

<sup>3</sup> See for these traditions the *Collection of Persian Legends*, in Russian, Georgian, Armenian, and Persian; B. d'Herbelot's *Bibliothèque Orientale* (1776), pp. 298ff, and Comte de Damville's *Mémoires*, Paris 1665. We give in a condensed narrative that which is scattered in hundreds of volumes in European and Asiatic languages, as well as in oral traditions.



Kaimūrath, identical with the Hebrew Adam. These kings answer to the ten antediluvian generations of kings as given by Berosus.

Distorted as those legends are now found, one can hardly fail to identify them with the Chaldean, Egyptian, Greek, and even Hebrew traditions. The latter, disdaining in its exclusiveness to speak of pre-Adamite nations, yet allows these to be clearly inferred, by sending out Cain — *one of the two only living men on earth* — into the land of Nōd, where he gets married and builds a city.<sup>1</sup>

**From the first appearance of the Aryan Race, when the Pliocene portions of the once great Atlantis began gradually sinking and new continents surfacing, down to the final disappearance of Plato's small island of Atlantis, the Aryans had never ceased to fight with the descendants of the first giant race.**

Now if we compare the 9,000 years mentioned by the Persian tales with the 9,000 years, which Plato declared had passed since the submersion of the last Atlantis, a very strange fact is made apparent. Bailly remarked, but distorted it by his interpretation. The Secret Doctrine may restore the figures to their true meaning. "First of all," we read in *Critias* that "one must remember that 9,000 years have elapsed *since the war of the nations*, which lived above and outside the Pillars of Hercules, and those which peopled the lands on this side."<sup>2</sup>

In *Timæus*, Plato says the same.<sup>3</sup> The Secret Doctrine declaring that most of the later islander-Atlanteans perished in the interval between 850,000 and 700,000 years ago, and that the Āryans were 200,000 years old when the first great "island" or continent was submerged, there hardly seems any reconciliation possible between the figures. But there is, in truth. Plato, being an Initiate, had to use the veiled language of the Sanctuary, and so had the Magi of Chaldea and Persia, through whose exoteric revelations the Persian legends were preserved and passed to posterity. Thus, one finds the Hebrews calling a week "seven days," and [speaking of] "a week of years" when each of its days represents 360 solar years, and the whole "week" is 2,520 years, in fact. They had a Sabbatical week, a Sabbatical year, etc., etc., and their Sabbath lasted indifferently 24 hours or 24,000 years — in the secret calculations of the Sōds. We of the present times call an age *a century*. They of Plato's day, the initiated writers, at any rate, meant by a millennium, not a thousand but 100,000 years; Hindus, more independent than any, never concealed their chronology. Thus, when saying 9,000 years, the Initiates will read 900,000 years, during which space of time — *i.e.*, from the first appearance of the Āryan race, when the Pliocene portions of the once great Atlantis began gradually sinking<sup>4</sup> and other continents to appear on the surface, down to the final disappearance of Plato's small island of Atlantis, the Āryan races had never ceased to fight with the descendants of the first giant races. This war lasted till nearly the close of the age which preceded the Kali-Yuga, and was the Mahābhāratean war so famous in Indian History. Such blending of the events and

---

<sup>1</sup> *Genesis* iv, 16

<sup>2</sup> *Critias*, 108e; [also *Timæus*, 23e.]

<sup>3</sup> *Timæus*, 23e

<sup>4</sup> The *main* continent perished in the Miocene times, as already stated.

epochs, and the bringing down of hundreds of thousands into thousands of years, does not interfere with the numbers of years that had elapsed, according to the statement made by the Egyptian priests to Solon, since the destruction of the last portion of Atlantis. The 9,000 years were the correct figures given. The latter event has never been kept a secret, and had only faded out of the memory of the Greeks. The Egyptians had their records complete, because isolated; for, being surrounded by sea and desert, they had been left untrammelled by other nations, till about a few millenniums before our era.

History, for the first time, catches a glimpse of Egypt and its great mysteries through Herodotus, if we do not take into account the Bible, and its queer chronology.<sup>1</sup> And how little Herodotus *could* tell is confessed by himself when, speaking of a mysterious tomb of an Initiate at Saïs, in the sacred precinct of Minerva. There, he says:

Behind the chapel . . . is the tomb of One, *whose name I consider it impious to divulge* . . . In the enclosure stand large obelisks and there is a *lake* near, surrounded with a stone wall formed *in a circle*. In this lake they perform by night, that person's adventures, which they call *Mysteries*: on these matters, however, though I am accurately acquainted with the particulars of them, *I must observe a discreet silence*.<sup>2</sup>



Harpocratic Eros  
(Myrina, c. 100–50 BCE) Louvre

---

<sup>1</sup> From Bede downwards all the chronologists of the Church have differed among themselves, and contradicted each other. “The chronology of the Hebrew text has been grossly altered, especially in the interval next after the Deluge,” says Whiston (*Old Testament*, p. 20).

<sup>2</sup> *History*, II, §§ 170-71

Initiates were not permitted to divulge anything pertaining to the correct measure of time. Images of Harpocrates, god of silence, each pressing a finger to the lips, reminded the solemn pledge of the secrecy in every temple.

On the other hand, it is well to know that no secret was so well preserved and so sacred with the ancients, as that of their cycles and computations. From the Egyptians down to the Jews it was held as the highest sin to divulge anything pertaining to the correct measure of time. It was for divulging *the secrets of the Gods*, that Tantalus was plunged into the infernal regions; the keepers of the sacred Sibylline Books were threatened with the death penalty for revealing a word from them. Sigalions (images of Harpocrates) were in every temple — especially in those of Isis and Serapis — each pressing a finger to the lips; while the Hebrews taught that to divulge, after initiation into the Rabbinical mysteries, the secrets of *Kabbalah*, was like eating of the fruit of the Tree of Knowledge: it was punishable by death.

**And yet, we, Europeans accepted the exoteric chronology of the Jews! No wonder that it has influenced and coloured ever since all our conceptions of science and the duration of things!**

The Persian traditions, then, are full of two nations or races, now entirely extinct, as some think; whereas, they are only transformed. They are ever speaking of, and describing the mountains of Kaf (Kafaristān?), which contain a gallery built by the giant Argenk, wherein the statues of the ancient men under all their forms are preserved. They call them *Sulaymāns* (Solomons), or the wise kings of the East, and count seventy-two kings of that name.<sup>1</sup> Three among them reigned for 1,000 years each.<sup>2</sup>

Siamek, the beloved son of Kaimūrath (Adam), their first king, died murdered by his giant brother. The father had a perpetual fire preserved on the tomb which contained his cremated ashes; hence — the origin of fire-worship, as some Orientalists think.

Then came *Hōshang*, the prudent and the wise. It was his dynasty which re-discovered metals and precious stones, which had been concealed by the Daēvas or Giants in the bowels of the earth; how to make brass-work, to cut canals, and improve agriculture. As usual, it is *Hōshang*, again, who is credited with having written the work called *Eternal Wisdom*,<sup>3</sup> and even with having built the cities of Susa, Babylon and Isfahān, though they were built ages later. But as modern Delhi is built on six other older cities, so these just-named cities may be built on emplacements of other cities of an immense antiquity. As to his date, it can only be inferred from another legend.

In the same tradition that wise prince is credited with having made war against the giants on a twelve-legged horse, whose birth is attributed to the *amours* of a crocodile with a female hippopotamus. This *dodecaped* was found on the “dry island” or new continent; much force and cunning had to be used to secure the wonderful ani-

---

<sup>1</sup> Thence King Solomon, whose traces are nowhere to be found outside of the Bible, and the description of whose magnificent palace and city dovetail with those of the Persian tales; though they were unknown to all pagan travellers, even to Herodotus.

<sup>2</sup> B. d'Herbelot, *op. cit.*, p. 829

<sup>3</sup> [Look up “The Perennial Wisdom of Javidan Khirad,” in our Higher Ethics and Devotion Series. — ED. PHIL.]

mal, but no sooner had Hōshang mounted him, than he defeated every enemy. No giants could withstand his tremendous power. Notwithstanding, this king of kings was killed by an enormous rock thrown at him by the giants from the great mountains of *Damavand*.<sup>1</sup>

**Tahmurath, third king of Persia, is the St. George of Iran. Like his grand-sire Hoshang, but unlike St. George, Tahmurath also had his steed only far more rare and rapid, a bird called Simurgh-Anka, the Manvantaric cycle.**

Tahmūrath is the third king of Persia, the St. George of Iran, the knight who always has the best of, and who kills, the Dragon. He is the great enemy of the Daēvas who, in his day, dwelled in the mountains of Kaf, and occasionally made raids on the Pe-



ris. The old French chronicles of the Persian folklore call him the *Dev-bend*, the conqueror of the giants. He, too, is credited with having founded Babylon, Nineveh, Diarbek etc., etc. Like his grand-sire Hōshang, Tahmūrath (Taimūraz) also had his steed, only far more rare and rapid — a bird called *Sīmūrgh-Anka*. A marvellous bird, in truth, intelligent, a polyglot, and even very religious.<sup>2</sup> What says that Persian Phoenix? It complains of its old age, for it is born cycles and cycles before the days of Adam (also Kaimūrath). It has witnessed the revolutions of long centuries. It has seen the birth and the close of twelve cycles of 7,000 years each, which multiplied esoterically will give us again 840,000 years.<sup>3</sup> Sīmūrgh is born with the last deluge of the pre-Adamites, says the “Romance of Sīmūrgh and the good Khalif”!<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> B. d’Herbelot, *Bibliothèque Orientale*, p. 454. See also Bailly, *Lettres sur l’Atlantide*, pp. 154-55

<sup>2</sup> *The Oriental Collections* (1797-1800), II, 119 *et seq.*

<sup>3</sup> Remember that the Rabbis teach that there are to be seven successive renewals of the globe; that each will last 7,000 years, the total duration being thus 49,000 years (See Rabbi Parcha’s “wheel”; also Kenealy’s *The Apocalypse of Adam-Ōannēs*, p. 176), This refers to 7 Rounds, 7 Root-races and sub-races, the truly occult figures, though sorely confused.

<sup>4</sup> *Tales of Derbent*

**Esoterically, Adam Rishon is the lunar spirit. Cosmo-geologically, Noah-Xisuthrus represents the Third Root-Race separated. Their three sons are its last three subraces.<sup>1</sup>**

What says the *Book of Numbers*? Esoterically, Adam Rishōn is the lunar Spirit (Jehovah, in a sense, or the Pitris) and his three Sons — Ka-yin, Hebel, and Seth — represent the three races, as already explained. Noah-Xisuthrus represents in his turn (in the cosmo-geological key) the 3<sup>rd</sup> Race separated, and his three sons, its last three races; Ham, moreover, symbolizing that race which uncovered the “*nakedness*” of the Parent Race, and of the “*Mindless*,” *i.e.*, committed sin.

Tahmūrath visits on his winged steed (Ahriman) the Mountains of Koh-Kaf or *Kaph*. He finds there the Peris ill-treated by the giants, and slays Argenk, and the giant *Demrusch*. Then he liberates the good Peri, Mergiana,<sup>2</sup> whom Demrusch had kept as a prisoner, and takes her over to the *dry* island, *i.e.*, the new continent of Europe.<sup>3</sup> After him came Jamshīd, who builds *Estekhār*, or Persepolis. This king reigns 700 years, and believes himself, in his great pride, immortal, and demands divine honours. Fate punishes him, he wanders for 100 years in the world under the name of *Dhulkarnayn* “the two horned.” But this epithet has no connection with the “two-horned” gentleman of the cloven foot. The “two-horned” is the epithet given in Asia, uncivilized enough to know nothing of the attributes of the devil, to those conquerors who have subdued the world from the East to the West.

Then come the usurper *Zohak*, and *Farīdūn*, one of the Persian heroes, who vanquishes the former, and shuts him up in the mountains of Damavand. These are followed by many others down to *Kai-Kobādh*, who founded a new dynasty.

Such is the legendary history of Persia, and we have to analyse it. What are the mountains of *Kaf* to begin with?

Whatever they may be in their geographical status, whether they are the Caucasian or Central Asian mountains, it is far beyond these mountains to the North, that legend places the Daēvas and Peris; the latter the remote ancestors of the Parsīs or Farsīs. Oriental tradition is ever referring to an unknown glacial, gloomy sea, and to a dark region, within which, nevertheless, are situated *the Fortunate Islands*, wherein bubbles, from the beginning of life on earth, the *fountain of life*.<sup>4</sup> But the legend as-

---

<sup>1</sup> [Noah is identical with the Hindu Śishta, Root- or Seed-Manu, the creative power left from a previous Manvantara to repopulate the earth. Noah and his three sons are the collective symbol of the Quaternary or Tetragrammaton of cosmic and human constitutions in various applications. He is Life-giving Space or the “Waters of the Deluge,” descending on Mount Ararat, the Hindu Olympus. Ham is the Chaotic principle. Cf. *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 595-96 & *fn*s. Also cf. “The ‘Raven,’ or the *eth-h’ōrēb* (yielding the same numerical value as the ‘Head’), is the symbol of the purely spiritual, sexless and androgyne man of the first three Races, who vanished from earth forever. It returned not to the ark, while the dove returned, carrying the olive-branch, when Noah, the new man of the new Race (whose prototype is Vaivasvata Manu), prepared to leave the ark, the womb (or *Argha*) of terrestrial nature. Numerically Jehovah, Adam, Noah, are one in the *Kabbalah*: at best, then, it is Deity descending on to Ararat (later on Sinai), to incarnate in man his *image*, through the natural process, henceforth: the mother’s womb, whose symbols are the ark, the mount (Sinai), etc., in *Genesis*.” *ibid.*, I p. 444, quoting *The Source of Measures*, p. 249.]

<sup>2</sup> Mergain, or Morgana, the fairy sister of King Arthur, is thus shown of Oriental descent.

<sup>3</sup> Where we find her, indeed, in Great Britain, in the romance of the Knights of the Round Table. Whence the identity of name and fairy-hood, if both heroines did not symbolize the same historical event which had passed into a legend?

<sup>4</sup> B. d’Herbelot, *op. cit.*, p. 593; *Armenian Tales*, p. 35

serts, moreover, that a portion of the first *dry* island (continent), having detached itself from the main body, has remained, since then, beyond the mountains of Koh-Kaf, “the stony girdle that surrounds the world.” A journey of seven months’ duration will bring him who is possessed of “Sulaymān’s ring” to that “fountain,” if he keeps on journeying North straight before him as the bird flies. Journeying therefore from Persia *straight north*, will bring one along the sixtieth degree of longitude, holding to the west, to Novaya Zemlya; and from the Caucasus to the eternal ice beyond the Arctic circle would land one between 60 and 45 degrees of longitude, or between Novaya Zemlya and Spitzbergen. This, of course, if one has the dodecapedian horse of Hōshang or the winged Simūrgh of Tahmūrath (or Taimūraz), upon which to cross over the Arctic Ocean.<sup>1</sup>

**Simurgh-Anka promised that before she dies she will reveal the First Continent, the Imperishable Sacred Land, presently concealed from all.**

Nevertheless, the wandering songsters of Persia and the Caucasus will maintain, to this day, that far beyond the snow-capped summits of Kap, or Caucasus, *there is a great continent now concealed from all*. That it is reached by those who can secure the services of the twelve-legged progeny of the crocodile and the female hippopotamus, whose legs become at will *twelve wings*;<sup>2</sup> or by those who have the patience to wait for the good pleasure of *Simūrgh-Anka*, who promised that before she dies she will reveal the hidden continent to all, and make it once more visible and within easy reach, by means of a bridge, which the Ocean Daēvas will build between that portion of the “dry island” and its severed parts.<sup>3</sup> This relates, of course, to the seventh race, Simūrgh being the Manvantaric cycle.

It is very curious that Cosmas Indicopleustes, who lived in the sixth century A.D., should have always maintained that man was born, and dwelt at first in a country *beyond the Ocean*, a proof of which had been given him in India, by a learned Chaldean. He says:

*The lands we live in are surrounded by the ocean, but beyond that ocean there is another land which touches the walls of the sky; and it is in this land that man was created and lived in paradise. During the Deluge, Noah was carried in his ark into the land his posterity now inhabits.*<sup>4</sup>

The twelve-legged horse of Hōshang was found on that continent named the *dry* island.

---

<sup>1</sup> To this day the aborigines of Caucasus speak of their mountains as Kap-kaz, using the consonant *p* instead of the usual *v* (Kavkaz or Caucasus). But their bards say that it requires seven months for a swift horse to reach the “dry land” beyond Kaf, holding north without ever deviating from one’s way.

<sup>2</sup> Bailly thought he saw in this horse a twelve-oared ship. The Secret Doctrine teaches that the early Third Race built boats and flotillas before it built houses. But the “horse,” though a much later animal, has, nevertheless, a more occult primitive meaning. The crocodile and the hippopotamus were held sacred and represented divine symbols, both with the ancient Egyptians and with the Mexicans. Poseidon is, in Homer, the God of the Horse, and assumes that form himself to please Ceres. Arion, their progeny, is one of the aspects of that “horse,” which is a cycle.

<sup>3</sup> The severed parts must be Norway and other lands in the neighbourhood of the Arctic Circle.

<sup>4</sup> Cosmas Indicopleustes, *Topographia Christiana*, in *Collectio Nova Patrum*, etc., t. ii, p. 188; also see *Journal des Sçavants*, Suppl. 1707, p. 20

**In the beginning of human life the only dry land was on the North Pole of our globe, where the earth was still. It will continue to exist for the duration of the Manvantara of this Round. New continents and lands will emerge from the sea bottom many times, but that Holy Land will never change.**

The “Christian topography” of Cosmas Indicopleustes and its merits are well known; but here the good father repeats a universal tradition, now, moreover, corroborated by facts. Every arctic traveller suspects a continent or a “dry island” beyond the line of eternal ice. Perhaps now the meaning of the following passage from one of the *Commentaries* may become clearer.

*In the first beginnings of [human] life, the only dry land was on the Right end<sup>1</sup> of the sphere, where it [the globe] is motionless.<sup>2</sup> The whole earth was one vast watery desert, and the waters were tepid. . . . There, man was born on the seven zones of the immortal, the indestructible of the Manvantara.<sup>3</sup> There was eternal spring in darkness. [But] that which is darkness to the man of today, was light to the man of his dawn. There, the gods rested, and Fohat<sup>4</sup> reigns ever since . . . Thus the wise fathers say that man is born in the head of his mother [earth], and that her feet at the left end generated [begot] the evil winds that blow from the mouth of the lower Dragon. . . . Between the first and second [races] the eternal central [land] was divided by the water of life.<sup>5</sup>*

**The North Pole is the head of Mother Earth; the South, her feet. Life in the form of electro-magnetic currents springing from her bowels and head, and circulating through her arteries, is her blood.<sup>6</sup>**

*It flows around and animates her [mother earth's] body. Its one end issues from her head; it becomes foul at her feet [the Southern Pole]. It gets purified [on its return] to her heart — which beats under the foot of the sacred Śambhala, which then [in the beginnings] was not yet born. For it is in the belt of man's dwelling [the earth] that lies concealed the life and health of all that lives and breathes.<sup>7</sup> During the first and second [races] the belt was covered with the great waters. [But] the great mother travailed under the waves and a new land*

---

<sup>1</sup> The two poles are called the right and left ends of our globe — the right being the North Pole — or the head and feet of the earth. Every beneficent (astral and cosmic) action comes from the North; every lethal influence from the South Pole. They are much connected with and influence “right-” and “left-hand magic.”

<sup>2</sup> The more one approaches the poles the less rotation is felt; at the *poles* proper, the diurnal revolution is quite neutralized. Thence the expression that the sphere is “motionless.”

<sup>3</sup> It is averred in Occultism that the land or island, which crowns the North Pole like a skull-cap, is the only one which prevails during the whole Manvantara of our “Round.” All the central continents and lands will emerge from the sea bottom many times in turn, but this land will never change.

<sup>4</sup> Bear in mind that the Vedic and Avestan name of Fohat is Apām-Napāt. In the *Avesta* he stands between the *fire-yazatas* and the *water-yazatas*, The literal meaning is “Son of the Waters,” but these “waters” are not the liquid we know, but Æther — the fiery waters of space. Fohat is the “Son of Æther” in its highest aspect, Ākāśa, the Mother-Father of the primitive Seven, and of *Sound* or LOGOS. Fohat is the *light* of the latter.

<sup>5</sup> This “water” is the blood or fluid of life which animates the earth, compared here to a living body.

<sup>6</sup> Look up “Kepler on the Soul of the Earth,” in our Mystic Verse and Insights Series. — ED. PHIL.

<sup>7</sup> Occult teaching corroborates the popular tradition which asserts the existence of a fountain of life in the bowels of the earth and in the North Pole. It is the blood of the earth, the electro-magnetic current, which circulates through all the arteries, and which is said to be found stored in the “navel” of the earth.

*was joined to the first one which our wise men call the headgear [the cap]. She travailed harder for the third [race] and her waist and navel appeared above the water. It was the belt, the sacred Himavat, which stretches around the world.<sup>1</sup> She broke toward the setting sun from her neck<sup>2</sup> downward [to the south west], into many lands and islands, but the eternal land [the cap] broke not asunder. Dry lands covered the face of the silent waters to the four sides of the world. All these perished [in their turn]. Then appeared the abode of the wicked [the Atlantis]. The eternal land was now hid, for the waters became solid [frozen] under the breath of her nostrils and the evil winds from the Dragon's mouth . . . etc., etc.*

**Northern Asia is the Root-Continent of human life, hence contemporary with man.**

This shows that Northern Asia is as old as the Second Race. One may even say that Asia is contemporary with man, since from the very beginnings of human life its *root-continent*, so to speak, already existed; that part of the world now known as Asia being only cut off from it in a later age, and divided by the glacial waters.

**The First Continent that came into existence capped over the whole North Pole like one unbroken crust, and remains so to this day.**

If, then, the teaching is understood correctly, the first continent which came into existence capped over the whole North Pole like one unbroken crust, and remains so to this day, beyond that inland sea which seemed like an unreachable *mirage to the few* arctic travellers who perceived it.

During the Second Race more land emerged from under the waters as a continuation of the "head" from the neck. Beginning on both hemispheres, on the line above the most northern part of Spitzbergen<sup>3</sup> on Mercator's Projection, on our side, it may have included, on the American side, the localities that are now occupied by Baffin Bay and the neighbouring islands and promontories. *There* it hardly reached, southward,

---

<sup>1</sup> Occultism points to the Himalayan chain as that "belt," and maintains that whether under the water or above, it encircles the globe. The *navel* is described as situated to the setting sun or to the west of the Himavat in which lie the roots of Meru, which mountain is north of the Himalaya. Meru is *not* "the fabulous mountain in the navel or centre of the earth," but its roots and foundations are in that navel, though it is in the far north itself. This connects it with the "central" land "that never perishes"; the land in which "the day of the mortal lasts six months and his night another six months." As the *Vishnu-Purāna* has it: "to the North of Meru there is, therefore, always night during day in *other regions*; for Meru is north of all the *dvipas* and *varshas*" (islands and countries). (Bk. II, ch. vii *fn.*; Wilson, Vol. II, p. 243 *fn.*) Meru is therefore neither on *Atlas* as Wilford suggests, nor, as Wilson tried to show, "absolutely in the centre of the globe," only because "relatively with the inhabitants of the several portions, to all of whom the east is that quarter where the sun first appears."

<sup>2</sup> Even the *Commentaries* do not refrain from Oriental metaphor. The globe is likened to the body of a woman, "mother earth." From her neck downward, means from the inland sea now beyond the impassable barrier of ice. The Earth, as Parāśara says: "is the mother and nurse, augmented with all creatures and *their* qualities *the comprehender* of all the worlds."

<sup>3</sup> For the Stanzas call this locality by a term translated in the *Commentary* as *a place of no latitude* (niraksha) the abode of the gods. As a scholiast says from the *Sūrya-Siddhānta*:

"Above them (the Siddhas) goes the sun when situated at the equinoxes; they have neither equinoctial shadow nor elevation of the pole (*akshonnati*, v. 42). In both directions from these are two pole-stars (*dhruvatārā*), fixed in the midst of the sky; to those *who are situated in places of no latitude* (niraksha), both these have their place in the horizon. Hence there is [in that land], no elevation of the poles, the two pole-stars being situated in their horizon; but their degrees of co-latitude (*lambaka*) are ninety; at Meru the degrees of latitude (*aksha*) are of the same number." (Cf. Wilson, *Vishnu-Purāna*, Vol. II, p. 208)



the 70<sup>th</sup> degree of latitude; *here* — it formed the horseshoe continent of which the *Commentary* speaks; of the two ends of which, one included Greenland with a prolongation which crossed the 50<sup>th</sup> degree a little south west, and the other Kamchatka, the two ends being united by what is now the northern fringe of the coasts of Eastern and Western Siberia. This broke asunder and disappeared. In the early part of the Third Race — Lemuria was formed (*vide supra*). When it was destroyed in its turn, Atlantis appeared.<sup>1</sup>



Celestial Kingdom by Lady Yana Dhyana

---

<sup>1</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 393-402

## Western speculations are founded on Greek and Puranic traditions.

From *The Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 402-9.

Thus it becomes natural to find that, on even such meagre data as have reached the profane historian, Oläeus Rudbeck, a Swedish scientist, tried to prove about two centuries ago that Sweden was the Atlantis of Plato. He thought, even, that he had found in the configuration of ancient Uppsala, the situation and measurements given by the Greek sage of the capital of “Atlantis.” As Bailly proved, Rudbeck was mistaken; but so was Bailly likewise, and still more. For Sweden and Norway had formed part and parcel of ancient Lemuria, and also of Atlantis on the European side, just as Eastern and Western Siberia and Kamchatka had belonged to it, on the Asiatic. Only, once more, when was it? We can find it out approximately only by studying the *Purānas*, if we will have nought to do with the Secret teachings.

**There is not a single statement in the Puranas that has not several meanings, and does not apply to both physical and metaphysical worlds.**

Three quarters of a century have already elapsed since Captain (now Colonel) Wilford brought forward his fanciful theories about the British islands being the “White Island,” the *Atala* of the *Purānas*. This was sheer nonsense, as the *Atala* is one of the seven *dvīpas*, or islands, belonging to the nether lokas, one of the seven regions of Pātāla (the antipodes). Moreover, as Wilford shows,<sup>1</sup> the *Purānas* place it “on the seventh zone or seventh climate” — rather, on the seventh measure of heat — which thus locates it between the latitudes of 24 and 28 degrees north. It is then to be sought on the same degree as the Tropic of Cancer, whereas England is between the 50<sup>th</sup> and 60<sup>th</sup> degrees of latitude. Wilford speaks of it as *Atala*, Atlantis, the White Island. Its enemy is called the “White Devil,” the *demon of terror*, for he says:

In their [the Hindu and Persian] romances, we see *Cai-caus* going to the mountain of *Az-burj* or *As-burj*, at the foot of which the sun sets, to fight the *Div-Sefid* or white devil, the *Tāra-daitya* of the *Purānas*, whose abode was on the *seventh stage* of the world, answering to the seventh zone of the *Bauddhists* and the sixth of *Paurānics*, or in other words to the White Island.<sup>2</sup>

Now here the Orientalists have been, and are still, facing the Sphinx’s riddle, the wrong solution of which will ever destroy their authority, if not their persons, in the eyes of every Hindu scholar, even those who are not Initiates. For there is not a statement in the *Purānas* — on the conflicting details of which Wilford based his speculations — which has not several meanings, and does not apply to both the physical and the metaphysical worlds. If the old Hindus divided the face of the globe geographically into seven zones, climates, *dvīpas*, and into seven hells and seven heavens, allegorically, that measure of seven did not apply in both cases to the same

---

<sup>1</sup> Wilford makes many mistakes. He identifies, for instance, Śveta-dvīpa (the White Island), the “island in the northern part of *Toyāmbudhi* [sea of fresh water],” with England, and then tries to identify it with *Atala* (a nether region) and Atlantis. Now the former is the abode of Vishnu, *exoterically*, and *Atala* is a hell. He also places it in the Euxine or Iksha (Black) Sea, and then seems to connect it, in another place, with Africa and Atlas.

<sup>2</sup> *Asiatick Researches*, Vol. VIII, 1805, p. 279: “An Essay on the Sacred Isles in the West”

localities. It is the north pole, the country of “Meru,” which is the seventh division, as it answers to the Seventh principle (or fourth metaphysically), of the occult calculation, for it represents the region of Ātman, of pure soul, and Spirituality. Hence Pushkara is shown *as the seventh zone*, or dvīpa, which encompasses the *Kshīra* Ocean, or Ocean of milk (the ever-frozen white region) in the *Vishnu-* (and other) *Purānas*. And Pushkara, with its two *varshas*,<sup>1</sup> lies directly at the foot of Meru. For it is said that:

The two countries north and south of Meru are *shaped like a bow . . .* [and that] one half of the surface of the earth is on the south of Meru and the other half on the north of Meru — beyond which is half of Pushkara.<sup>2</sup>

**Occultism likens the Himalayan chain to a belt that stretches around the globe, whether under the water or above. The Earth's navel is situated West of the Himalayas, in which lie the roots and foundations of Meru. The mythical mountain is North of the Himalayas in the Polar Land that never perishes.**



3

Geographically, then, Pushkara is America, Northern and Southern; and *allegorically* it is the prolongation of Jambu-dvīpa,<sup>4</sup> in the middle of which stands Meru, for it is the country inhabited by beings who live ten thousand years, who are free from sick-

---

<sup>1</sup> [Earth-regions in the *Purānas*.]

<sup>2</sup> *Vishnu Purāna*, Bk. II, ch. iv; Wilson, Vol. II, p. 201

<sup>3</sup> Mount of Five Treasures (Holy Mountains Series, 1933) Nicholas Roerich

<sup>4</sup> Every name in the *Purānas* has to be examined at least under two aspects; geographically, and metaphysically, in its allegorical application; *e.g.*, *Nīla*, the (blue) mountain which is one of the boundaries to the north of Meru, is again to be sought geographically in a mountain range in Orissa, and again in a mountain quite different from the others (in Western Africa). Jambu-dvīpa is Vishnu's dominion — the world, limited in the *Purānas* to our globe, the region which contains Meru *only*, and again it is divided to contain Bhārata-Varsha (India), its *best* division, and the fairest, says Parāśara. Likewise with Pushkara and all others.

ness or failing; where there is neither virtue nor vice, caste or laws, for these men are “of the same nature as the Gods.”<sup>1</sup> Wilford is inclined to see Meru in Mount Atlas, and locates there also the Loka-lokas. Now Meru, we are told, which is the *Svar-loka*, the abode of Brahmā, of Vishnu, and the Olympus of Indian exoteric religions, is described geographically as passing through the middle of the earth-globe, and protruding on either side.”<sup>2</sup> On its upper station are the gods, on the nether (or South pole) is the abode of demons (hells). How can then Meru be Mount Atlas? Besides which, Tāradaitya, a demon, cannot be placed on the seventh zone if the latter is identified with the “White” Island, which is *Śvetadvīpa*, for reasons given in the footnote. (*vide infra*)

Wilford accuses the modern Brahmans “of having jumbled them [islands and countries] all together,” but *he* jumbled them still more. He believes that as the *Brahmānda*- and *Vāyu-Purānas* divide the old continent into seven dvīpas, said to be surrounded by a vast ocean, “beyond which lie the region and mountains of *Atala*; whence most probably the Greeks divided the nation of *Atlantis*, which, as it could not be found after having once been discovered, they conceived to have been destroyed by some shock of nature. . . .”<sup>3</sup>

**There are Seven Great Continents: the first, always lives; the next three have already lived their day; the fifth exists today; the last two will appear in future.**

Finding certain difficulties in believing that the Egyptian priests, Plato, and even Homer, had all built their notions of Atlantis on Atala — a nether region located at the Southern pole — we prefer holding to the statements given in the secret books. We believe in the seven “continents,” four of which have already lived their day, the fifth still exists, and two are to appear in the future. We believe that each of these is not strictly a continent in the modern sense of the word, but that each name, from Jambu down to Pushkara,<sup>4</sup> refers to the geographical names given:

- 1 To the dry lands covering the face of the whole earth during the period of a Root-Race, in general; and
- 2 To what remained of these after a geological (race) *Pralaya* — as “Jambu,” for instance; and
- 3 To those localities which will enter, after the future cataclysms, into the formation of new *universal* “continents,” peninsulas, or dvīpas<sup>5</sup> — each continent being, in one sense, a greater or smaller region of dry land surrounded with water.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Vishnu Purāna*, Bk. II, ch. iv; Wilson, Vol. II, p. 202

<sup>2</sup> *Sūrya-Siddhānta*, verse 5; Whitney’s translation.

<sup>3</sup> *Asiatick Researches*, Vol. III, 1799, p. 300: “On Egypt and the Nile”

<sup>4</sup> Jambu, Plaksha Śālmala, Kuśa, Krauñcha, Śāka, and Pushkara.

<sup>5</sup> Such as Śāka and Pushkara, for instance, which do not yet exist, but into which will enter such lands as some portions of America, of Africa, and Central Asia, with the Gobi region. Let us bear in mind that *Upadvīpas* means “root” islands, or the dry land in general.

Thus, that whatever “jumble” the nomenclature of these may represent to the profane, there is none, in fact, to him who has the key.

Thus, we believe *we know* that, though two of the *Purānic* “islands” — the *sixth and seventh* “continents” — are yet to come, nevertheless there *were*, or there *are*, lands which will enter into the composition of the future dry lands, of new earths whose geographical faces will be entirely changed, as were those of the past. Therefore we find in the *Purānas* that Śāka-dvīpa is (or will be) a continent, and that Śankha-dvīpa, as shown in the *Vāyu-Purāna*, is only “a minor island,” one of the nine divisions (to which *Vāyu* adds six more) of Bhārata-Varsha. Because Śankha-dvīpa was peopled by “Mlechchhas [unclean foreigners], who worshipped Hindu divinities,” therefore they were connected with India.<sup>1</sup> This accounts for Śankhāsura, a King of a portion of Śankha-dvīpa, who was killed by Krishna; that King who resided in the palace “which was an ocean shell, and whose subjects lived in shells also,” says Wilford.

On the banks of the Nīlā<sup>2</sup> there were frequent contests between the Devatās [divine beings, demi-gods] and the Daityas [giants]; but the latter tribe having prevailed, their King, Śankhāsura, who resided in the ocean, made frequent incursions in the night. . . .<sup>3</sup>

It is not on the banks of the *Nile*, but on the coasts of Western Africa, south of where now lies Morocco, that these battles took place. There was a time when the whole of the Sahara desert was a sea, then a continent as fertile as the Delta, and then, only after another temporary submersion, it became a desert similar to that other wilderness, the desert of Shamo or Gobi. This is shown in *Purānic* tradition, for on the same page as above cited, it is said: “The people were between two fires; for, while Śankhāsura was ravaging one side of the continent, Krauñcha (or Cracacha), King of Krauñch-dvīpa, used to desolate the other; both armies . . . thus *changed the most fertile of regions into a barren desert.*”<sup>4</sup>

**The Hindu Aryans and other ancient nations were much earlier navigators than the Phoenicians, who are now credited with having been the first seamen in post-diluvian times.**

That not only the last island of Atlantis, spoken of by Plato, but a large continent, first divided, and then broken later on into seven peninsulas and islands (called *dvīpas*), preceded Europe, is sure. It covered the whole of the North and South Atlantic regions, as well as portions of the North and South Pacific, and had islands even in the Indian Ocean (relics of Lemuria). The claim is corroborated by Indian *Purānas*, Greek writers, and Asiatic, Persian, and Mohammedan traditions. Wilford, who confuses sorely the Hindu and the Mussulman legends, shows this, however, clearly.<sup>5</sup> And his facts and quotations from the *Purānas* give direct and conclusive evidence

---

<sup>1</sup> They were called demons, *Asuras*, giants, and monsters, because of their wickedness; and thus their country was likened to Atala — a hell, because of that.

<sup>2</sup> Not on the river Nile, surely, but near the *Nīlā* mountains of the Atlas range.

<sup>3</sup> F. Wilford, “On Egypt and the Nile,” *Asiatick Researches*, Vol. III, 1799, p. 325

<sup>4</sup> *ibid.*, pp. 325-26

<sup>5</sup> See Volumes VIII, X, and XI of *Asiatick Researches*.

that the Āryan Hindus and other ancient nations were earlier navigators than the Phœnicians, who are now credited with having been the first seamen that appeared in the *post-diluvian* times. This is what is given in the *Asiatick Researches*:

In this distress the few natives, who survived [in the war between Devatās and Daityas], raised their hands and hearts to Bhagavan, and exclaimed “Let him that can deliver us from these disasters be our King;” using the word Iṭ [a magic term not understood by Wilford, evidently], which re-echoed through the whole country.<sup>1</sup>

Then comes a violent storm, the waters of the Kali are strangely agitated, “when there appeared from the waves of the river a man, afterwards called Iṭ, at the head of a numerous army, saying ‘*abhayan,*’ or, *there is no fear . . .*,” and scattered the enemy. Wilford explains:

The King Iṭ, a subordinate incarnation of Mrira [*Mrida*, a form of Rudra, probably?], re-established peace and prosperity throughout all Śankha-dvīpa, through *Barbaradeśa*, *Misrasthān* and *Arvasthān* or *Arabia*. . . .<sup>2</sup>

Surely, if the Hindu *Purānas* give a description of wars on continents and islands situated beyond Western Africa in the Atlantic Ocean; if their writers speak of *Barbaras* and other people such as Arabs — they who were never known to navigate, or cross the *Kālā pānī* (the black waters of the Ocean) in the days of Phœnician navigation — then their *Purānas* must be older than those Phœnicians (placed at from 2,000 to 3,000 years B.C.). At any rate those traditions must have been older,<sup>3</sup> for: “In the above accounts,” writes an adept, “the Hindus speak of this island as *existing* and in great power; it must, therefore, have been more than *eleven thousand years ago*.”<sup>4</sup>

**They described the last surviving island of Atlantis (remnant of the eastern portion of that continent that had perished soon after the upheaval of the Americas) as antipode to India, i.e., the two Varshas of Pushkara<sup>5</sup> that lay at the foot of Meru.**

But another calculation and proof may be adduced of the great antiquity of these Hindu Āryans who knew of (because they had once dwelt in it) and described the last

---

<sup>1</sup> F. Wilford, “On Egypt and the Nile,” *Asiatick Researches*, Vol. III, 1799, p. 326

<sup>2</sup> *loc. cit.*

<sup>3</sup> Says Wilford of the division of Atlantis and Bhārata or India, confusing the two accounts, and Priyavrata with Medhātithi: “The division was made by Priyavrata. . . . He had ten sons, and it was his intention to divide the whole Earth between them equally. . . . In the same manner Neptune divided *Atlantis* between his ten sons: one of them had *Gades* at the extremity of the *Atlantis* to his share” — which “is probably the old continent . . . This *Atlantis* was overwhelmed with a flood likewise; and it seems that by the *Atlantis*, we should understand the antediluvian Earth, over which ten princes were born to rule according to the mythology of the West [and of the East, also]; but seven only of them sat upon the throne according to the *Paurānics*. . . . Some also are of opinion, that, of the seven *dvīpas*, six were likewise overwhelmed by a flood. . . .” (“An Essay on the Sacred Isles of the West,” *Asiatick Researches*, Vol. VIII, 1812, pp. 284-85 & 367) Wilford takes it to be “Gades which included Spain,” but it was Plato’s island — rather.

<sup>4</sup> [S.A. Mackey, *The Mythological Anatomy*, etc., Part III, p. 70]

<sup>5</sup> [Cf. “Geographically, then, Pushkara is America, Northern and Southern; and *allegorically* it is the prolongation of Jambu-dvīpa, in the middle of which stands Meru, for it is the country inhabited by beings who live ten thousand years, who are free from sickness or failing; where there is neither virtue nor vice, caste or laws, for these men are ‘of the same nature as the Gods.’” *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 403-4; & quoting *Vishnu-Purāna*, Bk. II, ch. iv; Wilson, Vol. II, p. 202]

surviving island of Atlantis — or rather of that remnant of the Eastern portion of that continent which had perished soon after the upheaval of the two Americas<sup>1</sup> — the two Varshas<sup>2</sup> of Pushkara. This may be demonstrated, moreover, on an astronomical calculation by an adept who criticises Wilford. For recalling what the Orientalist had brought forward concerning the Mount Asburj “at the foot of which the sun sets,” where was the war between the Devatās and the Daityas,<sup>3</sup> he says:

. . . we [will] consider the latitude and longitude of the lost island, and of the remaining Mount *Az-burj*. It was on the seventh stage of the world, *i.e.*, in the *seventh* CLIMATE OR MEASURE OF HEAT, which is between the latitude of 24 degrees and latitude 28 degrees north, and this White Island, which is called, also, Adhitanaya, or daughter of the Ocean, is frequently described as lying in the west; and the sun is represented as *setting at the foot of its Mount Az-burj* [Atlas, Teneriffe or Nīla, no matter the name] to fight [scorch with his vertical beams] the White Devil of the White Island.<sup>4</sup>

**Shankhasura, Shankha-dvīpa, and all their history are geographically and ethnologically Plato's Atlantis in Hindu dress.**

Now, considering this statement from its astronomical aspect, and knowing that Krishna is the incarnated Sun (Vishnu), a solar God; and that he is said to have killed Div-Sefid, the white giant — a *possible* personification of the ancient inhabitants at the foot of the Atlas — perchance Krishna may be only a representation of the vertical beams of the Sun? Those inhabitants (the Atlantides) are, we have seen, accused by Diodorus of daily *cursing the Sun*, and ever fighting his influence. This is an astronomical interpretation of course. But it will now be proved that Śankhāsura, and Śankha-dvīpa, and all their history, is also geographically and ethnologically Plato's “Atlantis” in Hindu dress.

**When Leo was vertical of Ceylon at sunset, then would Taurus be vertical to the island of Atlantis at noon.**

It was just remarked that since, in the Purānic accounts, the island is *still existing*, then those accounts must be older than the 11,000 years elapsed since Śankha-dvīpa, or the Poseidonis of Atlantis, disappeared. Is it not barely possible that Hindus should have known the island still earlier? Let us turn again to astronomical demonstrations, which make this quite plain if one assumes, according to the said adept, that

. . . the time when the summer tropical colure passed through the *Pleiades*, then would *Cor-Leonis* [Regulus] be upon the equator; and when *Leo* was *vertical* of Ceylon at sunset, then would *Taurus* be vertical to the island of *Atlantis* at noon.<sup>5</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> America, the “new” world — is thus, though not *much* older; — still it is older — than Europe, the “old world.”

<sup>2</sup> [Earth-regions in the *Purānas*.]

<sup>3</sup> If Div or Div-Sefid's (the Tāradaitya's) abode was on the *seventh stage*, it is because he came from Pushkara, the *Pātāla* (antipodes) of India, or from America. The latter touched the walls, so to say, of Atlantis, before the latter sank finally. The word *Pātāla* meaning both the antipodal countries and infernal regions, thus became synonymous in ideas and attributes as well as in name.

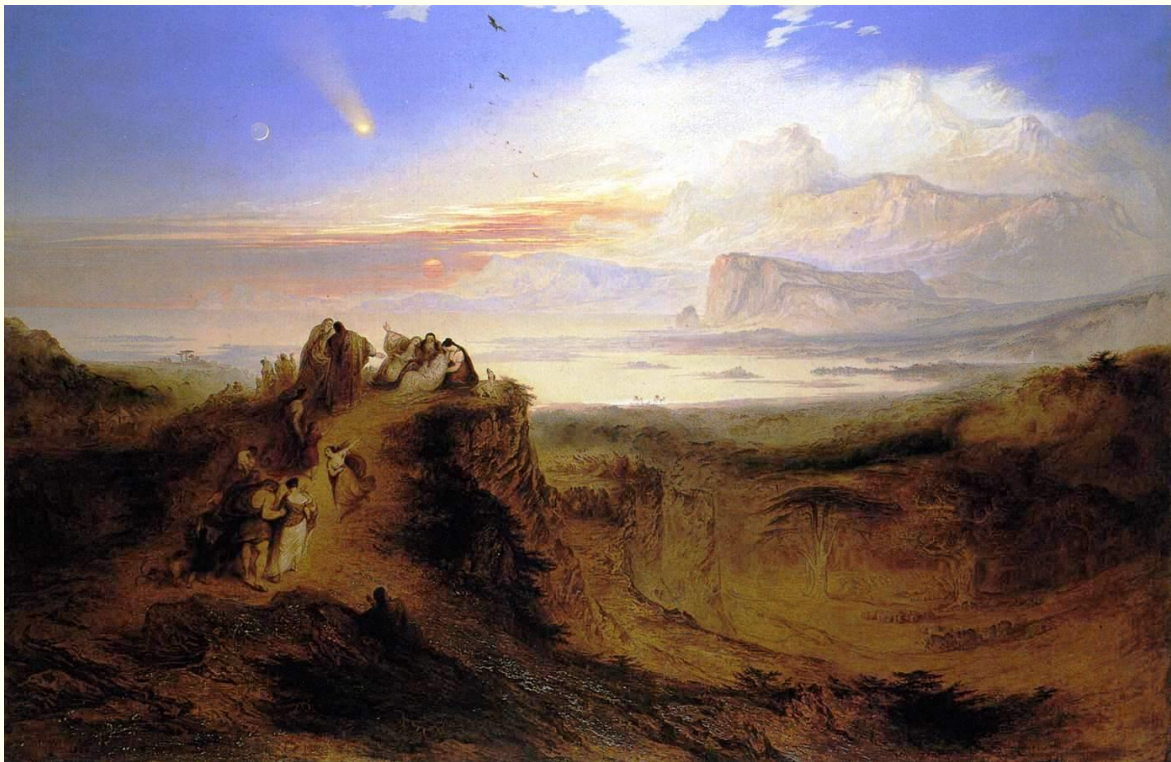
<sup>4</sup> [S.A. Mackey, *The Mythological Anatomy*, etc., Part III, p. 69]

<sup>5</sup> [*op. cit.*, p. 70]

This explains, perhaps, why the Sinhalese, the heirs of the Rākshasas and Giants of Lankā, and the direct descendants of *Sinha*, or *Leo*, became connected with Śankha-dvīpa or Poseidonis (Plato's Atlantis). Only, as shown by Mackey's *Sphinxiad*, this must have occurred about 23,000 years ago, *astronomically*; at which time the obliquity of the ecliptic must have been rather more than 27 degrees, and consequently Taurus must have passed over "Atlantis" or "Śankha-dvīpa." And that it was so is clearly demonstrated. Say the *Commentaries*:

*The sacred bull Nandi was brought from Bhārata to Śankha to meet Rishabha [Taurus] every Kalpa. But when those of the White Island [who descended originally from Śveta-dvīpa],<sup>1</sup> who had mixed with the Daityas [giants] of the land of iniquity, had become black with Sin, then Nandi remained for ever in the "White Island" [or Śveta-dvīpa.] "Those of the Fourth World [race] lost AUM."*

**The peak of Teneriffe was a volcano when the sinking of Western Atala began, as those who were saved told their children.**



2

Asburj (or Azburj), whether the peak of Teneriffe or not, was a volcano, when the sinking of the "western Atala" (or hell) began, and those who were saved told the tale to their children. Plato's Atlantis perished between water below and fire above; the

---

<sup>1</sup> Neither Atlantis, nor yet Śankha-dvīpa, was ever called "White Island." When tradition says that "the White Island became black on account of the sins of people" it only means the denizens of the "White Island," or Sidhapura, or Śveta-dvīpa, who descended to the Atlantis of the Third and Fourth races, to "inform the latter; and who, having incarnated, became black with sin" — a figure of speech. All the Avatāras of Vishnu are said to come originally from the White Island. According to Tibetan tradition the White Island is the only locality which escapes the general fate of other dvīpas and can be destroyed by neither fire nor water, for — it is the "eternal land."

<sup>2</sup> Eve of the Deluge (1840) John Martin, Royal Collection, Windsor



great mountain vomiting flames all the while. “The ‘fire-vomiting Monster’ survived alone out of the ruins of the unfortunate island.”<sup>1</sup>

Do the Greeks, accused of borrowing a Hindu fiction (Atala), and inventing from it another (Atlantis), stand also accused of getting their geographical notions and the number seven from them? Says Proclus:

The famous Atlantis exists no longer, but we can hardly doubt that it did once, for Marcellus, who wrote a history of Æthiopian affairs, says that such, and so great an island once existed, and this is evidenced by those who composed histories relative to the external sea. For *they relate that in this time there were seven islands* in the Atlantic sea sacred to Proserpine; and besides these, three of immense magnitude, sacred to Pluto . . . Jupiter . . . and Neptune. And, besides this, the inhabitants of the last island (Poseidonis) *preserved the memory of the prodigious magnitude* of the Atlantic island as related by their ancestors, and of its governing for many periods all the islands in the Atlantic sea. From this *isle* one may pass to other large islands beyond, which are not far from the firm land, near which is the true sea.<sup>2</sup>

Those *seven dvīpas*, inaccurately rendered islands, constituted the body of the famous *Atlantis*, according to Marcellus [writes Wilford himself] . . . This evidently shows, that the *Atlantis* is the old continent. . . . The *Atlantis* was destroyed by a most violent storm [?]: this is well known to the *Paurānics*, some of whom assert, that in consequence of this dreadful convulsion of nature, *six* of the *dvīpas* disappeared. . . .<sup>3</sup>

**Enough proofs have now been given to satisfy the greatest sceptic.**

Nevertheless, direct proofs based on exact science are also added. Volumes might be written, however, to no purpose for those who will neither see nor hear, except through the eyes and ears of their respective authorities.

Hence the teaching of the Roman Catholic scholiasts, namely, that Hermon, the mount in the land of Mizpeth — meaning “anathema,” “destruction” — is the same as Mount Armon. As a proof of this, Josephus is often quoted, as affirming that still in his own day enormous bones of giants were daily discovered on it.<sup>4</sup> But it was the land of Balaam the prophet, whom the “Lord loved well”; and so mixed up are facts and personages in the said scholiasts’ brains, that, when the *Zohar* explains the “birds” which inspired Balaam to mean “Serpents,” to wit, the wise men and adepts at whose school he had learnt the mysteries of prophecy — the opportunity is again taken of showing Mount Hermon inhabited by the “winged dragons of Evil, whose chief is Sammāēl” (the Jewish Satan).

---

<sup>1</sup> [S.A. Mackey, *Mythological Astronomy*, etc., p. 69]

<sup>2</sup> Commentary on the *Timæus*, Bk. I, 55 [not *verbatim*.]

<sup>3</sup> *Asiatick Researches*, Vol. XI, 1812, pp. 27-28: “An Essay on the Sacred Isles of the West”

<sup>4</sup> *Jewish Antiquities*, V, ii, 3

It is to those unclean spirits chained on Mount Hermon of the Desert, that the scapegoat of Israel, who assumed the name of one of them [Azāz(y)el], was sent.<sup>1</sup>

We say it is not so. The *Zohar* has the following explanation on the practice of magic which is called in Hebrew *Nahashim*, or the “Serpents’ Works.” It says

It is called *nahashim*, because the magicians [practical Kabbalists] work *surrounded by the light of the primordial serpent*, which they perceive in heaven as a luminous zone composed of myriads of small stars . . .<sup>2</sup>

. . . which means simply the *astral light*, so called by the Martinists, by Éliphas Lévi, and now by all the modern Occultists.<sup>3, 4</sup>



---

<sup>1</sup> *Zohar*, Part i, col. 122

<sup>2</sup> *ibid.*, Part iii, col. 302

<sup>3</sup> [The last three paragraphs are completely out of context, and may have been placed here by mistake. Page 376 is the most likely place where they belong.]

<sup>4</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 402-9

## Why and how did the Promethean Sacrifice become a curse, the chief cause of evil?

From *The Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 409-22.

The foregoing teachings of the SECRET DOCTRINE, supplemented by universal traditions, must now have demonstrated that the Brāhmanas and *Purānas*, the *Gāthās* and other Mazdean Scriptures, down to the Egyptian, Greek, and Roman, and finally to the Jewish Sacred records, all have the same origin. None are meaningless and baseless stories, invented to entrap the unwary profane; all are allegories intended to convey, under a more or less fantastic veil, the great truths gathered in the same field of prehistoric tradition. Space forbids us from entering, in these two volumes, into further and more minute details with respect to the four Races which preceded our own. But before offering to the student the history of the psychic and spiritual evolution of the direct antediluvian fathers of our Fifth (Āryan) humanity, and before demonstrating its bearing upon all the other side branches grown from the same trunk, we have to elucidate a few more facts. It has been shown, on the evidence of the whole ancient literary world, and the intuitional speculations of more than one philosopher and scientist of the later ages, that the tenets of our Esoteric Doctrine are corroborated by inferential as well as by direct proof in almost every case. That neither the “legendary” giants, nor the lost continents, nor yet the evolution of the preceding races, are quite baseless tales. In the *Addenda* which close this volume, science will find itself more than once unable to reply; they will, it is hoped, finally dispose of every sceptical remark with regard to the sacred number in nature, and our figures in general.<sup>1</sup>

Meanwhile, one task is left incomplete: that of disposing of that most pernicious of all the theological dogmas — the CURSE under which mankind is alleged to have suffered ever since the supposed disobedience of Adam and Eve in the bower of Eden.

### **The creative powers in man were the gift of Divine Wisdom, not the result of sin.**

This is clearly instanced in the paradoxical behaviour of Jehovah, who first *curses* Adam and Eve (or Humanity) for the supposed committed crime, and then *blesses* his “chosen people” by saying “Be fruitful and multiply, and replenish the earth.”<sup>2</sup> The curse was not brought on mankind by the Fourth Race, for the comparatively sinless Third Race, the still more gigantic Antediluvians, had perished in the same way; hence the Deluge was no punishment, but simply a result of a periodical and geological law. Nor was the curse of KARMA called down upon them for seeking *natural* union, as all the mindless animal-world does in its proper seasons; but, for abusing the creative power, for desecrating the divine gift, and wasting the life-essence for no purpose except bestial personal gratification. When understood, the third chapter of *Genesis* will be found to refer to the Adam and Eve of the closing Third and the commencing Fourth Races. In the beginning, conception was as easy for woman as it was for all animal creation. Nature had never intended that woman should bring

---

<sup>1</sup> See Section XXV, “The Mysteries of the Hebdomad.”

<sup>2</sup> *Genesis* ix, i

forth her young ones “in sorrow.” Since that period, however, during the evolution of the Fourth Race, there came enmity between its seed, and the “Serpent’s” seed, the seed or product of *Karma* and divine wisdom.

**But the seed of woman or lust bruised the seed of the fruit of wisdom and knowledge, by turning the holy mystery of spiritual procreation into animal gratification.**

Hence the law of Karma “bruised the *heel*” of the Atlantean race, by gradually changing physiologically, morally, physically, and mentally, the whole nature of the Fourth Race of mankind,<sup>1</sup> until, from the healthy King of animal creation of the Third Race, man became in the Fifth, our race, a helpless, scrofulous being, and has now become the wealthiest heir on the globe to constitutional and hereditary diseases, the most consciously and intelligently bestial of all animals!<sup>2</sup>

**Thus the Divine Titan has suffered in vain.**

This is the real CURSE from the physiological standpoint, almost the only one touched upon in the Kabbalistic esotericism. Viewed from this aspect, the curse is undeniable, for it is evident. The intellectual evolution, in its progress hand-in-hand with the physical, has certainly been a curse instead of a blessing — a gift quickened by the “Lords of Wisdom,” who have poured on the human *manas* the fresh dew of their own spirit and essence. The divine Titan has then suffered in vain; and one feels inclined to regret his benefaction to mankind, and sigh for those days so graphically depicted by Æschylus, in his *Prometheus Bound*, when, at the close of the first Titanic age (the age that followed that of ethereal man, of the pious Kandū and Pramlochā), nascent, physical mankind, still mindless and (physiologically) senseless, is described as

Seeing, [they] saw in vain;  
Hearing, they heard not, but like shapes in dreams,  
Through the long time all things at random mixed. (verses 447-50)

---

<sup>1</sup> How wise and grand, how far-seeing and morally beneficent are the *Laws of Manu* on connubial life, when compared with the licence tacitly allowed to man in civilized countries. That those laws have been neglected for the last two millenniums does not prevent us from admiring their forethought. The Brahman was a *grihastha*, a family man, till a certain period of his life, when, after begetting a son, he broke with married life and became a chaste Yogi. His very connubial life was regulated by his Brahman astrologer in accordance with his nature. Therefore, in such countries as the Puñjāb, for instance, where the lethal influence of Mussulman, and later on of European, licentiousness, has hardly touched the orthodox Āryan castes, one still finds the finest men — so far as stature and physical strength go — on the whole globe; whereas the mighty men of old have found themselves replaced in the Dekkan, and especially in Bengal, by men whose generation becomes with every century (and almost with every year) dwarfed and weakened.

<sup>2</sup> Diseases and over-population are facts that can never be denied.

**And in the injustice of the human heart, our Saviours and Benefactors, the Celestial Sons of the Fire of Wisdom, are now left unrecognized and unthanked.**

Our *Saviours*, the Agnishvāta and other divine “Sons of the Flame of Wisdom” (personified by the Greeks in Prometheus),<sup>1</sup> may well, in the injustice of the human heart, be left unrecognized and unthanked. They may, in our ignorance of the truth, be indirectly cursed for Pandora’s gift; but to find themselves proclaimed and declared by the mouth of the clergy, the EVIL ONES, is too heavy a Karma for “Him” who dared alone” — when Zeus “ardently desired” to quench the entire human race — to save “that mortal race” from perdition, or, as the suffering Titan is made to say:

From sinking blasted down to Hades’ gloom.  
For this by these dire tortures I am bent,  
Grievous to suffer, piteous to behold,  
I who did mortals pity! . . . (237-40)

The chorus remarking very pertinently:

Vast boon was this thou gavest unto mortals. (253)

Prometheus answers:

Yea, and besides ‘twas I that gave them fire,

Chorus: Have now these short-lived creatures flame-eyed fire?

Prom.: Ay, and by it full many arts will learn. (254-56)

**The Creative Fire received has turned into the greatest curse, since animal man degraded periodical instinct into chronic animalism and sensuality.**

But, with the arts, the fire received has turned into the greatest curse: the animal element, and *consciousness* of its possession, has changed periodical instinct into chronic animalism and sensuality.<sup>2</sup> It is this which hangs over humanity like a heavy funereal pall. Thus arises the responsibility of free-will; the Titanic passions which represent humanity in its darkest aspect; “the restless insatiability of the lower passions and desires, when, with self-asserting insolence, they bid defiance to the restraints of law.”<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> In Mrs. Anna Swanwick’s volumes, *The Dramas of Æschylus*, it is said of *Prometheus Bound* (Vol. II, pp. 146-47), that Prometheus truly appears in it “as the champion and benefactor of mankind, whose condition . . . is depicted as weak and miserable in the extreme. . . . Zeus, it is said, proposed to annihilate these puny ephemerals, and to plant upon the earth a new race in their stead.” We see the Lords of Being doing likewise, and exterminating the first product of nature and the sea, in the Stanzas (V, *et seq.*). . . . “Prometheus represents himself as having frustrated this design, and as being consequently subjected, for the sake of mortals, to the most agonising pain, inflicted by the remorseless cruelty of Zeus. We have thus, the Titan, the symbol of finite reason and free will [of intellectual humanity, or the higher aspect of *Manas*], depicted as the sublime philanthropist, while Zeus, the supreme deity of Hellas, is portrayed as the cruel and obdurate despot, a character peculiarly revolting to Athenian sentiment.” The reason for it is explained further on. The “Supreme Deity” bears, in every ancient Pantheon — including that of the Jews — a *dual* character, composed of light and shadow.

<sup>2</sup> The animal world, having simple instinct to guide it, has its *seasons of procreation*, and the sexes become neutralized during the rest of the year. Therefore, the free animal knows sickness but once in its life — before it dies.

<sup>3</sup> Introduction to *Prometheus Bound*, p. 152

Prometheus having endowed man, according to Plato's *Protagoras*,<sup>1</sup> with that "wisdom which ministers to physical well-being," but the lower aspect of *Manas* or the animal (*Kāma*) having remained unchanged, instead of "an untainted mind, heaven's first gift" (Æschylus), there was created the eternal vulture of the ever unsatisfied desire, of regret and despair coupled with "the dreamlike feebleness that fetters the blind race of mortals," unto the day when Prometheus is released by his heaven-appointed deliverer, Heraklēs.

**There was never an original sin but only an abuse of physical intelligence, in spite of the efforts of the Churches to make us all congenital sinners only to be saved by a fictitious and fickle god through his self-appointed agents on earth.**

Now Christians — Roman Catholics especially — have tried to prophetically connect this drama with the coming of Christ. No greater mistake could be made. The true theosophist, the pursuer of divine wisdom and worshipper of ABSOLUTE perfection — the unknown deity which is neither Zeus nor Jehovah — will demur to such an idea. Pointing to antiquity he will prove that there never was an *original* sin, but only an abuse of physical intelligence — the psychic being guided by the animal, and both putting out the light of the spiritual. He will say, "All ye who can read between the lines, study ancient wisdom in the old dramas — the Indian and the Greek; read carefully the one just mentioned, one enacted on the theatres of Athens 2,400 years ago, namely *Prometheus Bound*." The myth belongs to neither Hesiod nor Æschylus; but, as Bunsen says, it "is older than the Hellenes themselves," for it belongs, in truth, to the dawn of human consciousness. The *Crucified* Titan is the personified symbol of the collective Logos, the "Host," and of the "Lords of Wisdom" or the HEAVENLY MAN, who incarnated in Humanity. Moreover, as his name *Pro-mē-theus*, meaning "he who sees before him" or futurity, shows<sup>2</sup> — in the arts he devised and taught to humanity, psychological insight was not the least. For as he complains to the daughters of Oceanus:

Of prophecies the various modes I fixed,  
And among dreams did first discriminate  
The truthful vision . . . and mortals guided  
To a mysterious art. . . . .  
All arts to mortals from Prometheus came. (484-506)

<sup>1</sup> *Protagoras*, 321, 322

<sup>2</sup> From *πρό μῆτις*, "forethought." "Professor Kuhn," we are told in the above named volumes of *The Dramas of Æschylus* [p. 158], "considers the name of the Titan to be derived from the Sanskrit word *Pramantha*, the instrument used for kindling fire. The root *mand* or *manth*, implies rotatory motion, and the word *manthāmi*, used to denote the process of fire kindling, acquired the secondary sense of snatching away; hence we find another word of the same stock, *pramatha*, signifying theft." This is very ingenious, but perhaps not altogether correct; besides, there is a very prosaic element in it. No doubt in physical nature, the higher forms may develop from the lower ones, but it is hardly so in the world of thought. And as we are told that the word *manthāmi* passed into the Greek language and became the word *manthanō*, to learn; that is to say, to appropriate knowledge; whence *promētheia*, foreknowledge, forethought; we may find, in searching, a more poetical origin for the "fire-bringer" than that displayed in its Sanskrit origin. The *Svastika*, the sacred sign and the instrument for kindling *sacred* fire, may explain it better. "Prometheus, the fire-bringer, is the *Pramantha* personified," goes on the author; "he finds his prototype in the Āryan Mātariśvan, a divine . . . personage, closely associated with Agni, the fire-god of the Veda." *Mati*, in Sanskrit, is "understanding," and a synonym of MAHAT and *manas*, and must be of some account in the origin of the name: *Pramati* is the son of Fohat, and has his story also. [Note to Students by ED. PHIL. — one can now understand why the *Svastika* is the master key to life and its sacred purpose.]

Leaving for a few pages the main subject, let us pause and see what may be the hidden meaning of this, the most ancient as it is the most suggestive of traditional allegories. As it relates directly to the early races, this will be no real digression.

The subject of Æschylus' Trilogy, of which two plays are lost, is known to all cultured readers. The demi-god robs the gods (the Elōhīm) of their secret — the mystery of the *creative fire*. For this sacrilegious attempt he is struck down by KRONOS [Chronos]<sup>1</sup> and delivered unto Zeus, the FATHER and creator of a mankind which he would wish to have blind intellectually, and animal-like; a *personal* deity, which will not see MAN "like one of us." Hence Prometheus, "the fire and light-giver," is chained on Mount Caucasus and condemned to suffer torture. But the triform Fates (Karma), whose decrees, as the Titan says, even Zeus:

E'en he the fore-ordain'd cannot escape. (518)

— ordain that those sufferings will last only to that day when a son of Zeus —

Ay, a son bearing stronger than his sire. (768)

.....

One of thine [Iō's] own descendants it must be. (772)

— is born. This "Son" will deliver Prometheus (the suffering Humanity) from his own fatal gift. His name is, "He who has to come. . . ."

On the authority, then, of these few lines, which, like any other allegorical sentence, may be twisted into almost any meaning; namely, on the words pronounced by Prometheus and addressed to Iō, the daughter of Inachos, persecuted by Zeus — a whole prophecy is constructed by some Catholic writers. Says the crucified Titan:

And, portent past belief, the speaking oaks,  
By which full clearly, in no riddling phrase,  
Wast hailed as *the illustrious spouse of Zeus*  
..... (832-44)  
..... stroking thee  
With *touch alone of unalarming hand*;  
Then thou *dark Epaphos* shalt bear, whose name  
Records his sacred gendering ..... (850-52)

This was construed by several fanatics — des Mousseaux and de Mirville amongst others — into a clear prophecy. Iō — "is the mother of God," were are told, and "dark Epaphos" — Christ. But, the latter has not dethroned his father, except metaphorically, if one has to regard Jehovah as that "Father"; nor has the Christian Saviour hurled *his* Father down into Hades. Prometheus says, in verse 930, that Zeus will be humbled yet; as for himself:

..... such marriage he prepares  
Which from his throne of power to nothingness  
Shall hurl him down; so shall be all fulfilled →

---

<sup>1</sup> Kronos [Chronos] is "time," and thus the allegory becomes very suggestive. (See closing pages of this Sub-section.)

His father Kronos' curse . . . <sup>1</sup>  
..... Then let him sit  
Confiding in his lofty thunder-peals,  
And wielding with both hands the fiery bolt;  
For *these shall not avail, but fall he shall,*  
*A fall disgraceful, not to be endured . . . . .* (907-18) <sup>2</sup>

**The Promethean myth points to the last of the mysteries of cyclic human transformations, from ethereal to solid physical state, from spiritual to physiological procreation, and now toward the next phase when woman will know no man, and human progeny will be created, not begotten.**

[The World's Maker] had barely separated out everything within fixed limits when the constellations that had been hidden for a long time in dark fog began to blaze out throughout the whole sky. And so that no region might lack its own animate beings, the stars and the forms of gods occupied the floor of heaven, the sea gave a home to the shining fish, earth took the wild animals, and the light air flying things.

As yet there was no animal capable of higher thought that could be ruler of all the rest. Then Humankind was born. Either the creator god, source of a better world, seeded it from the divine, or the new-born earth just drawn from the highest heavens still contained fragments related to the skies, so that Prometheus, blending them with streams of rain, moulded them into an image of the all-controlling gods. While other animals look downwards at the ground, he gave human beings an up-turned aspect, commanding them to look towards the skies, and, upright, raise their face to the stars. So the earth, that had been, a moment ago, uncarved and imageless, changed and assumed the unknown shapes of human beings.

— OVID <sup>3</sup>

“Dark Epaphos” was the Dionysos-Sabazios, the son of Zeus and of Demeter in the Sabazian Mysteries, during which the “father of the gods,” assuming the *shape of a Serpent*, begot on Demeter Dionysos, or the solar Bacchus. Iō is the moon, and at the same time the *EVE of a new race*, and so is Demeter — in the present case. The Promethean myth is a prophecy indeed; but it does not relate to any of the cyclic Saviours who have appeared periodically in various countries and among various nations, in their transitional conditions of evolution. It points to the last of the mysteries of cyclic transformations, in the series of which mankind, having passed from the ethereal to the solid physical state, from spiritual to physiological procreation, is now carried onward on the opposite arc of the cycle, toward that second phase of its primitive state, when *woman knew no man*, and human progeny *was created, not begotten*.

---

<sup>1</sup> See, for explanation of this curse, the last page of the present sub-section.

<sup>2</sup> [Cf. “The *divine* man dwelt in the animal, and, therefore, when the physiological separation took place in the natural course of evolution — when also “all the animal creation was *untied*,” and males were attracted to females — *that race fell*: not because they had eaten of the fruit of Knowledge and knew good from evil, but because they knew no better. Propelled by the sexless creative instinct, the early sub-races had evolved an intermediate race in which, as hinted in the Stanzas, the higher Dhyāni-Chohans had incarnated.<sup>2</sup> “When we have ascertained the extent of the Universe and learnt to know all that there is in it, we will multiply our race,” answer the *Sons of Will and Yoga* to their brethren of the same race, who invite them to do as they do. This means that the great Adepts and Initiated ascetics will “multiply,” *i.e.*, once more produce *Mind-born* immaculate Sons — in the Seventh Root-Race.” *Secret Doctrine*, II p. 275]

<sup>3</sup> Ovid: *Metamorphoses*, Bk. I, 68-88; (tr. Kline). Cf. Plato: *Cratylus*, 399c



**When that knowledge comes, all dogmatic religions and their demons will die out.**

That state will return to it and to the world at large, when the latter shall discover and really appreciate the truths which underlie this vast problem of sex.

[It] will be like “the light that never shone on sea or land,” and has to come to men through the Theosophical Society. That light will lead on and up to the *true spiritual intuition*. Then the world will have a race of Buddhas and Christs, for the world will have discovered that individuals *have it in their own power* to procreate Buddha-like children — or demons. When that knowledge comes, all dogmatic religions, and with these the demons, will die out.<sup>1</sup>

**Then, Prometheus, the divine aspect of the Astral Soul, will merge into Buddhi, the Spiritual Soul, through which he shall be finally unshackled from the rock of matter and delivered from the thorns of human passions.**

If we reflect upon the serial development of the allegory, and the character of the heroes, the mystery may be unriddled. KRONOS [Chronos] is of course “time” in its cyclic course. He swallows his children — the *personal* gods of exoteric dogmas included. He has swallowed instead of Zeus, his *stone* idol; but the symbol has grown, and has only developed in human fancy as mankind was cycling down toward only its physical and intellectual — not spiritual — perfection. When it is as far advanced in its spiritual evolution Kronos [Chronos] will be no longer deceived. Instead of the *stone image* he will have swallowed the anthropomorphic fiction itself. Because, *the serpent of wisdom*, represented in the Sabazian mysteries by the anthropomorphised Logos, the unity of spiritual and physical Powers, will have begotten in Time (Kronos) [Chronos] a progeny — Dionysos-Bacchus or the “dark Epaphos,” the “mighty one” — the race that will overthrow him. Where will he be born? Prometheus traces him to his origin and birthplace in his prophecy to Iō. Iō is the moon-goddess of generation — for she is Isis and she is Eve, the great mother.<sup>2</sup> He traces the path of the (racial) wanderings as plainly as words can express it. She has to quit Europe and go to Asia’s continent, reaching there the highest of the mountains of Caucasus (verse 737), the Titan telling her:

When thou hast crossed the flood, limit betwixt  
Two continents, fronting the burning East. (790-91)

<sup>1</sup> [Signed “E.O.” — Eminent Occultist, initials which stand for Master K.H. The closing footnote appended by him to a manuscript by Éliphas Lévi translated from the French by A.O. Hume under the title of *Paradoxes of the Highest Science*. Consult explanatory Note (19) at the end of the present Volume. — Boris de Zirkoff.]

<sup>2</sup> It is complained by the author of the version on, and translator of, *Prometheus Bound* that in this tracing of Iō’s wanderings, “no consistency with our known geography is attainable.” (Vol. II, p. 191) There may be good reason for it. First of all it is the journey and wandering from place to place of the *race* from which the “tenth,” or *Kalki-Avatāra*, so called, is to issue. This he calls the “Kingly race born in Argos” (verse 888). But Argos has no reference here to Argos in Greece. It comes from *Arg* or *arca* — the female generative power symbolised in the moon — the *navi*-formed Argha of the mysteries, meaning the Queen of Heaven. Eustathius shows that, in the dialect of the Argians, Iō signified the moon; while esotericism explains it as the divine Androgyne, or the mystic 10; in Hebrew, 10 is the perfect number, or Jehovah. *Arghya* in Sanskrit is the libation cup, the *navi*-form or boat-shaped vessel in which flowers and fruit are offered to the deities. *Arghyanāth* is a title of the Mahā-Chohan, meaning “the Lord of Libations”; and *Arghya Varsha* — “the land of libations” — is the mystery-name of that region which extends from Kailāsa mountain nearly to the Shamo Desert, from within which the *Kalki-Avatāra* is expected. The Airyana-Vaējah of the Zoroastrians, as a locality, is identical with it. It is now said to have been situated between the sea of Aral, Baltistān, and little Tibet; but in olden times its area was far larger, as it was the birth-place of *physical* humanity, of which Iō is the mother and symbol.

that she must travel eastward, after passing the “Kimmerian Bosphoros,” and cross what is evidently the Volga and now Astrakhān on the Caspian Sea. After this she will encounter fierce northern blasts and cross thither to the land of the “Arimaspians’ host” (east of Herodotus’ Scythia) to

. . . Pluto’s gold-abounding flood. (805-6)

which is rightly conjectured by Professor Newman to have meant the Ural, the Arimaspi of Herodotus being “the recognised inhabitants of this golden region.”<sup>1</sup>

And here comes, between verses 807 and 812, a puzzle to all the European interpreters. Says the Titan:

To these [Arimaspi and Grypes] approach not; a far border-land  
Thou next shalt reach, where dwells a swarthy race,  
Near the sun’s founts, where is the Æethiop “river.”  
Along its banks proceed till thou attain  
The mighty rapids, where from Byblin heights  
Pure draughts of sacred water Nilos sends. (807-12)

**Alexander, having seen crocodiles in the river Indus and in no other river except the Nile, put two and two together and concluded that Nile rose from Indus.**

There Iō was ordained to found a colony for herself and sons. Now we must see how the passage is interpreted. As Iō is told that she has to travel eastward till she comes to the river Æethiops, which she is to follow till it falls into the Nile — hence the perplexity. “According to the geographical theories of the earliest Greeks,” we are informed by the author of the version of *Prometheus Bound*,

This condition was fulfilled by the Indus. Arrian (vi, i) mentions that Alexander the Great, when preparing to sail down the Indus (having seen crocodiles in the river Indus, and in no other river except the Nile . . . ), seemed to himself to have discovered the sources of the Nile; as though the Nile, rising from some place in India, and flowing through much desert land, and thereby losing its name Indus, next . . . flowed through inhabited land, being now called the Nile by the Æethiopians of those parts and afterwards by the Egyptians. Virgil in the 4<sup>th</sup> *Georgics* echoes the absolute error.<sup>2</sup>

Both Alexander and Virgil may have erred considerably in their geographical notions; but the prophecy of Prometheus has not so sinned, in the least — not, at any rate, in its esoteric spirit. When a certain race is symbolised, and events pertaining to its history are rendered allegorically, no topographical accuracy ought to be expected in the itinerary traced for its personification. Yet it so happens, that the river “Æethiops” is certainly the Indus, and it is also the *Nīla* or *Nīlā*. It is the river born on the *Kailāsa* (heaven) mountain, the mansion of the gods — 22,000 feet above the level of the sea. It was the Æethiops river — and was so called by the Greeks, long before the days of Alexander, because its banks, from Attock down to Sind, were peopled by tribes generally referred to as the Eastern Æethiopians. India and Egypt were two kindred na-

<sup>1</sup> [Herodotus, *History*, iv, 27]

<sup>2</sup> *Georgics*, IV, 290ff. [Full text in our Down to Earth Series. — ED. PHIL.] Cf. Swanwick, *op. cit.*, Vol. II, p. 197.

tions, and the Eastern Æthiopians — the mighty builders — have come from India, as is pretty well proved, it is hoped, in *Isis Unveiled*.<sup>1</sup>

**Arrian, who was ignorant of the old name of the Indus, has unconsciously slandered the Greek conqueror.**

Then why could not Alexander, and even the learned Virgil have used the word Nile or *Neilos* when speaking of the Indus, since it is one of its names? To this day that river is called, in the regions around Kalabagh, *nīla* (blue), and *Nīlā*, “the blue river.” The water here is of such dark blue colour that the name given to it from time immemorial led to a small town on its banks being called by the same name. It exists to this day. Evidently Arrian — who wrote far later than the day of Alexander, and who was ignorant of the old name of the Indus — has unconsciously slandered the Greek conqueror. Nor are our modern historians much wiser, in judging as they do. For they often make the most sweeping declarations on mere appearances, as much as their ancient colleagues ever did in days of old, when no Encyclopædias were yet ready for them.

**In esoteric philosophy, Iō, the “cow-horned maid,” symbolises Creative Nature; her bull calf is the Holy Spirit that vivifies her. She is also the Æthiopian pioneer race that emigrated from north-west India to Africa and named the great African river Æethiops or Nila, in memory of its home river. The latter is now called Indus; the former, Nile.**

The race of Iō, the “cow-horned maid” is then simply the first pioneer race of the Æthiopians brought by her from the Indus to the Nile (which received its name in memory of the mother river of the colonists from India).<sup>2</sup> For does not Prometheus say[s] to Iō<sup>3</sup> that the sacred Neilos (the god, not the river):

He to the land, *three-cornered*, thee shall guide,

— namely, to the *Delta*, where her sons are foreordained to found —

. . . that far-off colony . . . (813-15)

It is there that a new race (the Egyptians) will begin, and a “female race” which, “fifth in descent” from dark Epaphos

Fifty in number shall return to Argos. (853-54)

Then one of the fifty virgins will fail through love and shall

---

<sup>1</sup> Vol. I, pp. 569-70; Vol. II, pp. 435-38

<sup>2</sup> Alexander, who was better acquainted with Attock than with India (where he never went) could not have failed to hear the Indus near its very sources called *Nīla* and *Nīlā*. Even if a mistake, it is thus easily accounted for.

<sup>3</sup> That Iō is identical allegorically with Isis and the moon is shown by her being “cow-horned.” The allegory undeniably reached Greece from India, where Vāch — “the melodious cow” (*Rig-Veda*) “from whom mankind was produced” (*Bhāgavata-Purāna*) is shown in the *Aitareya-Brāhmaṇa* as pursued by her father Brahmā, who was moved by an illicit passion, and changed her into a deer. Hence Iō, refusing to yield to Jupiter’s passion, becomes “horned.” The cow was in every country the symbol of the passive generative power of nature, Isis, Vāch, Venus — the mother of the prolific god of love, Cupid, but, at the same time, that of the *Logos* whose symbol became with the Egyptians and the Indians — the bull — as testified to by Apis and the Hindu bulls in the most ancient temples. In esoteric philosophy the cow is the symbol of creative nature, and the Bull (her calf) the spirit which vivifies her, or “the Holy Spirit,” as Mr. Kenealy shows. Hence the symbol of the horns. These were sacred also with the Jews, who placed near the altar horns of Shittim wood, by seizing which a criminal ensured his safety.

..... A kingly race in Argos bear.

.....  
But from this seed shall dauntless heroes spring,  
Bow-famous, who shall free me from these ills. (869-72)

When this hero shall arise, the Titan does not reveal; for as he remarks:

This to set forth at large needs lengthy speech. (875)

But “Argos” is *Arghya-Varsha*, the land of libation of the old Hierophants, whence the deliverer of Humanity will appear, a name which became ages later that of its neighbour, India — the Āryāvarta of old.

**Æschylus was charged by the Athenians with sacrilege and condemned to be stoned to death for profaning the Mysteries.**

That the subject formed part of the Sabazian mysteries is made known by several ancient writers: by Cicero<sup>1</sup> and by Clemens Alexandrinus.<sup>2</sup> The latter writers are the only ones who attribute the fact that Æschylus was charged by the Athenians with sacrilege and condemned to be stoned to death, to its true cause. They say that having been himself uninitiated, Æschylus had profaned the Mysteries by exposing them in his trilogies on a public stage.<sup>3</sup> But he would have incurred the same condemnation had he been initiated — which must have been the case, as otherwise he must, like Socrates, have had a *daimonion* to reveal to him the secret and sacred allegorical drama of initiation. At all events, it is not the “father of the Greek tragedy” who invented the prophecy of Prometheus; for he only repeated in dramatic form that which was revealed by the priests during the MYSTERIA of the Sabazia.<sup>4</sup> The latter, however, is one of the oldest sacred festivals, whose origin is to this day unknown to history. Mythologists connect it through Mithras (the Sun, called Sabazius on some old monuments) with Jupiter and Bacchus. But it was never the property of the Greeks, but dates from days immemorial.

**Like Shakespeare, he was and will ever remain the Intellectual Sphinx of the ages.**

The translators of the drama wonder how Æschylus could become guilty of such “discrepancy between the character of Zeus as portrayed in the *Prometheus Bound* and that depicted in the remaining dramas.”<sup>5</sup> This is just because Æschylus, like Shakespeare, was and will ever remain the intellectual “Sphinx” of the ages. Between Zeus, the abstract deity of Grecian thought, and the Olympic Zeus, there was an abyss. The latter represented during the mysteries no higher a principle than the lower aspect of human physical intelligence — *Manas* wedded to *Kāma*; Prometheus — its divine aspect merging into and aspiring to Buddhi — the divine Soul. Zeus was

---

<sup>1</sup> *Questiones Tusculanæ*, Bk. II, ch. x (or 23); [full text in our Down to Earth Series. — ED. PHIL.]

<sup>2</sup> *Stromateis*, Bk. II, ch. xiv

<sup>3</sup> Herodotus [*History*, II, 157] and Pausanias [*Itinerary*, VIII, 37b] supposed that the cause of the condemnation was that Æschylus, adopting the theogony of the Egyptians, made Diana the daughter of Ceres, and not of Latoa. (See Æliian, *Varia Historia*, Bk. V, ch. xix.) But Æschylus was initiated.

<sup>4</sup> The *Sabazia* was a periodical festival with mysteries enacted in honour of some gods, a variant on the Mithraic Mysteries. The whole evolution of the races was performed in them.

<sup>5</sup> Mrs. A. Swanwick, *op. cit.*, Vol. II, Preface, p. vi

the human soul and nothing more, whenever shown yielding to his lower passions, — the *jealous* God, revengeful and cruel in its egotism or I-AM-NESS. Hence, Zeus is represented as a serpent — the intellectual tempter of man — which, nevertheless, begets in the course of cyclic evolution the “Man-Saviour,” the solar Bacchus or “Dionysos,” *more than a man*.

**Dionysos is one with Osiris, Krishna, and Buddha, and with the coming Avatara, the glorified Spiritual Christos who will deliver the suffering Man-Chrēstos, or Prometheus on his trial. Then, future generations will be born again without sin.**

Dionysos is one with Osiris, with Krishna, and with Buddha (the heavenly wise), and with the coming (tenth) Avatāra, the glorified Spiritual *Christos*, who will deliver the suffering *Chrēstos* (mankind, or Prometheus, on its trial). This, say Brāhmanical and Buddhist legends, echoed by the Zoroastrian and now by the Christian teachings (the latter only occasionally), will happen at the end of *Kaliyuga*. It is only after the appearance of Kalki-Avatāra, or Saoshyant, that man will be born from woman without sin. Then will Brahmā, the Hindu deity; Ahura-Mazdhā (Ormazd), the Zoroastrian; Zeus, the Greco-Olympian Don Juan; Jehovah, the jealous, repenting, cruel, tribal God of the Israelites, and all their likes in the universal Pantheon of human fancy — vanish and disappear in thin air. And along with these will vanish their shadows, *the dark aspects* of all those deities, ever represented as their “twin brothers” and creatures, in exoteric legend; *their own reflection* on earth — in esoteric philosophy. The Ahrimans and Typhons, the Sammāēls and Satans, must be all dethroned on that day, when every dark evil passion will be subdued.

There is one eternal Law in nature, one that always tends to adjust contraries and to produce final harmony. It is owing to this law of spiritual development superseding the physical and purely intellectual, that mankind will become freed from its false gods, and find itself finally — SELF-REDEEMED.

**Why and how did the Promethean sacrifice became a curse, the chief cause of evil? Because though mankind is “of one blood,” it is not of the same essence: god-informed men and lower human creatures, the latter bereft of the “sacred spark,” live side by side.**

In its final revelation, the old myth of Prometheus — his *proto-* and *anti-*types being found in every ancient theology — stands in each of them at the very origin of physical evil, because at the threshold of human physical life. KRONOS [Chronos] is “Time,” whose first law is that the order of the successive and harmonious phases in the process of evolution during cyclic development should be strictly preserved — under the severe penalty of abnormal growth with all its ensuing results. It was not in the programme of natural development that man — higher animal though he may be — should become at once — intellectually, spiritually, and psychically — the demi-god he is on earth, while his physical frame remains weaker and more helpless and ephemeral than that of almost any huge mammal. The contrast is too grotesque and violent; the tabernacle much too unworthy of its indwelling god. The gift of Prometheus thus became a CURSE — though *foreknown* and *foreseen* by the HOST personi-

fied in that personage, as his name well shows.<sup>1</sup> It is in this that rests, at one and the same time, its sin and its redemption. For the Host that incarnated in a portion of humanity, though led to it by Karma or *Nemesis*, preferred free-will to passive slavery, intellectual self-conscious pain and even torture — “while myriad time shall flow” — to inane, imbecile, instinctual beatitude. Knowing such an incarnation was premature and not in the programme of nature, the heavenly host, “Prometheus,” still sacrificed itself to benefit thereby, at least, one portion of mankind.<sup>2</sup> But while saving man from mental darkness, they inflicted upon him the tortures of the self-consciousness of his responsibility — the result of his free will — besides every ill to which mortal man and flesh are heir to. This torture Prometheus accepted for himself, since the Host became henceforward blended with the tabernacle prepared for them, which was still unachieved at that period of formation.

**While the Heavenly Titan was moved by Altruism, earthly man is moved by Egoism in every instance. The struggle of Prometheus with the Olympic tyrant and despot, sensual Zeus, one sees enacted daily: lower passions chain higher aspirations to the rock of matter, and generate in many a case the vulture of sorrow, pain, and repentance.**<sup>3</sup>

Spiritual evolution being incapable of keeping pace with the physical, once its homogeneity was broken by the admixture, the gift thus became the chief cause, if not the sole origin of *Evil*.<sup>4</sup> The allegory which shows KRONOS cursing Zeus for dethroning him (in the primitive “golden” age of Saturn, when all men were demi-gods), and for creating a physical race of men weak and helpless in comparison; and then as delivering to his (Zeus’) revenge the culprit, who despoiled the gods of their prerogative of creation and who thereby raised man to their level, intellectually and spiritually — is highly philosophical. In the case of Prometheus, Zeus represents the Host of the primeval progenitors, of the PITARAS, the “Fathers” who created man senseless and without any mind; while the divine Titan stands for the Spiritual creators, the *devas* who “fell” into generation. The former are spiritually lower, but physically stronger,

---

<sup>1</sup> *Vide supra*, [p. 413] a footnote concerning the etymology of *πρό μῆτις* or *forethought*. Prometheus confesses it in the drama when saying:

“Oh! holy Ether, swiftly-winged gales . . . . .  
Behold what I, a god, from gods endure  
. . . . .  
And yet what say I? *Clearly I fore knew*  
All that must happen . . . . .  
. . . . . The Destined it behoves,  
As best I may, to bear, for well I wot  
How incontestable the strength of Fate.” (verses 88-104)

“Fate” stands here for KARMA, or *Nemesis*.

<sup>2</sup> Mankind is obviously divided into god-informed men and lower human creatures. The intellectual difference between the Aryan and other civilized nations and such savages as the South Sea Islanders, is inexplicable on any other grounds. No amount of culture, nor generations of training amid civilization, could raise such human specimens as the Bushmen, the Vedddhas of Ceylon, and some African tribes, to the same intellectual level as the Aryans, the Semites, and the Turanians so called. The “sacred spark” is missing in them and it is they who are the only *inferior* races on the globe, now happily — owing to the wise adjustment of nature which ever works in that direction — fast dying out. Verily mankind is “of one blood,” *but not of the same essence*. We are the hothouse, artificially quickened plants in nature, having in us a spark, which in them is latent.

<sup>3</sup> Look up “Overview of the dual nature of deity, gods, and men” on page 85 of this study.

<sup>4</sup> The philosophical view of Indian metaphysics places the Root of Evil in the differentiation of the Homogeneous into the Heterogeneous, of the unit into plurality.

than the “Prometheans”; therefore, the latter are shown conquered. “The lower Host, whose work the Titan spoiled and thus defeated the plans of Zeus,” was on this earth in its own sphere and plane of action; whereas, the superior Host was an exile from Heaven, who had got entangled in the meshes of matter. They (the inferior “Host”) were masters of all the Cosmic and lower titanic forces; the higher Titan possessed only the intellectual and spiritual fire. This drama of the struggle of Prometheus with the Olympic tyrant and despot, sensual Zeus, one sees enacted daily within our actual mankind: the lower passions chain the higher aspirations to the rock of matter, to generate in many a case the vulture of sorrow, pain, and repentance. In every such case one sees once more

A god . . . in fetters, anguish-fraught;  
The foe of Zeus, in hatred held by all . . . (118-19)

A god, bereft even of that supreme consolation of Prometheus, who suffered in self-sacrifice

For that to men he bare too fond a mind. (122)

as the divine Titan is moved by altruism, but the mortal man by Selfishness and Egoism in every instance.

The modern Prometheus has now become *Epi-mētheus*, “he who sees only after the event”; because the universal philanthropy of the former has long ago degenerated into selfishness and self-adoration. Man will rebecome the *free* Titan of old, but not before cyclic evolution has re-established the broken harmony between the two natures — the terrestrial and the divine; after which he becomes impermeable to the lower titanic forces, invulnerable in his personality, and immortal in his individuality, which cannot happen before every animal element is eliminated from his nature. When man understands that “*Deus non fecit mortem*,”<sup>1</sup> but that man has created it himself, he will rebecome the Prometheus before his Fall.

For the full symbolism of Prometheus and the origin of this mythos in Greece, the reader is referred to Part II of this Volume.<sup>2</sup> In the said Part — a kind of supplement to the present portion — every additional information is given upon those tenets that will be the most controverted and questioned. This work is so heterodox, when confronted with the acknowledged standards of theology and modern science, that no proof which tends to show that these standards often usurp an illegal authority should be neglected.<sup>3</sup>



---

<sup>1</sup> *Wisdom of Solomon*, I, 17; [i.e., God made not death.]

<sup>2</sup> Section XX, “Prometheus, the Titan”

<sup>3</sup> *Secret Doctrine*, II pp. 409-22

## Overview of the dual nature of deity, gods, and men

### Zeus is a male and Zeus is an immortal maid.<sup>1</sup>

Olympic Zeus	Abstract Deity
Astral Light	Ākāśa
Astral Soul	Spiritual Soul
Dionysos	Solar Bacchus
Egotism	Altruism
Ether	Æther
Tempter of men	Dragon of Wisdom
Infernal Serpent	Supernal Serpent
Heterogeneousness	Homogeneousness
Lower Manas-Kama	Higher Manas-Buddhi
Physical Intelligence	Spiritual Intelligence

#### Lunar Fathers

Host of inferior progenitors.

Were on earth in their own sphere and plane of action.

Masters of all cosmic and lower titanic forces.

Created physical man senseless and mindless.

Spiritually lower but physically stronger than the Solar Fathers, are shown as “conquered.”

#### Solar Fathers

Host of superior progenitors, symbolised collectively by Prometheus.

Voluntary exiles from spirit, who became entangled in the meshes of matter.

Possessing only intellectual and spiritual fires, They raised man to their level.

Spiritually higher but physically weaker than the Lunar Fathers, are shown as “conquerors.”

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Cory, *Ancient Fragments*, 1832, p. 290; Aristotle, *De mundo* (Peri kosmou), 7, 1-4; [a searchable PDF of Cory's *Ancient Fragments* can be found in our Theosophy and Theosophists Series. — ED. PHIL.]



## Suggested reading for students.<sup>1</sup>



### From our Secret Doctrine's Third Proposition Series.

- ADVENTURES AND PEREGRINATIONS OF THE METAPHYSICAL ATOM
- ARDHANARISHVARA, SYMBOL OF THE HERMAPHRODITE THIRD RACE.JPG
- BLAVATSKY ON THE FORCE OF THE MINERAL MONAS
- BLAVATSKY ON THE HOLY UNION OF HIGH OCCULTISTS
- COLOURS OF OUR SEVEN PLANETS AND ROOT-RACES.JPG
- CROWNING ACHIEVEMENT OF THE GREAT SACRIFICE
- DIAGRAM 1 - ROOT-RACES IN THE FOURTH ROUND.PNG
- DIAGRAM 2 - THE FORCE OF THE MINERAL MONAS.PDF
- GREAT GENIUS AND COUNTERFEITS
- HIGHER CONSCIENCE IS HEROIC; LOWER CONSCIENCE, COWARDLY
- INSIGHTS TO THE FIRST CHAPTER OF GENESIS
- LUCIFER IS CHRISTOS, INNER LIGHT
- MENTALITY AND FREEDOM BY WILLIAM ARMSTRONG FAIRBURN (1917)
- NATURE UNAIDED FAILS
- PAST AND FUTURE ARE HERE AND NOW
- PRESENTATION ON MARRIAGES MADE IN HEAVEN.PPT
- PROPOSITION 3 - BORN FROM THE PORES OF THE SKIN
- PROPOSITION 3 - COLOURS OF THE SEVEN ROOT-RACES
- PROPOSITION 3 - CREATION IN TEN OCCULT APHORISMS
- PROPOSITION 3 - CYCLE OF NECESSITY
- PROPOSITION 3 - DIAGRAM.JPG
- PROPOSITION 3 - DIAGRAM NOTES
- PROPOSITION 3 - MARRIAGE MADE IN HEAVEN
- PROPOSITION 3 - MIND IS THE MAN

---

<sup>1</sup> Students should be fully conversant with the metaphysical concepts and learning aids set out in our Secret Doctrine's Propositions Series 1 and 2. — ED. PHIL.

**SECRET DOCTRINE THIRD PROPOSITION SERIES  
SUGGESTED READING FOR STUDENTS**

- PROPOSITION 3 - PROMETHEUS, INDIAN TITAN AND HIEROPHANT
- PROPOSITION 3 - RISE AND DEMISE OF ATLANTIS
- PROPOSITION 3 - SEVEN WARS IN HEAVEN AND ON EARTH
- PROPOSITION 3 - SONS OF THE FIRE-MIST
- PROPOSITION 3 - THE FIRST FOUR ROOT-RACES
- PROPOSITION 3 - THE FIRST FOUR ROOT-RACES (APPENDICES)
- PROPOSITION 3 - THE LAST THREE ROOT-RACES
- PROPOSITION 3 - THE LAST THREE ROOT-RACES (APPENDIX)
- PROPOSITION 3 - THE NOUS OF THE GREEKS
- PROPOSITION 3 - THE SEVEN CREATIONS
- PYGMALION-GALATEA IS AN ALLEGORY OF EARLY MAN'S SEMI-DIVINE SOUL
- THE CROSS AND THE PYTHAGOREAN DECAD
- THE DOG SYMBOLISES OUR SPIRITUAL CONSCIENCE
- THE FOUR ADAMS OF THE KABBALAH
- THE FUTURE OF THE AMERICAN CONTINENT AND ITS PEOPLES
- THE VISIBLE SUN IN OUR SOLAR SYSTEM IS A BALL OF ELECTROMAGNETIC FORCES,  
GLOWING BUT NOT BURNING
- THERE IS NOTHING GREATER THAN THE DIVINING STRAWS AND THE TORTOISE
- VITALITY AND DISSOLUTION IN THE GRAND CYCLES OF EXISTENCE

